

st

PREP

FIRST TERM



AL ADWAA

Gem

2026

FIRST TERM

جميع الحقوق محفوظة. لا يمكن إعادة نشر هذا المجلد أو أي جزء منه دون إذن مسبق من إدارة المدرسة.



Contents

Start Smart 5

Punctuation Marks 7

Module 1

Unit 1
Life in a Digital World 10
General Exercises on Unit 1 51

Unit 2
Learning to Learn 54
General Exercises on Unit 2 92
Module 1 Question Bank on Units 1 & 2 95

Module 2

Unit 3
Role Models 100
General Exercises on Unit 3 142
Review 1 145

Unit 4
Smart Choices 149
General Exercises on Unit 4 188
Module 2 Question Bank on Units 3 & 4 191

Module 3

Unit 5
Future Dreams 196
General Exercises on Unit 5 231

Unit 6
Global Citizens 234
General Exercises on Unit 6 271
Module 3 Question Bank on Units 5 & 6 274

Review 2 278



End of the Book
Listening Texts 281
Challenging Questions Answers 283
Irregular Verbs 284

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2025-2026

الفصل الدراسي الأول

English for Preparatory Schools - Year One (SB)

MONTH(S)

SEPTEMBER & OCTOBER

NOVEMBER

DECEMBER

JANUARY (2026)

UNITS

Units 1 + 2

Units 3 + 4

Units 5 + 6

General Revision

1 Finish the following dialog:

Hana : Hello, Nada. How are you?

Nada : Hi, Hana. Fine, thank you. (1).....?

Hana : I'm very well, thanks.

Nada : (2)..... this morning?

Hana : I had cereal and juice.

Nada : Great! (3)..... this afternoon?

Hana : Yes. I have English class at 2 o'clock.

Nada : Great. See you later then!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He to school every day.

- a) go b) going c) goes d) gone

2. The opposite of "hot" is ".....".

- a) warm b) cold c) cool d) wet

3. I would like apple juice, please.

- a) a b) an c) some d) the

4. Which word means "something you read"?

- a) Book. b) Pen. c) Chair. d) Car.

5. She is sitting the chair.

- a) from b) on c) at d) under

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the box:

on – goes – some – book – cold

1. I would like water, please.

2. She reads a every evening.

3. It's very in winter.

4. The cat is sitting the table.

5. He to school by bus.

4 (A) Listen to the following text, then answer the questions below:



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1. What does Mona like to do after school?

2. When does Mona go to the library?

3. What does Mona want to be when she grows up?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Mona lives

a) at school

b) next door to the writer

c) in the library

d) with her grandmother

5. Mona likes her

a) math

b) science

c) English

d) history

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. goes/ every/ school/ She/ day/ to.

2. would/ like/ I/ orange/ some/ juice.

3. playing/ park/ in/ are/ football/ They/ the.

4. What/ you/ do/ time/ up/ wake?

6 Write a paragraph of (80-100) words using the present simple and present continuous to describe yourself.

Example: - I live in Cairo.

- I'm learning how to use design software.

- I admire my brother because he studies hard.

Punctuation Marks

علامات الترقيم

Capital Letters

الحروف الكبيرة



فى بداية الجملة (الخبرية / الأمرية / الاستفهامية) / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / الضمير (I) فى أى مكان بالجملة / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة.

- e.g. • Hadeer lives in Luxor.
• Today is Tuesday.

- Jack speaks English and French.
• I visited the Eiffel Tower in Paris.

Checkpoint

Punctuate the following:

- 1 i play basketball every week.
- 2 He went to japan last year.
- 3 My brother mahmoud is a doctor.

Period (Full Stop)

النقطة



- e.g. • This is my friend, Asmaa.
• Do your homework, please.

فى نهاية الجملة:
الخبرية.
الأمرية.

Question Mark

علامة الاستفهام



Wh- question:
Yes/ No question:

- e.g. When do you sleep?
e.g. Do you have a computer?

فى نهاية الجملة الاستفهامية:

Exclamation Mark

علامة التعجب



- e.g. Hello! / Wow! / What a nice day!

نضع علامة التعجب (!) فى نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التى تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوى.

Checkpoint

Punctuate the following using (. - ? - !):

- 1 The flower is red
- 2 When is the English class
- 3 Wow

Comma

الفاصلة السفلى



e.g. • I like football, tennis, and basketball.

• Yes, of course.

• I like playing sports, but I don't like reading books.

• Can I have some tea, please?

نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

تستخدم بعد **Yes / No** في الإجابات.

تستخدم قبل **but**.

تستخدم قبل **please** إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

Checkpoint

Put the (,) in the right place:

- 1 He eats chicken but he doesn't eat eggs.
- 2 Hana's hobbies are reading, drawing and swimming.
- 3 Yes she has a bike.

Apostrophe

الفاصلة العليا



e.g. • My sister's car is big.

• I'm a boy.

• Omar isn't at school.

توضع بعد «s» أو قبلها للتعبير عن الملكية.

توضع في الاختصارات.

Checkpoint

Put the (,) in the right place:

- 1 This is Hana s room.
- 2 They re my friends.
- 3 What s your address?

Colon

النقطتان



We Use a colon (:

1. To introduce a list:

e.g. I need to buy many things: eggs, milk, and bread.

2. To explain or add more detail:

e.g. My family decided not to go on holiday: we had too little money.

نستخدم النقطتين للتالي:

عند تقديم قائمة (أكثر من شيء).

قبل التفسيرات.



MODULE

مقرر الشهور
سبتمبر وأكتوبر



Unit 1 Life in a Digital World

Unit 2 Learning to Learn

Module 1 Question Bank

Unit

1

LIFE IN A DIGITAL WORLD



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main idea of a blog post about technology.
- Identify specific details of a text about technology.
- Use context clues to infer the meanings of words.

Listening

- Identify the main idea when people talk about using digital devices.
- Identify specific details about how people use technology.

Speaking

- Express personal experiences and opinions about digital devices through speaking tasks.

Language

- Use grammatical structures (i.e., present simple and adverbs of frequency) to talk about digital habits.
- Differentiate between different parts of speech (Noun/ Verb/ Adjective).

Writing

- Practice writing an email about the daily routine using technology.

• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان:
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
• قم باختيار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع
لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

A VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

app (n) (application)	تطبيق	habit (n)	عادة (شخصية)	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
device (n)	جهاز	night mode (n)	الوضع الليلي	search (v) (for)	يبحث (عن)
digital (adj)	رقمي	online games (n)	ألعاب عبر الإنترنت	smartboard (n)	سبورة ذكية
ebook (n)	كتاب إلكتروني	physical tools (n)	أدوات مادية	type (d) (v)	يكتب (على لوحة المفاتيح)

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

adventure story (n)	قصة مغامرة	lesson (n)	حصة/درس	remind (ed) (v)	يُذكر
amazing (adj)	مذهل	life (n)	حياة	science (n)	علم (مادة العلوم)
bedtime (n)	وقت النوم	light (n)	ضوء	screen (n)	شاشة
blog (n)	مدونة	meal (n)	وجبة	setting (n)	إعداد
board (n)	سبورة/لوحة	message (n)	رسالة	share (d) (v)	يشارك
check (ed) (v)	يتفقد/يفحص	news (n)	أخبار	space (n)	الفضاء
facts (n)	حقائق	page (n)	صفحة	tablet (n)	جهاز لوحي (تابلت)
funny (adj)	مضحك	planet (n)	كوكب	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
information (n)	معلومات	portable (adj)	(شئ) محمول	website (n)	موقع إلكتروني
interactive (adj)	تفاعلي	post (ed) (v/n)	ينشر/منشور	wisely (adv)	بحكمة
laptop (n)	حاسوب محمول	project (n)	مشروع		

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do homework	يؤدي واجباً منزلياً	instead of	بدلاً من	take a break	يأخذ استراحة
during the day	أثناء النهار	on paper	على الورق	twice a week	مرتان في الأسبوع
help with	يساعد/مساعدة في	per minute	في الدقيقة	without	بدون

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تمريرات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
hurt	يؤذي/يؤلم	hurt	hurt	يُعلم/يُدرس	taught
learn (ed)	يتعلم	learnt	learnt	يرسل	sent
take	يأخذ	took	taken	يعرض/يبين	showed
					shown

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
dark غامق/مظلم	light فاتح	online متصل بالإنترنت	offline غير متصل بالإنترنت
interesting شيق/ممتع	boring ممل	useful مفيد	useless عديم الفائدة

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

at – useless – useful – device

- 1 My mobile phone is my favorite digital
- 2 My school has books we read on tablets.
- 3 This website is We benefit from it.

Language Notes

أدرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية. 

1 everyone

- Everyone is ready for the party. They are wearing well.

كل واحد (يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد وتستبدل بضمير جمع)

2 by + v + ing

- I always start my morning by checking my phone.

بواسطة

3 news

- The news isn't great today.

خبر/أخبار (اسم مفرد لا يُعد)

4 let + inf. المصدر

- Dad, let me join the next school trip.

يسمح/يدع

5 remind (someone) of (something)

- This picture reminds me of our vacation in Luxor.

يذكر شخصًا بشيء

remind (someone) to do (something)

- My mother always reminds me to do my homework.

يذكر شخصًا أن يفعل شيئًا

6 use (something) to + inf. المصدر

- I often use my tablet to search for news.

يستخدم (شيئًا) لكي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Everyone in the class is laughing. are having fun.
 a) He b) She c) They d) It
- 2 My parents always remind me my homework before playing.
 a) do b) to do c) doing d) did
- 3 I often use my tablet pictures.
 a) to drawing b) drawing c) to draw d) draw
- 4 Let me this computer game, please!
 a) to play b) playing c) played d) play

Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام

Noun الاسم

A word that names a person, thing, animal, or place.

هو كلمة تُستخدم لتسمية شخص، شيء، حيوان، أو مكان.

e.g. Ali/ cat/ school

Verb الفعل

A word that shows an action.

الفعل: هو كلمة تدل على عمل (حركة) أو حالة.

e.g. run/ eat/ play

Adjective الصفة

A word that describes nouns.

الصفة: هي كلمة تصف الاسم.

e.g. digital/ amazing/ useful

Classify the following words into nouns, verbs, and adjectives:

tall – protect – habit – app – funny – help – portable – type – news – learn – board – good

Noun	Verb	Adjective
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

screen	شاشة	a flat surface ⁽¹⁾ on which pictures or words are shown	(1) سطح
ebook	كتاب إلكتروني	an electronic book you can read on a screen instead of on paper	
laptop	لابتوب	a portable ⁽²⁾ computer	(2) محمول
night mode	الوضع الليلي	a darker screen setting ⁽³⁾ to protect your eyes in low light	(3) إعداد
smartboard	سبورة ذكية	an interactive ⁽⁴⁾ board used in classrooms for teaching lessons	
website	موقع إلكتروني	a page on the internet that gives information or lets you do things online	(4) تفاعل

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
amazing (adj)	مذهل	wonderful	رائع
search for	يبحث عن	look for	يبحث عن

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
digit (n)	رقم	-al		تحويل إلى صفة		digital (adj)	رقمي
teach (v)	يُدرس/يُعلم	-er		تحويل إلى اسم فاعل		teacher (n)	مُدرس/مُدرسة
inform (v)	يبلغ	-ation		تحويل إلى اسم		information (n)	معلومات
wise (adj)	حكيم	-ly		تحويل إلى حال		wisely (adv)	بحكمة

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
e-			تعني إلكتروني	book (n)	كتاب	ebook (n)	كتاب إلكتروني

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Yesterday's movie was amazing. The synonym of "amazing" is ".....".
 a) terrible b) useful c) kind d) wonderful
- I'd like to inform you about the good news. We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of "inform".
 a) -less b) -ation c) -ment d) -ly
- A is a page on the internet that gives information or lets you do things online.
 a) project b) setting c) website d) partner

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

SB page 8

Pre-reading question: - Why does Tarek use the night mode?

Read and listen to Tarek's blog post.

"A Day in My Digital Life"

Hi everyone! My name is Tarek, and I want to share my **digital**⁽¹⁾ day with you.

I always start my morning by checking my phone. I usually have three or four messages from my school friends. Sometimes, my cousin from Alexandria sends me funny pictures.

At breakfast, I often use my **tablet**⁽²⁾ to **search**⁽³⁾ for news. My favorite app shows me interesting facts about animals and space. I never eat without looking at something on my **screen**⁽⁴⁾ - I know it's not a good habit!

At school, we sometimes use the **smartboard**⁽⁵⁾ in our science class. Our teacher shows us amazing videos about planets and animals. I love watching them! We also use computers in our computer class twice a week. I'm learning to type faster - I can type 25 words per minute now!

After school, I always do my homework first. I usually search for information on my **laptop**⁽⁶⁾ when I need help with my projects. My favorite **website**⁽⁷⁾ has lots of useful information for students.

In the evening, I sometimes play online games with my friends. We usually play for one hour, then we stop. My parents always remind me to take breaks from the screen.

Before bedtime, I often read **ebooks**⁽⁸⁾ on my tablet. I love adventure stories! But I always use the "**night mode**⁽⁹⁾" so the screen doesn't hurt my eyes.

I think technology is amazing, but I'm learning to use it wisely. What about you? How do you use technology in your day?



- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| (1) رقمي | (2) تابلت |
| (3) يبحث | (4) شاشة |
| (5) سبورة ذكية | (6) لابتوب |
| (7) موقع إلكتروني | (8) كتب إلكترونية |
| (9) الوضع الليلي | |

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What is the main idea of the blog?
- 2 Why do you think Tarek's parents remind him to take breaks from screens?
- 3 What does Tarek do with his tablet during breakfast?
- 4 How often does Tarek use computers in his computer class?
- 5 Do you think Tarek uses technology in a good way? Why/ Why not?

Skills Bank

Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارات القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 15 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
exciting مثير	boring ممل
look for يبحث عن	offline غير متصل بالإنترنت
relax يستريح	useless عديم الفائدة

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على كيفية التعامل مع أسئلة القطعة:

- What does the word "....." mean? ومن الممكن أن يكون السؤال كالتالي:

How to guess the meaning of a word:

كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة

هناك عدة نقاط يمكن أن تساعد في تخمين معنى الكلمة:

1. Try to understand what type of word it is.

2. Read the passage well. You may find synonyms, antonyms, or a definition.

3. Look for clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help understand its meaning.

4. Make a guess.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Before bedtime, I often read ebooks on my tablet. I love adventure stories! But I always use the "night mode" so the screen doesn't hurt my eyes. I think technology is amazing, but I'm learning to use it wisely.

- The underlined word "wisely" means to use something

a) badly

b) happily

c) well

d) lazily

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- I think technology is amazing, but I'm learning to use it wisely.

☐

- أعتقد أن التكنولوجيا مكلّفة، ولكنني أتعلّم استخدامها بحكمة.

☐

- أعتقد أن التكنولوجيا رائعة، ولكنني أتعلّم استخدامها بحكمة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

☐

My favorite app shows me interesting facts about animals and space.

☐

My favorite tablet shows me interesting facts about animals and space.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I use my camera to take nice photos.
a) funny b) long c) digital d) tasty
2. Solyman plays with friends on the internet after school.
a) online games b) physical tools c) technology d) night mode
3. You don't have any food! We can our lunch together.
a) protect b) share c) remind d) stop
4. I like to my social media before bedtime.
a) type b) grow c) protect d) check
5. You need to a break every two hours to rest your eyes.
a) make b) see c) take d) play
6. Reem can type 40 words minute.
a) at b) off c) per d) for
7. Malak's drawing was We all loved it.
a) bad b) amazing c) delicious d) hot
8. My phone is my favorite I use it every day.
a) device b) app c) website d) machine
9. It's my to read a short story before bedtime.
a) habit b) board c) picture d) setting
10. A is a darker screen setting to protect your eyes in low light.
a) night mode b) day mode c) smartboard d) blog
11. Earth is the where we all live.
a) island b) plant c) plane d) planet
12. We can for better books online. We don't need to ask the teacher.
a) share b) type c) search d) say

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ebook – tools – check – tablet – camera

I enjoy my digital life! Every morning, I (1) the weather using my favorite device. At school, we sometimes read a/an (2) instead of a paper book. At home, I use my (3) to play games. But I still like using physical (4) like pencils and paper when I draw. It's fun to mix both ways.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Can you help me my homework?
a) for b) with c) at d) on
2. My advice is to spend money on important things.
a) carefully b) wisely c) happily d) sadly
3. The physical must be used safely.
a) modes b) tools c) games d) technology
4. A/An is a page on the internet that gives information or lets you do things online.
a) website b) icon c) email d) location
5. The story kept us excited until the end.
a) adventure b) light c) boring d) video
6. Can you this message for me?
a) remind b) protect c) help d) type
7. Our teacher writes on the with a special pen for it.
a) smartboard b) desk c) table d) laptop
8. "Digital" means something that uses numbers and
a) amounts b) pictures c) photography d) technology
9. We must our environment from pollution.
a) protect b) search c) share d) type
10. A is a portable computer.
a) smartboard b) speaker c) screen d) laptop
11. Mr. Waleed teaches us English. To form the noun of "teach", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -or b) -ion c) -ist d) -er

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

use – keyboard – laptop – learn – ebooks

I think technology is amazing. I'm learning to use it wisely. I use my (1) to do homework, read (2), and join video calls for lessons. Technology helps me (3) in different ways, it's useful when we (4) it well.

لحل المزيد من التمارين، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Your daily routine

روتينك (نظام حياتك) اليومي

← online

What things do you do every day?

ما الأشياء التي تفعلها كل يوم؟

I use my tablet, smartphone, and sometimes the computer at school.



How do you spend your day?

كيف تقضي يومك؟

I usually watch videos, play games, read stories, and do my homework on my tablet.



عادةً أشاهد الفيديوهات، وألعب الألعاب، وأقرأ القصص، وأحل واجبي على التابلت.

How do you start your morning?

كيف تبدأ صباحك؟

I always start my morning by checking my phone.

دائمًا أبدأ يومي بالتحقق من هاتفي.

What do you do after school?

ماذا تفعل بعد المدرسة؟

After school, I always do my homework first. I usually search for information on my laptop.



بعد المدرسة، دائمًا أقوم بعمل واجبي أولاً. وعادةً أبحث عن معلومات على اللاب توب.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ Ali and Omar are talking about digital devices.

Ali : What technology do you use every day?

Omar : I use my tablet and (1).....

Ali : What (2)..... you use your smartphone for?

Omar : I use it to talk to my cousins.

Ali : (3)..... about your tablet?

Omar : I watch videos and play games on it.

Ali : Do you use a computer, too?

Omar : Yes, I (4)..... it at school.

How to write about the most important device

كيفية الكتابة عن الجهاز الأكثر أهمية

The most important device

1 What is the most important device?
ما هو أهم جهاز؟

The most important device is

(اذكر اسم الجهاز)

2 Why is it important?
لماذا هو مهم؟

It is important because

(اذكر السبب)

3 Why do people use it?
لماذا يستخدمه الناس؟

People use it to

(اذكر استخداماته)

4 Is it expensive?
هل هو غالي؟

It is expensive/ cheap.

It isn't expensive.

5 Is it easy to use?
هل من السهل استخدامه؟

It is easy to use.

All people can use it.

6 Is it eco-friendly?
هل هو صديق للبيئة؟

It's eco-friendly.

It isn't eco-friendly.

7 How will life be without it?
كيف تبدو الحياة بدونها؟

Life will be difficult.

استخدم الأفكار السابقة لكتابة فقرة (اختر أي جهاز تفضله وتستطيع الكتابة عنه):

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

قم بقراءة هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"My favorite digital device"

My favorite digital device is my tablet. I use it every day to learn, play, and stay connected. In the morning, I check the weather and read an e-book before school. At school, I use my tablet to watch science videos and take notes. After I finish my homework, I play fun games or video call my cousin. My parents remind me to take breaks and rest my eyes. I like my tablet because it helps me learn and have fun.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I brush my teeth every day. It's a good
 a) habit b) life c) lesson d) project
2. Adel uses his smartphone every day. He searches news and reads ebooks.
 a) on b) of c) for d) at

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mode – amazing – smartboard – screen – typed

In the morning, I used my tablet to check the weather. At school, our teacher showed us a video about space on the (1)..... I searched for a planet and found great information on a website. Later, I (2)..... a short report on my laptop. At bedtime, I turned on night (3)..... and read from an ebook. My digital day was (4).....

3 Complete the following dialog:

Leila uses her tablet the most. Nour is asking her about it.

Nour : What device do you use the most?

Leila : I use my (1)..... the most. I use it a lot.

Nour : (2)..... do you use it?

Leila : After school and on the weekends.

Nour : (3)..... do you use it so much?

Leila : Because I like watching cartoons and reading stories.

Nour : Do you use it at school?

Leila : Yes. I use it to (4)..... homework.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"The digital device you use the most"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

balance (d) (v)	يوازن	environment (n)	البيئة	smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي
content (n)	محتوى	hybrid bus (n)	حافلة ثنائية الوقود (هجين)	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	navigation (n)	الملاحة / التنقل	vision (n)	رؤية
email (n)	بريد إلكتروني	platform (n)	منصة		
energy (n)	طاقة	screen time (n)	وقت الشاشة		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر	language (n)	لغة	pair (n)	زوج/ثنائي
daily (adj)	يومي	launch (ed) (v)	يُطلق	pollution (n)	التلوث
diesel (n)	السولار / الديزل	main (adj)	رئيسي	world (n)	عالم
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	outdoor activities	أنشطة خارجية		

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

chat with	يحدث مع	in the morning	في الصباح	spend time on	يقضي وقتنا على
for homework	لواجب المنزلي	late for	متأخر على	what kind of ...?	ما نوع ...؟

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	tell	يخبر	told	told
spend	ينفق مَالاً/يقضي وقتاً	spent	spent	write	يكتب	wrote	written

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
connect	يتصل	disconnect	ينقطع	reduce	يقلل	increase	يزيد
true	صحيح	false	خاطئ	outdoor	خارجي	indoor	داخلي

Read and complete with a word from the list:

activity - media - for - to

- I usually check the before I play online games.
- Playing in the park is my favorite outdoor
- Don't be late dinner or the food will get cold.

LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

achieve (d) (v)	يحقّق/ينجز	microphone (n)	ميكروفون	record (ed) (v)	يسجل
assignment (n)	مهمة دراسية	mouse (n)	فأرة	speaker (n)	مكبر صوت
headphones (n)	سماعات رأس	print (ed) (v)	يطبع	task (n)	مهمة
keyboard (n)	لوحة مفاتيح	printer (n)	طابعة	webcam (n)	كاميرا ويب

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

board game (n)	لعبة لوحية	note (n)	ملاحظة	super (adj)	فائق/خارق
create (d) (v)	يخلق/ينشئ	noticeboard (n)	لوحة إعلانات	type (n)	نوع
involve (d) (v)	يتضمن	root (n)	جذر	workbook (n)	كتاب تدريبات
knowledge (n)	معرفة	schoolwork (n)	عمل مدرسي	worker (n)	عامل

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at the end of	في نهاية ...	on the computer	على الكمبيوتر	move around	يتحرك حول
belong to	ينتمي إلى/يخص	talk to	يتكلم إلى/مع	make a video call	يُجرى مكالمة فيديو
click on	ينقر على	presentation for	عرض تقديمي لـ		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	make	يصنع
				made	made

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح	helpful	مفيد	unhelpful	غير مفيد
different	مختلف	similar/same	مشابه/نفس	important	مهم	unimportant	غير مهم

Read and complete with a word from the list:

unhelpful – helpful – assignment – to

1 I finished my before dinner and showed it to my dad.

2 Does this book belong you?

3 Ali was and carried my bag for me.



يجعل

1 make + مفعول + inf. صفة/المصدر

- Do digital devices **make** your day interesting?
- The comic movie **made** us laugh.

2 use + الفاعل + use + الشيء + for + V+ing/اسم (to + inf.)

- The computer **is used for** writing and typing.

يستخدم لـ

الشيء + "be" + used for + V+ing/اسم (to+inf.)

- I **use** the keyboard **to** write my assignments.
using

يستخدم لـ

- I print my homework **using** the printer.

باستخدام

3 have to/has to + inf. المصدر

- Sometimes, I **have to** record a presentation for class.
- My sister **has to** get up early on school days.

يُضطر أن (تعبّر عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء في المضارع)

4 find /look/feel + adj. صفة

- Omar, who sometimes **felt** shy, **looked** nervous.

يجد/يبدو/يشعر

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I used the smartboard pictures during my class presentation last week.

a) show

b) showing

c) to showing

d) to show

- 2 I always print my homework the school printer before bringing it to class.

a) uses

b) using

c) used

d) use

- 3 That mobile phone is used pictures, messages, and even video calls.

a) for take

b) to taking

c) for taking

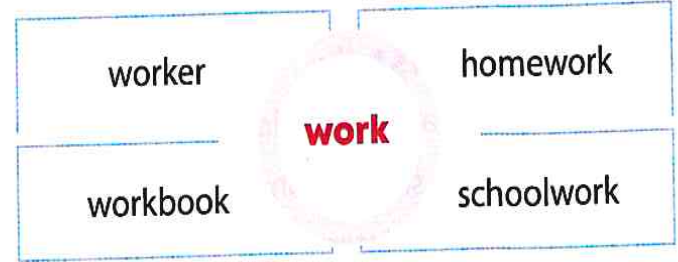
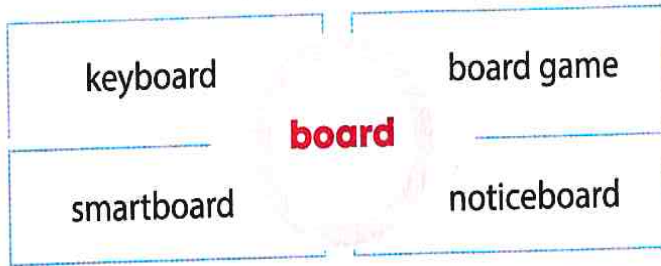
d) to taken

Word-building Skills

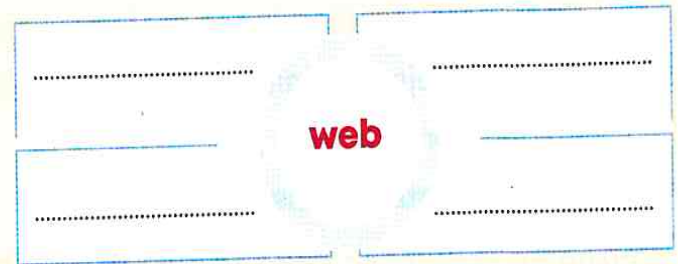
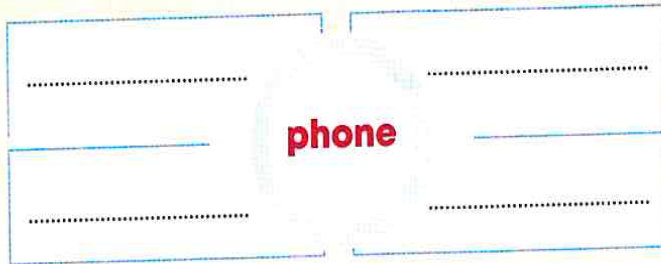
Word families

All words belong to families. There are different types of word families. One type of word family involves words that come from the same root word.

كل الكلمات تنتمي إلى عائلات. هناك أنواع مختلفة من عائلات الكلمات. نوع من عائلات الكلمات يضم كلمات لها نفس الأصل أو الجذر.



Read and complete the diagram:



Checkpoint

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

digital	رقمي	using computer technology or electronic devices
screen time	وقت الشاشة	the time you spend using devices like phones or computers
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	online platforms ⁽¹⁾ where people connect and share content

منصات (1)

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
subject (n)	موضوع	topic	موضوع	type (n)	نوع	kind/sort	نوع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
assign (v)	يُعيّن	-ment		تحويل إلى اسم		assignment (n)	مهمة دراسية
help (v)	يساعد	-ful		تحويل إلى صفة		helpful (adj)	مفيد

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
in-		تعطي العكس		correct (adj)	صحيح	incorrect (adj)	غير صحيح

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- 1 How much time do you spend on your phone or tablet every day?
- 2 Could you spend a whole day without using digital devices?

1. Listen to Ayman's talk:

Hi, I'm Ayman, a 13-year-old student. I love my digital life! Every day, I spend about three hours on my smartphone. I use social media to **chat**⁽¹⁾ with my friends and watch funny videos on the internet. It is fun, but sometimes I spend too much time online. My mom says I need to **reduce**⁽²⁾ my screen time because it affects my sleep. She's right. Sometimes I feel tired in the morning. I also use my tablet for homework, like researching for projects. Digital devices are great, but I think we need to **balance**⁽³⁾ them with **outdoor activities**⁽⁴⁾.

Post-listening questions:

Listen again to Ayman's talk and put "True" or "False".

- 1 Ayman is 13 years old.
- 2 Ayman spends five hours on his phone every day.
- 3 Ayman's mom says screen time affects his sleep.
- 4 Ayman never uses his tablet for homework.

2. Listen to the social media about Egypt's Hybrid Bus and answer the questions:

Egypt has **launched**⁽¹⁾ its first **hybrid**⁽²⁾ bus in Aswan. It runs on both **electricity**⁽³⁾ and **diesel**⁽⁴⁾, helping reduce pollution and protect the environment. The bus was made by an Egyptian company and includes modern technology like smart **navigation**⁽⁵⁾ and quiet **engines**⁽⁶⁾. It supports **Egypt's Vision**⁽⁷⁾ 2030 for clean, smart cities. Most parts of the bus are made locally, creating jobs. This bus is just the start of Egypt's journey to greener, smarter transport.

Post-listening questions:

Answer the questions:

- 1 What kind of energy does the hybrid bus use?
- 2 Where did Egypt launch the hybrid bus?
- 3 How does the bus help the environment?



Lesson 2

SB page 16



- (1) يدرّش (2) يقلل
(3) يوازن (4) أنشطة خارجية

- ()
()
()
()
()

- (1) يُطلق (2) هجين/ثنائي الوقود
(3) الكهرباء (4) السولار/الديزل
(5) الموتور (6) الملاحة/التنقل
(7) رؤية مصر

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Name some digital devices you usually use at school or home.
- 2 Do digital devices make your day interesting? Why?

 Read the email and answer the question. How many digital devices does Joury use?

SB page 12

To: Talia@moe.com

From: Joury@moe.com

Subject: Digital Devices

Hi Talia,

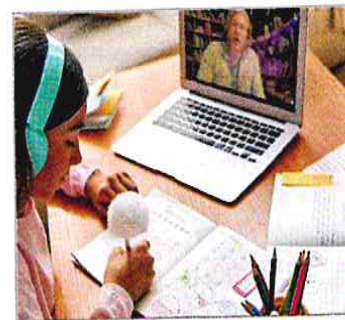
How are you? Today, I want to tell you about the digital devices I use every day to **achieve**⁽¹⁾ my **tasks**⁽²⁾. First, I always do my homework on the computer. I use the keyboard to write my **assignments**⁽³⁾. It is used for writing and typing. I also use the mouse to move around the screen and click on things.

When I watch videos or listen to music, I use my **headphones**⁽⁴⁾ or **speakers**⁽⁵⁾. If I want to make a video call with my friends online, I use the **webcam**⁽⁶⁾.

Sometimes, I have to **record**⁽⁷⁾ a presentation for class. That's when I use the microphone. At school; my teacher uses a smartboard to show his pictures, videos, and notes. At the end of the day, I print my homework using the **printer**⁽⁸⁾. It's super helpful! Write soon and tell me about the digital devices you use.

love,

Joury



- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| (1) إنجاز | (2) مهمات |
| (3) مهمة دراسية | (4) سماعات رأس |
| (5) مكبرات الصوت | (6) كاميرا ويب |
| (7) يسجل | (8) طابعة |

Post-reading questions:

1 Read again and choose the correct answer:

1. What digital device does Joury use to write her assignments?

a) Printer.	b) Mouse.	c) Keyboard.	d) Webcam.
-------------	-----------	--------------	------------
2. Why does Joury use a microphone?

a) To talk to friends online.	b) To write her homework.
c) To record class presentations.	d) To listen to music.
3. Which device is used to make video calls?

a) Headphones.	b) Webcam.	c) Smartboard.	d) Printer.
----------------	------------	----------------	-------------
4. What does Joury say about the printer?

a) It helps her watch videos.	b) It is used to write notes.
c) It is very helpful.	d) It is used to talk online.

2 Read again and answer the following questions:

1. How often does Joury use the digital devices?
2. Why do you think the smartboard is an important device?

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 26-27 وحاول أن تستخرج منها كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
topic	موضوع	helpful	مفيد
kind	نوع	connect	يتصل
right	صحيح	different	مختلف

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الأسئلة الأساسية في القطعة يمكن إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية (أي ما يدور حوله النص)، ويكون السؤال كالتالي:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
- What does the passage talk about?
- What is the passage about?

To find the main idea easily, you should follow these steps:

1. If there is a title, pay attention to it.
2. Read the first sentence.
3. Read the last sentence.
4. Look for repeated words or phrases.

لتجد الفكرة الرئيسية بسهولة عليك اتباع الخطوات التالية:
إذا كان هناك عنوان، فانته له.
اقرأ الجملة الأولى.
اقرأ الجملة الأخيرة.
ابحث عن الكلمات والعبارات المكررة.

FOR EXAMPLE:

I'm Adel. I use digital devices every day. I always do my homework on the computer. I use the keyboard to write my assignments. It is used for writing and typing. I also use the mouse to move around the screen and click on things. When I watch videos or listen to music, I use my headphones or speakers. If I want to make a video call with my friends online, I use the webcam.

- What is the passage about?

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- I use the keyboard to write my assignments.

☐ استخدم لوحة المفاتيح لكتابة واجباتي.

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

☐ استخدم لوحة المفاتيح لكتابة واجباتي.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

☐ A hybrid bus uses two kinds of power: Gas and electricity.

☐ A hybrid bus uses two kinds of power: Water and electricity.

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- الأتوبيس ثنائي الوقود يستخدم نوعين من الطاقة: الغاز والكهرباء.

LESSON

2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Food gives our body to play, so we need to eat healthy food.
a) electricity b) water c) energy d) oil
2. The uses both electricity and diesel. It's good for the environment.
a) bike b) hybrid bus c) smartphone d) ancient bus
3. The school helps teachers share lessons.
a) energy b) content c) wall d) platform
4. We will our website next week. It'll be ready soon.
a) listen b) carry c) launch d) affect
5. Exercise is my routine. I do it every day.
a) monthly b) weekly c) whole d) daily
6. Zahraa was late school yesterday. Her teacher was so angry.
a) at b) for c) in d) to
7. The of this book is very interesting. All the students like it.
a) content b) email c) energy d) cure
8. My today was only one hour. I shouldn't use my mobile phone for too long.
a) topic b) smartphone c) screen time d) social media
9. We use social media to our friends and watch funny videos on the internet.
a) aim for b) think about c) share with d) chat with
10. We must the amount كمية of pollution to live in a clean environment.
a) reuse b) disappear c) reduce d) produce
11. Children need to the use of digital devices with other activities.
a) share b) balance c) produce d) think
12. The use of green transportation supports Egypt's 2030 for clean, smart cities.
a) Action b) Promise c) Vision d) Passion

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

devices – content – hybrid – smartphone – tails

My teacher launched a fun new platform where we share stories. I uploaded my own (1) yesterday. After school, I watched a video about the (2) bus. It was really interesting. I learned that wasting energy can hurt the world. We should use (3) that help, not harm. I will also try to sleep early and not spend time on my (4) late at night.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I use a to click on things on my computer.
a) keyboard b) printer c) mouse d) speaker
2. Most young people use when they listen to music.
a) a keyboard b) a printer c) headphones d) a microphone
3. You must work hard to your task on time.
a) choose b) lose c) achieve d) stop
4. Our teacher spoke into the, so we could hear her.
a) printer b) webcam c) mouse d) microphone
5. Clever students like to the important lessons to listen to them later.
a) print b) type c) record d) name
6. Our is to make a poster about using digital devices wisely.
a) printer b) assignment c) development d) worker
7. My dad taught me how to a video call using the family tablet.
a) make b) achieve c) do d) name
8. My sister prepared a great presentation her school's show.
a) under b) with c) from d) for
9. My first today is writing a paragraph.
a) task b) speaker c) tusk d) music
10. A is used for typing.
a) webcam b) speaker c) keyboard d) mouse
11. My father's makes very clear pages.
a) printer b) headphones c) webcam d) keyboard
12. I usually use a for my online video call.
a) speaker b) mouse c) webcam d) printer

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

headphones – devices – keyboard – mouse – printer

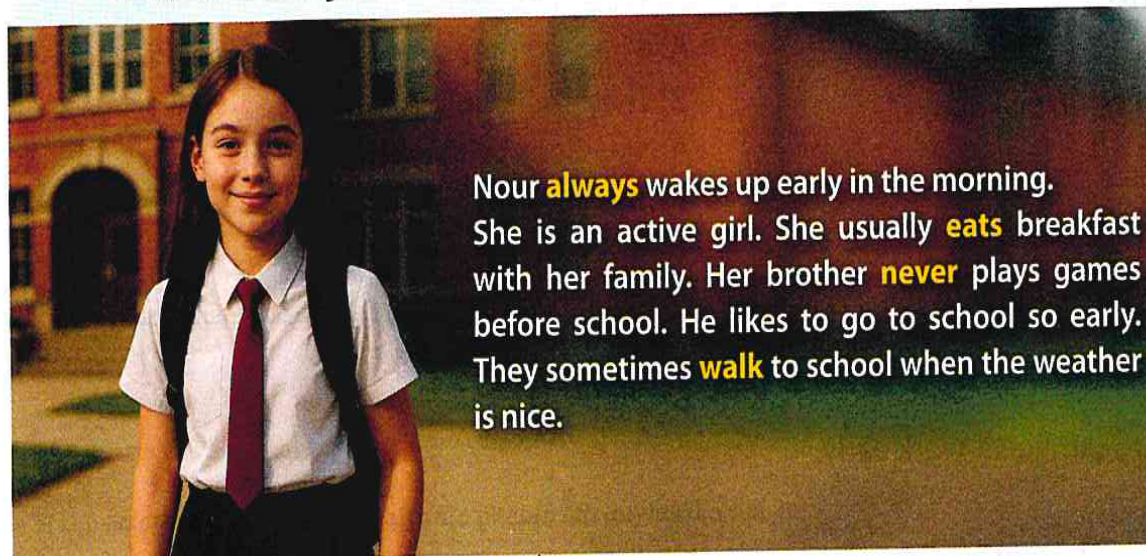
At school I did my tasks well. I used my (1) to type answers in my workbook. Later, I listened to music with my (2) during break. I needed to finish a small assignment before lunch. At the end of the day, I used the (3) to print my science project. I think digital (4) help me achieve more in less time.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



The present simple tense

Grammar story:



Nour **always** wakes up early in the morning. She is an active girl. She usually **eats** breakfast with her family. Her brother **never** plays games before school. He likes to go to school so early. They sometimes **walk** to school when the weather is nice.

- Read the story and write the adverbs of frequency:

اقرأ القصة واكتب ظروف التكرار الموجودة بها:

1.

2.

3.

Let's remember the usage and the form of the present simple tense:

هيا بنا نتذكر استخدام وتكوين زمن المضارع البسيط:

We use the present simple tense to describe:

Habits and routines العادات والروتين اليومي:

e.g. She **wakes** up at 7 a.m. every day.

Facts الحقائق:

e.g. The sun **rises** in the east.



Affirmative الإثبات

Form التكوين

Negative النفي

مصدر الفعل + **inf.** + اسم جمع **I, We, They, You**

e.g. • I **wake** up early.

• We **visit** our grandparents on weekends.

مصدر الفعل + **(s, es, ies)** + اسم مفرد **He, She, It**

e.g. • Nadia **travels** to Alex every summer.

• He **studies** English on Fridays.

مصدر الفعل + **don't + inf.** + اسم جمع **I, We, They, you**

e.g. • They **don't walk** to school.

• Samar and I **don't watch** TV in the evenings.

مصدر الفعل + **doesn't + inf.** + اسم مفرد **He, She, It**

e.g. • Omar **doesn't play** tennis.

• She **doesn't eat** dinner at 8 p.m.

Yes/ No question السؤال بمعنى هل

Do/Does + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. A: Do you study on weekends?

B: No, I don't.

A: Does your brother go to the club on Fridays?

B: Yes, he does.

Question السؤال

Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.word أداة استفهام + do/does

+ subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. A: Where do they spend their summer vacation?

B: They spend it in Alex.

A: How does Leila go to school?

B: She goes to school by bus.

Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My dad always (arrive) at work early.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (arrives) لأن الفاعل مفرد والجملة في زمن المضارع البسيط.

2 We (not/ watch) TV in the morning; we prefer reading or listening to music.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (don't watch) لأن الفاعل جمع والجملة منفية في زمن المضارع البسيط.

Adverbs of frequency

ظروف التكرار

100%

always

I always wake up early.

90%

usually

I usually watch videos on my phone.

70%

often

He often walks to school.

50%

sometimes

I sometimes feel shy.

10%

rarely

She rarely uses social media.

0%

never

He never reads paper books.



Form

التكوين

مصدر الفعل + **inf.** + ظرف التكرار **adverb of frequency** + اسم جمع **I, We, They, You**

e.g. • My kids **always** go to school by bus.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **inf.** + **s, es, ies** + ظرف التكرار **adverb of frequency**

e.g. • He **usually** listens to music on his way to school.

كما لاحظنا يتم وضع ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي، ولكن يختلف الوضع مع **verb to be** كالتالي:

صفة **adjective** + ظرف التكرار **adverb of frequency** + **(am/is/are)** + Subject

e.g. • We are **usually** late.

• Mona is **always** clever.

لاحظ أن

١- عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم **(How often)**:

How often

do I you
we they
(اسم جمع) > **inf. ...?**
مصدر الفعل

e.g. A: How often **do** Nora and Yasmine **study** science?

B: They **sometimes** **study** science.

does he she
it (اسم مفرد) > **inf. ...?**
مصدر الفعل

e.g. A: How often **does** Nader walk to school?

B: He **always** walks to school.

٢- يمكننا استخدام الكلمات التالية عند الإجابة عن السؤال بـ **How often**:

ثلاث مرات **three times** / مرتان **twice** / مرة واحدة **once**

e.g. • I visit my grandparents **once** a week.

(مرة في الأسبوع)

• She cleans the bedroom **twice** a day.

(مرتان في اليوم)

Got it ?

تمنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I (always) eat fish. I don't like it.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي **(never)** لأن الفاعل لا يحب أكل السمك.

2 Omar (rarely) walks to school. He goes on foot every day.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي **(always)** لأن الفاعل يمشي إلى المدرسة كل يوم.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Lara often TV after dinner.
a) watches b) watch c) is watching d) was watching
2. Ayman forgets to bring his lunch, so he shares mine.
a) no b) never c) does not d) sometimes
3. Malak arrives late to school. She comes on time.
a) never b) often c) always d) usually
4. Yasmin helps her mother with cooking. She doesn't know how to cook.
a) usually b) often c) always d) never
5. How often go to the library?
a) is Rayan b) Rayan is c) does Rayan d) Rayan does
6. Jody happy when she gets good grades.
a) always is b) is always c) always d) does always
7. The children excited about visiting their grandparents.
a) usually are b) are usually c) usually d) do usually
8. Nour ready for bed by nine o'clock.
a) rarely b) is rarely c) rarely is d) does rarely

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Zeinab (always is) on time. She never comes late for school.
2. How often does Kady (goes) to the swimming pool?
3. The children (be) sometimes noisy in the playground.
4. Yara (not/usually) forget her homework.
5. My brother (plays often) video games after school.
6. Nour is (never) afraid of the dark. She doesn't like to go alone in dark.
7. How often (you/visit) your grandparents?
8. The teacher (be) always kind to us.
9. My cat always (sleep) on my bed.
10. We (go/sometimes) to the beach on weekends.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **A:** How does Zein visit the park? **B:** Twice a month.
 a) time b) often c) high d) fast
2. The teacher is patient with new students. He likes to explain many times.
 a) always b) rarely c) not d) never
3. Omar reads ebooks. He reads them once or twice a year.
 a) usually b) rarely c) often d) always
4. How often Amira practice the piano?
 a) does b) is c) has d) was
5. Reem tired after swimming lessons.
 a) sometimes b) is sometimes c) sometimes is d) does sometimes
6. Adam eats vegetables with his meals. He doesn't like them at all.
 a) rarely b) never c) always d) is always
7. The bus late on rainy days.
 a) often is b) is often c) does often d) often does
8. Leila always books before sleeping.
 a) will read b) is reading c) read d) reads

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Samira (usually/come) first. She studies hard.
2. The students (often/are) excited at breaks.
3. How often (they/do) play basketball?
4. Farah (sometimes/is) late for science class.
5. The bus usually (arrive) at eight o'clock every morning.
6. Karim doesn't often (eats) breakfast.
7. My parents (watch/rarely) TV in the morning.
8. Jana (always/doesn't) agree with her sister.
9. How often (Ibrahim/read) books?



Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة مقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write an email كيفية كتابة بريد إلكتروني

توضح النقاط التالية خطوات كتابة البريد الإلكتروني:

From:

To:

Subject:

Hello/Hi + (اسم المرسل إليه)

١- نكتب اسم المرسل.

٢- نكتب اسم المرسل إليه.

٣- الموضوع.

٤- التحية:

٥- نبدأ جملة افتتاحية، مثل:

- How are you and your family? I'm happy to write this email to you.

- How are you? I hope you are in good health.

See you soon/Best wishes/All the best,

Love/Yours + اسم المرسل

٦- نكتب حوالى (٨٠ - ٩٠) كلمة عن الموضوع.

٧- الجملة الختامية، مثل:

٨- توقيع المرسل.

Example

How to write an email about digital devices you usually use at school or home

كتابة بريد إلكتروني حول الأدوات الرقمية التي تستخدمها عادةً في المدرسة أو المنزل

Write an email to your friend Omar to tell him about digital devices you usually use at school or home. Your name is Khaled.

اسم المرسل إليه

اسم المرسل

الموضوع

To : omar@yahoo.com

From : khaled@yahoo.com

Subject : My Favorite Digital Devices

التحية + اسم المرسل إليه

Hi Omar,

جملة افتتاحية

How are you and your family? I hope you are well. I want to tell you about the digital devices I

نتحدث عن

الموضوع

usually use at school and at home. At school, I use a tablet to read ebooks and do my homework.

We also use a smartboard in class. At home, I use my laptop to watch videos and write my projects.

I sometimes use my smartphone to send emails. Digital devices help me learn in a fun way!

الختام

Yours,

اسم المرسل

Khaled



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did they do in science class?

a) Played games.

b) Wrote stories.

c) Searched for planet facts.

d) Used paint.

2. Where did they type the facts?

a) Notebook.

b) Class website.

c) Chalkboard.

d) Tablet.

3. What did they do before bed?

a) Watched TV.

b) Used night mode.

c) Played outside.

d) Called a friend.

B) Listen and complete:

4. We used in science class.

5. I played games after school.

6. I read from my before bed.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Please turn off the when you finish. You used lots of paper.

a) printer

b) speaker

c) mouse

d) keyboard

2. Modern cars include that cause little pollution.

a) drivers

b) engines

c) fans

d) vans

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

headphones – microphone – printer – digital – achieve

Today, I had to record a poem I wrote. I used the (1)..... and read it slowly. Then I listened again with my (2)..... . I had to repeat it until it was clear. This assignment helped me (3)..... a task for English class. I sent the file to my teacher using a (4)..... device on the school site.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

We had our first online class today. Our teacher, Mr. Said, used a webcam and microphone so we could hear and see him. I used my headphones so I could listen carefully. When it was my turn to speak, I clicked on the screen with my mouse and used my keyboard to type answers. Mr. Said gave us an assignment to write a short report. I worked on it for one hour. At the end of class, we had music time. The teacher played a song through his speakers. I really enjoyed the class and I think learning online is a great way to explore the digital world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The student worked for on the assignment.
a) 10 minutes b) One hour c) two days d) the whole night
2. The underlined verb "explore" is similar in meaning to
a) stay away b) play with c) learn and discover d) encourage

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
4. Why did the student use headphones?
5. What does the underlined pronoun "his" refer to?
6. What are some good things about online classes?

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The weather cold in winter.
a) always is b) is always c) is never d) never is
2. How often does Jana her grandmother?
a) called b) calling c) calls d) call

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My friends (come/always) to my parties.
2. The garden usually (look) lovely in spring.
3. The stars (always/are) beautiful at night.
4. My dad (usually) works on weekends. He doesn't work on holidays.

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Digital devices you use at school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nader (always) disagrees with his best friend. They have the same opinions.
2. How (often) times do you visit your grandma?
3. My grandfather (never) travels alone. He travels alone once every three years.

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

ability (n)	قدرة	clue (n)	دليل	magic (adj/n)	سحري/سحر
announcement (n)	إعلان	collaborate (d) (v)	يتعاون	mystery (n)	لغز/سر/غموض
appear (ed) (v)	يظهر	encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	puzzle (n)	لغز
challenge (n)	تحدي	fluently (dv)	بطلاقة/بسهولة	responsibility (n)	مسئولية

Important Adjectives

صفات هامة

cheerful	مبتهمج/سعيد	floating	عائم/طاف	nervous	متوتر/قلق
curious	فضولي/متطلع	glowing	متوهج/مشع	shining	لامع/مشرق
excited	متحمس/متشوق	magical	سحري	shy	خجول

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

carefully (adv)	بعناية/بحرص	enter (ed) (v)	يدخل	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح
chapter (n)	فصل/باب (كتاب)	group (n)	مجموعة	together (adv)	معًا/سويًا
complete (d) (v)	يكمل/يكتمل	smile (d) (v)	يبتسم	wait (ed) (v)	ينتظر
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	solve (d) (v)	يحل		

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

click open	ينقر لفتح	interested in	مهتم بـ	show responsibility	يظهر المسؤولية
eager to	متلهف لـ	make an announcement	يقدم إعلانًا	stay curious	يبقى فضوليًا
excited about	متشوق لـ	ready for	مستعد لـ	useful for	مفيد لـ
fill with	يملأ بـ	share ideas	يشارك الأفكار	walk through	يمشي خلال

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تمريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
feel	يشعر	felt	felt	know	يعرف
find	يجد	found	found	said	يقول
				known	said

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي	calm	هادئ	noisy	ماخب
bright	مشرق	dark	مظلم	locked	مقفل	unlocked	مفتوح
kind	عطوف/طيب	unkind	غير عطوف	positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

with - challenge - of - solve

- 1 Climbing the tall mountain was a big, but I succeeded.
- 2 My sister helped me the puzzle in the storybook.
- 3 I like to fill my water bottle juice before a picnic.

LESSON 5

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

command (n)	أمر	music player (n)	مشغل موسيقى	simple (adj)	بسيط
daily (adj/adv)	يومي/يوميًا	produce (d) (v)	ينتج	the latest (adj)	الأحدث
friendly (adj)	ودود	routine (n)	روتين	trust (ed) (v/n)	يثق في/ثقة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

letter (n)	حرف/خطاب	sound (n)	صوت
well (adv)	جيدًا/بطريقة جيدة		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

in the evening	في المساء	write back	يرد	go online	يتصل بالإنترنت
reply to	يرد على	get ready	يستعد	have breakfast	يتناول الفطور

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.
get up	got up	got up
go	went	gone

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
simple	بسيط	complex	معقد

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

have - routine - get - sound

- I read a short story every day. It's my daily
- I heard a loud coming from the kitchen.
- We need to ready before the bus comes.

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

cheerful	مبتهج/سعيد	happy and positive ⁽¹⁾ person	(1) إيجابي
curious	فضولي	feeling interested in learning and knowing ⁽²⁾	(2) المعرفة
collaborate	يتعاون	to work with another person or a group of people	(3) القدرة
challenge	تحدي	something that is difficult and tests someone's ability ⁽³⁾ to complete	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
command (n)	أمر	order	أمر	discover (v)	يكتشف	find out	يكتشف
daily (adj/adv)	يومي/يوميًا	every day	كل يوم	simple (adj)	بسيط	easy	سهل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
magic (n)	سحر	-al		تحويل إلى صفة		magical (adj)	سحري

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطي عكس المعنى		friendly (adj)	ودود	unfriendly (adj)	عدائي/غير ودود
				important (adj)	مهم	unimportant (adj)	غير مهم
dis-				appear (v)	يظهر	disappear (v)	يختفي

B Reading & Listening Skills

The Magic Classroom

Lesson 4

Pre-reading questions:

1 Do you like to work with others? Why?

2 Do you have shy and nervous friends?

 Read the following text. How did children feel when the box clicked open?

SB page 20

CHAPTER ONE:

The first challenge

In a **cheerful**⁽¹⁾ village school, the children loved discovering new things. One day, their teacher, Mr. Adam, made an exciting **announcement**⁽²⁾. "Next week, we will enter the Magic Classroom," he said. "To succeed, you need to show **responsibility**⁽³⁾ and work together."

The children were curious and excited. When the day came, they walked through a **glowing**⁽⁴⁾ door and found themselves in a room filled with floating puzzles, shining books, and magical **clues**⁽⁵⁾. On the wall, a message read: "Only those who **collaborate**⁽⁶⁾ and stay curious can unlock the mysteries."

Sara, who was always eager to learn, said, "Let's think carefully and help each other." Omar, who sometimes felt **shy**⁽⁷⁾, looked nervous. Zain, calm and kind, encouraged him, "We'll do it together."

Their first challenge was a locked box. They shared ideas and solved the challenge by working as a team. As the box clicked open, a bright light appeared, and a new **challenge**⁽⁸⁾ was waiting. They smiled, ready for whatever came next.



(1) مبتهج/سعيد

(2) إعلان

(3) مسئولية

(4) متوهج

(5) حلول

(6) يتعاون

(7) خجول

(8) تحدّ



THE MAGIC CLASSROOM EXERCISES

CHAPTER



1 Read and match the words to their meanings:

(A)	(B)
1. cheerful	(a) something that is difficult and tests someone's ability to compete
2. curious	(b) to work with another person or a group of people
3. collaborate	(c) happy and positive person
4. challenge	(d) feeling interested in learning and knowing

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Omar felt at the beginning.
a) sad b) nervous c) worried d) happy
- Who made the announcement?
a) Sara. b) Omar. c) Zain. d) Mr. Adam.
- How did the children manage to solve the first challenge?
a) They fought together. b) They shared ideas. c) They helped other teams. d) They made a map.
- The children felt after they opened the box.
a) angry b) scared c) happy d) worried

3 Answer the following questions:

- What was Mr. Adam's advice?
.....
- Who was always eager to learn?
.....
- What did the children love doing in the village school?
.....

4 Critical Thinking:

- Why do you think children were curious and excited about the Magic Classroom?
.....
- Why do you think sharing ideas is useful for children?
.....

Pre-reading question:

- Do you use any digital devices like a phone, tablet, or computer in your daily life?

 **Read and complete.**

Lesson 5

SB page 22



To : ayman@moe.com

From : ahmed@moe.com

Subject : My Digital Day

Hi Ayman,

How are you? I want to tell you about my **digital** day. When I get up, I always check my **phone**. I read **messages** from my friends and reply to them. Then, I have breakfast while I use my **tablet** to search for the latest news. At school, teachers usually use a **smartboard** to help us learn well. We always use computers in the ICT class.

After school, I often go online searching for the information for my homework. I always take information from the **website** I trust. In the evening, I sometimes play **online** games with my friends. I never read **ebooks** on my tablet. I think they are boring. My mother always says, "Reading is better than playing online games." What about you?

Write back and tell me about your digital day.

yours,

Ahmed



Team-Project Roundtable

ملصق الأمان الرقمي Digital Safety Poster

Lesson 6

SB page 24

Design an eye-catching poster that teaches others how to stay safe online.

صمم ملصقا ملفتا للنظر يعلم الآخرين أن يبقوا آمنين عبر الإنترنت.

التعليمات:

These are special and how they inspire you to think about your future.

وضح لماذا هو/هي شخص مميز وكيف يُلهمك للتفكير في مستقبلك.

قم بتضمين خمس نصائح أمان على الأقل.

استخدم مفردات خاصة بالتكنولوجيا.

قم بإضافة صور ورسومات.

اجعله ملونا وسهل القراءة.

tips.

44 Unit 1

on your classroom wall.

اعرض ملصقك للفصل أو اعرضه على حائط فصلك.



LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I learned to ride a bike alone. It was my first
 a) clue b) puzzle c) challenge d) door
2. Our teacher loves students who ask a lot of questions to understand. He loves students.
 a) cheerful b) glowing c) shy d) curious
3. We learned how to to solve a big glowing puzzle together.
 a) wait b) enter c) collaborate d) walk
4. There was an exciting in the school about the next trip.
 a) glue b) announcement c) mystery d) clue
5. Parents often their children to read new books and discover fun stories.
 a) collaborate b) wait c) smile d) encourage
6. The children were interested the strange glowing puzzles.
 a) with b) in c) for d) to
7. Mr. Said helped them get ready the biggest puzzle.
 a) from b) with c) to d) for
8. Omar was happy when he helped the box using the clue they found.
 a) walk b) unlock c) wait d) enter
9. The group had to the last puzzle before the lesson ended.
 a) smile b) enter c) solve d) wait
10. My mom is ill, so it's my to look after my little sister.
 a) word b) responsibility c) clue d) magic
11. A new challenge will when we open a locked magical box.
 a) appear b) wait c) discover d) enter

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

magical – mystery – announcement – proud – shy

In the cheerful school, the children were eager to learn. Mr. Adam made an exciting (1)..... about a new adventure. Everyone was curious and couldn't wait. When the glowing door appeared, they walked through it. Inside, (2)..... puzzles floated in the air. The group showed responsibility and worked hard. They solved the first (3)..... using clues. With teamwork, they smiled and felt (4)..... of their ability to succeed.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Noha bought a portable to take on her trip. She likes listening to music.
a) letter b) command c) sound d) music player
2. A neighbor can make a big difference in your community.
a) friendly b) complex c) lazy d) daily
3. I usually walk for about 30 minutes every day. It's my daily
a) letter b) sound c) routine d) command
4. The teacher gave a to the students to start their test.
a) letter b) sound c) command d) routine
5. Please write to your cousin Rayan who sent you a birthday card last week.
a) down b) back c) up d) over
6. Every evening, Sarah needs to online to check her school assignments before bedtime.
a) put b) make c) take d) go
7. The question was easy. It's
a) complex b) difficult c) simple d) daily
8. On the school trip, all students will breakfast together in the hotel dining room.
a) go b) do c) have d) make
9. Every morning, Nour needs thirty minutes to ready for school.
a) make b) get c) do d) have
10. Amina forgot to reply her friend's message yesterday.
a) to b) with c) for d) on
11. The of the birds singing in the morning is lovely.
a) command b) sound c) letter d) routine

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

trust – go – went – have – routine

Every day is fun when digital devices help me learn. I (1) breakfast, then go to school where we follow our learning (2) Sometimes, we listen to a music player while drawing. I (3) my teacher's advice on which websites to use. I love reading the latest stories online. In the evening, I (4) online to find more information about certain subjects. the teacher is always friendly.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



Skills Bank

Writing

How to write an email to a friend about your digital day.

كيفية كتابة بريدًا إلكترونيًا إلى صديق عن يومك الرقمي.

1 What do you do when you get up in the morning?

ماذا تفعل عندما تستيقظ صباحًا؟

e.g. I check my phone when I get up.

2 What digital devices do you use at home?

ما الأجهزة الرقمية التي تستخدمها في البيت؟

e.g. I use a phone, a tablet, a laptop,

3 What digital devices do you use at school?

ما الأجهزة الرقمية التي تستخدمها في المدرسة؟

e.g. At school, we use a smartboard, a tablet,

My digital day

4 How do you use the internet in your day? كيف تستخدم الإنترنت في يومك؟

e.g. I often go online searching for the information for my homework.

5 What do you do online in the evening?

ماذا تفعل على الإنترنت في المساء؟

e.g. In the evening, I sometimes play games or listen to music.

اقرأ الأسئلة السابقة وإجاباتها واستخدمها لتكوين فقرة:

To: **From:** **Subject:**

.....

.....

.....

نموذج مجاب عنه:

To: sara@yahoo.com

From: lina@yahoo.com

Subject: My Digital Day

Hi Sara,

How are you? I want to tell you about my digital day. When I get up, I check my messages on my phone. After breakfast, I use my tablet to search for school news. At school, we use a smartboard and computers in the computer lab. After school, I go online to do my homework. I also listen to music on my music player. In the evening, I sometimes play games. What about your digital day?

Write back soon!

Your friend, Lina

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I love reading books. They're really exciting.
a) mystery b) boring c) tasty d) nasty
- Farmers work hard to fresh fruits and vegetables.
a) trust b) produce c) buy d) go

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

video – trust – routine – get – go

I got up late today, but I still followed my digital (1) I used my music player during breakfast. Later, at school, we watched a (2) that helped us understand how machines produce things. I always (3) online after school to do my work well. When the teacher gave a command, we clicked "Start." The websites we visit are friendly, and I (4) them to give the right information.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- How often (they/travel) abroad?
- Sama (sometimes/is) shy with strangers.
- Youssef (not) often lose his things. He's organized.
- The sun always (shine) in the desert.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Salma is typing a story on the keyboard.

Omar : What are you doing, Salma?

Salma : (1).....

Omar : That looks fun! Are you using the mouse too?

Salma : (2)..... I'm using it to click on pictures.

Omar : (3).....?

Salma : That's the smartboard. Our teacher shows videos on it.

Omar : (4).....?

Salma : Yes, of course. You can try using it.

لا حظ:
الإجابة بجملة كاملة
أو سؤال كامل.

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

Vocabulary

1 Read and complete using the words from the box:

printer – speaker – keyboard – microphone

1. A is a device that produces sound from a computer, phone, or music player.
2. A is a device used to type letters, numbers, and commands into a computer.
3. A is a device used for recording sound.

Language

2 Write Five (5) sentences about yourself using the following:

1. (always) :
2. (usually) :
3. (often) :
4. (sometimes) :
5. (never) :

Writing

3 Write an email of about 75 words about using technology in your daily life.

"New Message"

To:
From:
Subject:

A) Vocabulary

achieve (d) (v)	يحقق/ينجز
app (n) (application)	تطبيق
assignment (n)	مهمة دراسية
cheerful (adj)	متبهرج/متفرد
clue (n)	دليل/تلميح
collaborate (d) (v)	يتعاون
content (n)	محتوى
curious (adj)	فضول/متطلع
device (n)	جهاز
digital (adj)	رقمي
ebook (n)	كتاب إلكتروني
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
energy (n)	طاقة
floating(adj)	عائم/طاف
fluently (adv)	بطلاقة/بسهولة
glowing (adj)	متوهج/مشع
habit (n)	عادة (شخصية)
hybrid bus (n)	حافلة هجينة
magic (adj/n)	سحري/سحر
mystery (n)	لغز/سر/غموض
night mode (n)	الوضع الليلي
platform (n)	منصة
print (ed) (v)	يطبع
printer (n)	طابعة
puzzle (n)	لغز/أحجية
record (ed) (v)	يسجل
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية
screen time (n)	وقت الشاشة
search (v) (for)	يبحث (عن)
shining (adj)	لامع/مشرق
smartboard (n)	سبورة ذكية
smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي
speaker (n)	مكبر صوت
task (n)	مهمة
webcam (n)	كاميرا ويب

B) Language

1. The present simple tense

تذكر زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative

I, We, They, You, جمع اسم مفرد + inf.

e.g. I always wake up early.

He, She, It, مصدر مفرد + inf. (s, es, ies)

e.g. Nadia travels to Alex every summer.

Negative

I, We, They, You, جمع اسم مفرد + don't + inf.

e.g. They don't walk to school.

He, She, It, مصدر مفرد + doesn't + inf.

e.g. Omar doesn't play tennis.

2. Adverbs of frequency

ظروف التكرار

Always (100%)

- Fares **always** walks to school.

Usually (90%)

- We **usually** watch TV in the evening.

Often (70%)

- Ali **often** plays with Reda after school.

Sometimes (50%)

- They **sometimes** go to the park.

Rarely (10%)

- Sally **rarely** eats unhealthy food.

Never (0%)

- I **never** go to school late.

How often

نستخدمها عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار

A: How often **does** Nader walk to school?

B: He **always** walks to school.

C) Speaking

Expressing personal experiences and opinions about digital devices

A: What technology/devices do you use every day?

B: I use my tablet, smartphone, and sometimes the computer at school.

A: What device do you use most?

B: I use my tablet the most.

A: When do you use it?

B: I use it after school, on weekends, and sometimes at school.

A: What do you usually do on your phone or tablet during the day?

B: I usually watch videos, play games, read stories, and do my homework on my tablet.

A

Listening



1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What was the project about?

a) Dinosaurs.

c) Planets.

b) Plants.

d) Animals.

2. What did they draw?

a) A tree.

c) A robot.

b) A person.

d) A planet.

3. What do they use at bedtime?

a) Loud music.

c) Flashlight.

b) Night mode.

d) Phone calls.

B) Listen and complete:

4. We had a project about the

5. I drew a using an app.

6. I read more about space from my

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The has many useful apps. I use it in my study and doing my schoolwork.

a) environment

c) platform

b) smartphone

d) device

2. I will this task in color, so I need good quality paper.

a) print

c) record

b) name

d) trust

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

with – of – discover – collaborate – as

One day, Mr. Darahem made an announcement. "Tomorrow, we will (1)..... a special classroom!" The children were filled (2)..... wonder. They entered a glowing room with magical items. Omar found a clue under a table. The puzzle wasn't easy, but they worked (3)..... a team. Each child shared their idea. Slowly, the box opened. Their ability to (4)..... and stay curious helped them succeed.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Heba (not/always) eat candy.
2. My sister (sings/sometimes) in the shower.
3. Hassan always (say) please. He's a kind boy.
4. (Who) often do they go skiing?

7 Complete the following dialog:

Kareem asks Dina about what she is doing.

Kareem : What are you doing, Dina?

Dina : I'm watching a lesson on the smartboard.

Kareem : Wow! (1)..... you wearing headphones?

Dina : Yes, I am. To hear clearly.

Kareem : (2)..... you need help with the mouse?

Dina : No, thanks. I can (3)..... the mouse by myself now.

Kareem : That's great. I'll use the keyboard next.

Dina : Let's learn together with our (4)..... devices!



Writing

8 Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Basmala to tell her about the digital devices you use every day. Your name is Fatma.

To:

From:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 2

LEARNING TO LEARN

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify the main idea in texts about learning styles and tools.
Identify specific details about different learning strategies and methods.

Relate reading content to personal experiences with learning.

Listening

Identify the main idea in audio texts about learning goals and strategies.

Identify specific details about setting and achieving personal learning goals.

Speaking

Express personal learning styles, habits, and preferences.
Share and reflect on learning experiences in small groups.

Language

Use “can” accurately to describe learning abilities.
Use present continuous tense correctly.

Writing

Write short descriptive sentences about personal learning styles and habits.

Write about a learning app, website, or activity.

• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان؛ حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
• قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع لملاحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

A VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

colorful (adj)	ملون	learner (n)	متعلم	mind maps (n)	خرائط ذهنية
identify (y) (ied) (v)	يحدد/يتعرف على	learning style (n)	أسلوب التعلم	neat (adj)	أنيق/مرتب
journey (n)	رحلة	method (n)	طريقة	organize (d) (v)	ينظم
Types of learners أنواع المتعلمين					
auditory (adj)	سمعي	kinesthetic (adj)	حركي	visual (adj)	بصري

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

answer (ed) (n/v)	حل/يحل	passion (n)	عاطفة	problem (n)	مشكلة
arrange (d) (v)	يرتب	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	real life (n)	حياة واقعية
body (n)	جسم/جسد	action (n)	حركة	sight (n)	البصر
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	order (ed) (n/v)	ترتيب/يرتب	study space (n)	مكان المذاكرة
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	particular (adj)	معين/محدد	suit (ed) (v)	يناسب
example (n)	مثال	physical (adj)	جسدي/مادي	touch (ed) (v)	يلمس
explanation (n)	شرح	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	way (n)	طريق/طريقة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at the front of	في مقدمة	with my hands	بيدي	learn best	يتعلم بشكل أفضل
away from	بعيداً عن	build models	ينشئ نماذج	make maps/charts	يُعد خرائط/جداول
related to	متعلق/مرتبط بـ	do experiments	يجري تجارب	repeat/say out loud	يكرر/يقول بصوت عالٍ
talk with	يتكلم بـ	do hands-on activities	يقوم بأنشطة عملية	take short breaks	يأخذ استراحات قصيرة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs							
Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn	put	يضع	put	put
build	يبني	built	built	say	يقول	said	said
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	sit	يجلس	sat	sat
let	يدع/يسمح	let	let	understand	يفهم	understood	understood

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
quiet	هادئ	noisy	صاخب	right	صحيح	wrong	خطأ
remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى				

Read and complete with a word from the list:

arrange – method – to – draw – build

Checkpoint

- 1 A is a way of doing something in a planned or organized manner أسلوب.
- 2 I like to my books by color on the shelf.
- 3 The students worked in groups to models of animals.
- 4 We watched a video related our science lesson.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

- 1 every + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد
• **Every person** learns differently.

كل

- 2 by + v+ing
• Some people learn best **by seeing** information.

بواسطة

Types of learners أنواع المتعلمين

Types أنواع	Characteristics الصفات	Needs / Purpose الغرض / الاحتياجات
Visual Learners	- Learn best by seeing information. - Like to read books and look at pictures. - Use colorful notes. - Often create maps and charts.	- To see information presented in a visual format. - Materials like books, pictures, charts, and colorful notes.
Auditory Learners	- Learn best by hearing information. - Like to listen to music while studying. - Enjoy discussing topics with others. - Often repeat information out loud to remember it.	- To hear explanations. - To talk and repeat information aloud. - To listen to lessons or music.
Kinesthetic Learners	- Learn best by moving and touching. - Do experiments and build models. - Need to take breaks to move around. - Often use their hands.	- Hands-on activities. - To build things, do experiments, and move while learning.

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

visual	بصري	related to ⁽¹⁾ sight and seeing	(1) متعلق ب
mind maps	خرائط ذهنية	a visual tool ⁽²⁾ used to organize information	(2) أداة
auditory	سمعي	related to hearing things	(3) الحركة البدنية
kinesthetic	حركي	related to hands-on activities and physical action ⁽³⁾	(4) ترتيب خاص
organize	ينظم	to arrange or put things in a particular order ⁽⁴⁾ or a neat ⁽⁵⁾ way	(5) أنيق/مرتب

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
organize (d) (v)	ينظم	arrange (d) (v)	يرتب
neat (adj)	أنيق/مرتب	tidy (adj)	مرتب/منظم
quiet (adj)	هادئ	calm (adj)	هادئ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
color (n)	لون	-ful		تحول إلى صفة		colorful (adj)	ملون
learn (n)	يتعلم	-er		تحول إلى اسم فاعل		learner (n)	متعلم
enjoy (n)	يستمتع ب	-able		تحول إلى صفة		enjoyable (adj)	ممتع

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I'm a/an learner; I learn best by seeing information.
a) visual b) auditory c) kinesthetic d) oral
- Nada enjoys reading stories before bedtime. We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of "enjoy".
a) -er b) -ing c) -ous d) -able
- Let's organize our bedroom. "Organize" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) arrange b) identify c) enjoy d) remember

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

– What is your learning style?

Lesson 1

“Find Your Learning Style!”

1. Read and choose the answer that best describes you:

SB page 28

"Always", or "Never". Put a check mark (✓) and count.

	Statement	Always	Never
1	I learn best when my study space is organized ⁽¹⁾ .		
2	I learn best when I can touch things, move around, or do activities with my hands.		
3	I understand better when teachers talk with a lot of energy and passion ⁽²⁾ .		
4	I like to use neat ⁽³⁾ notes, colorful pens, and pictures to help me remember things.		
5	I like to say things out loud to remember them, or talk about topics with friends.		
6	When I study, I need to take short breaks and move my body.		
7	When I have a problem, I like to write or draw it to see the answer.		
8	I like teachers who use examples from real life and let us do hands-on activities ⁽⁴⁾ .		
9	I learn best in quiet places, away from talking or music.		

Visual	Auditory	Kinesthetic

(1) مرتب / منظم

(2) عاطفة

(3) منسق/مرتّب

(4) أنشطة عملية

- If "yellow" has the most, you are a "visual" learner.
- If "red" has the most, you are an "auditory" learner.
- If "green" has the most, you are a "kinesthetic" learner.

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How do you like to learn new things: by looking, listening, or doing?
- 2 Have you ever used pictures, music, or hands-on activities to help you study?

 Read the text. What happens when you know how you learn best?

Lesson 1

SB page 29

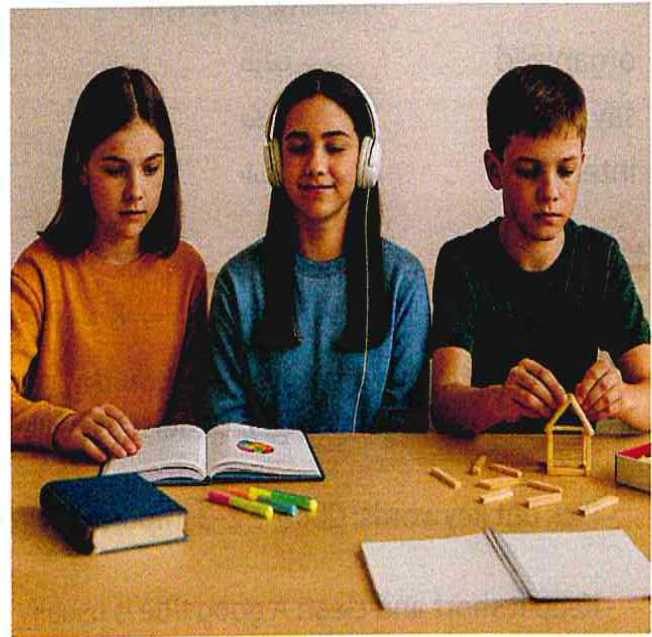
“Different Ways People Learn”

Every person learns differently. Some people learn best by seeing information. These are **visual**⁽¹⁾ learners. They like to read books, look at pictures, and use colorful notes. Visual learners often make **maps and charts**⁽²⁾ to **organize**⁽³⁾ information.

Other people learn best by hearing information. These are **auditory**⁽⁴⁾ learners. They like to listen to music while studying, discuss topics with friends, and hear **explanations**⁽⁵⁾ from teachers. Auditory learners often repeat information out loud to remember it.

Some people learn best by moving and touching. These are **kinesthetic**⁽⁶⁾ learners. They like to do **experiments**⁽⁷⁾, build models, and take breaks to move around. Kinesthetic learners often use their hands to help them think.

Understanding your learning style helps you study better. When you know how you learn best, you can choose the right methods for yourself. This makes learning easier and more **enjoyable**⁽⁸⁾.



- | | | | |
|----------|------------------|-----------------|----------|
| (1) بصرى | (2) خرائط وجداول | (3) ينظم | (4) سمعى |
| (5) شرح | (6) حركى | (7) تجارب علمية | (8) ممتع |

Post-reading questions:

Read the text again, then answer:

- 1 What is the main idea of this text?
.....
- 2 How does identifying your learning style help you?
.....
- 3 What are the three learning styles mentioned المذكورة in the text?
.....

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص 59-58 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
organized	مرتّب	remember	يتذكر
say again	يكرر	right	صحيح
interesting	شيق	teacher	معلم

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الممكن أن يطلب منك وضع عنوان للفقرة بدلاً من السؤال عن الفكرة الأساسية، ولذلك سنقدم في هذا الجزء كيفية وضع عنوان لفقرة:

To give a title to a passage, you should:

لتضع عنواناً لقطعة، يجب أن:

- Read the passage carefully: Understand what the passage is mainly about—what the main idea is.

اقرأ القطعة بعناية وحاول أن تفهم الفكرة الرئيسية لها.

- Pick out keywords: Choose 2-3 important words from the passage that relate to the topic.

استخرج الكلمات المهمة التي ترتبط بالموضوع.

- Keep it short and clear: A good title is usually 3-7 words. Make it catchy and meaningful.

اجعل العنوان قصيراً وواضحاً، فعادة ما يكون من 3 إلى 7 كلمات. اجعله جذاباً وله معنى.

لاحظ أنه عندما نقوم بإعطاء عنوان نضع الكلمات الرئيسية بحروف كبيرة.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Every person learns differently. Some people learn best by seeing information. These are visual learners. Other people learn best by hearing information. These are auditory learners. Some people learn best by moving and touching. These are kinesthetic learners.

- Give a suitable title to this passage.

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Visual learners like to read books, look at pictures, and use colorful notes.

☐

- يحب المتعلمون السمعيون قراءة الكتب، والنظر إلى الصور، واستخدام الملاحظات الملونة.

☐

- يحب المتعلمون البصريون قراءة الكتب، والنظر إلى الصور، واستخدام الملاحظات الملونة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- كل شخص يتعلم بطريقة مختلفة.

☐

Everyone learns in the same way.

☐

Everyone learns in a different way.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Reading funny stories before bedtime is and helps children sleep better.
a) enjoyable b) neat c) auditory d) physical
2. Young children learn better when they hands-on activities daily.
a) do b) make c) hear d) smell
3. This activity is auditory; it's related to things.
a) seeing b) hearing c) touching d) smelling
4. Salma draws colorful to help her remember all the parts of a story.
a) examples b) passion c) problems d) mind maps
5. To is to arrange something in a particular order or system.
a) realize b) recognize c) memorize d) organize
6. Hassan prefers books with lots of pictures instead of books with only words.
a) silent b) auditory c) oral d) visual
7. Nour prefers stories on the radio because she likes to listen while she draws.
a) visual b) auditory c) kinesthetic d) video
8. That bird only comes to our garden in the early morning.
a) particular b) physical c) kinesthetic d) private
9. Let's the chairs in a circle so everyone can see each other.
a) happen b) appear c) arrange d) discuss
10. The teacher showed us a new for solving difficult math problems quickly.
a) journey b) problem c) expression d) method
11. Life is a long where we learn something new every day.
a) sight b) solution c) journey d) body

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

at – of – suits – colorful – maps

Nour is a visual learner. She likes to use a neat notebook with (1) drawings. When she sees charts or mind (2), she remembers things better. Her teacher helps her organize her ideas. Nour says this method (3) her because it helps her study in order. She enjoys sitting (4) the front of the class to see everything clearly.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yasmin is a learner who needs to move around and touch things to understand.
a) kinesthetic b) visual c) auditory d) oral
2. Mom bought flowers from the market to make our house look pretty and bright.
a) visual b) colorful c) physical d) auditory
3. Mom likes the kitchen to be so we put all the dishes away after eating.
a) noisy b) auditory c) neat d) colorful
4. My is different from my sister's because I like to read quietly.
a) sight b) example c) learning style d) hairstyle
5. Mr El-Mogy gave an easy of why the sun looks bigger than other stars.
a) journey b) problem c) expression d) explanation
6. Running and jumping are activities that make our bodies strong and healthy.
a) physical b) auditory c) visual d) neat
7. Bright colors young children who like cheerful and happy things.
a) touch b) suit c) prefer d) answer
8. This activity is related learning about healthy food choices.
a) to b) in c) on d) with
9. Students learned to charts showing their favorite foods.
a) eat b) cook c) buy d) make
10. The teacher asked Hana to the new words out loud.
a) draw b) write c) repeat d) think
11. The children learned to different birds by looking at their colors and sizes.
a) identify b) eat c) run d) fly
12. We need to the books in the library by putting them in alphabetical order.
a) discuss b) organize c) touch d) send

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

repeats – auditory – thinks – enjoyable – space

Omar learns best when he hears the lesson. He is an (1) learner. He likes to talk with his teacher and discuss problems with friends. When he (2) words out loud, he understands more. His study (3) is quiet and peaceful. He once answered a hard question after hearing a great explanation. That made his journey of learning (4)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Ask and answer about learning styles أسئلة والإجابة عن أساليب التعلم

← online

Which learning style suits you best?

أي أسلوب تعلم يناسبك أكثر؟

The visual learning style suits me best because I like looking at pictures.

أسلوب التعلم البصري يناسبني أكثر؛ لأنني أحب النظر إلى الصور.

What do teachers do to help you learn best?

ماذا يفعل المعلمون لمساعدتك على التعلم بشكل أفضل؟

They explain things with pictures and give us fun activities.

يشرحون لنا باستخدام الصور ويعطوننا أنشطة ممتعة.

Do you think everyone learns the same way? Why/ Why not?

هل تعتقد أن كل الأشخاص يتعلمون بنفس الطريقة؟ ولماذا؟

No, because we are different, and everyone has his own learning style.

لا/ لأننا مختلفون وكل شخص له أسلوب التعلم الخاص به.

What learning style do you prefer? Why?

ما أسلوب التعلم الذي تفضله؟ ولماذا؟

I prefer the kinesthetic learning style because I enjoy doing things with my hands.

أفضل أسلوب التعلم الحركي؛ لأنني أستمتع بعمل الأشياء بيدي.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Mona and Yasmin are talking about learning styles.

Mona : Hi, Yasmin! How do you like to study?

Yasmin : I like to read books and look at pictures.

Mona : Are you a (1)..... learner?

Yasmin : Yes, I (2)..... I also use colorful notes to remember things.

Mona : That's great. (3)..... you make charts and maps?

Yasmin : Yes, I do. They help me organize information.

Mona : Which subject do you like most?

Yasmin : I like (4)..... most to know information about our bodies.

How to write about personal learning styles

كيفية الكتابة عن أساليب التعلم الشخصية

- الكتابة عن أساليب التعلم من الموضوعات التي تحمل العديد من الأفكار، وتختلف من شخص لآخر، ولكن سنناقش معاً بعض الأفكار التي قد تساعدك في الكتابة.

1 Do all people learn in the same way?
هل كل الناس تتعلم بنفس الطريقة؟
e.g. People learn in different ways.

2 How many learning styles are there?
كم عدد أساليب التعلم؟
e.g. There are three types of learners: visual, auditory, kinesthetic.

3 What is a visual learner?
من هو المتعلم البصري؟
e.g. A visual learner learns best by seeing information.

Learning styles

4 What is an auditory learner?
من هو المتعلم السمعي؟
e.g. An auditory learner learns best by hearing information.

5 What is a kinesthetic learner?
من هو المتعلم الحركي؟
e.g. A kinesthetic learner learns by doing and moving.

6 How can knowing your learning style help you?
كيف يمكن لمعرفة طريقة تعلمك أن تساعدك؟
e.g. Knowing my learning style helps you study better. Learning becomes easier and more fun for me.

حان دورك الآن لكتابة فقرة. استخدم الأفكار السابقة لتساعدك على كتابة الموضوع.

راجع علامات الترقيم في مقدمة الكتاب

نموذج مجاب عنه:

"Learning styles"

Everyone learns in a different way. Some people are visual learners. They understand best when they see pictures, colors, or charts. They enjoy reading and making notes. Other people are auditory learners. They like to listen to music or talk with others about lessons. They learn well by hearing. Some people are kinesthetic learners. They use their hands to learn. They enjoy doing experiments, building things, and moving around. Knowing your learning style helps you study better and makes learning easier and more fun.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I understand better when teachers talk with a lot of energy and
 a) topic b) station c) mission d) passion
2. learners often use their hands to help them think.
 a) Visual b) Auditory c) Kinesthetic d) Language

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

physical – do – think – kinesthetic – build

Leila learns by doing things by herself. She is a (1)..... learner. She prefers to touch things and (2)..... models. Her favorite lesson is when they (3)..... hands-on activities in science. She likes to take short breaks and move her body during study. This (4)..... method helps her stay active. She also likes to draw to solve problems that happen in math.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Leila and Nour are discussing learning styles.

Leila : Do you like your school, Nour?

Nour : Yes, I (1)..... My teachers help me a lot.

Leila : (2)..... do they help you learn?

Nour : They use pictures, music, and fun games.

Leila : (3)..... is your learning style?

Nour : I think I'm kinesthetic. I like hands-on work.

Leila : And I'm (4)..... I learn by looking at pictures.

Nour : We both learn in fun ways!

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your learning style"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب	improve (d) (v)	يحسن	review (ed) (v)	يراجع
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة	lab (n)	مختبر/معمل	solution (n)	حل
distraction (n)	تشيت	regularly (adv)	بانتظام	successful (adj)	ناجح
focus (ed) (v)	يركز	research (ed) (v)	يبحث	techniques (n)	أساليب / تقنيات

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

exam (n)	امتحان	playground (n)	ملعب	try (y) (ied) (v)	يحاول
goal (n)	هدف	practice (d) (v)	يتدرب/يمارس	vocabulary (n)	مفردات لغة
hard (adv)	بجد	mistake (n)	خطأ	special (adj)	مميز/خاص

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	revise for	يراجع لـ / من أجل	get ready for	يستعد لـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	step by step	خطوة بخطوة	learn to learn	يتعلم كيف يتعلم

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
find	يجد	found	found	speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
get	يحصل على	got	got	swim	يسبح	swam	swum

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – review – competition – practice – at

Checkpoint

- 1 If you drawing every day, you'll be better at it.
- 2 Ali won the running
- 3 I need to revise my math test, so I can do well tomorrow.
- 4 We usually the story in class to remember the main ideas.

LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

advertisement (n)	إعلان	cooperation (n)	التعاون	group learning (n)	التعلم الجماعي
benefit (n)	فائدة	creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	leadership (n)	قيادة
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	develop (ed) (v)	يطور	powerful (adj)	قوى
confident (adj)	واثق	experience (n)	تجربة حياتية	thinker (n)	مفكر

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

enjoy (v) (ed)	يستمتع بـ	media (n)	وسائل الإعلام	skill (n)	مهارة
express (ed) (v)	يعبر عن	opinion (n)	رأى	spidergram (n)	مخطط عنكبوتي
freely (adv)	بحرية	program (n)	برنامج	team sport (n)	رياضة جماعية

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

according to	وفقاً لـ	opinion about	رأى بشأن	make friends	يكون صداقات
communicate with	يتواصل مع	work in a group/team	يعمل في مجموعة/فريق	share opinions	يشارك الآراء
find solutions to	يجد حلولاً لـ	do a project	ينفذ مشروعاً	take a test	يؤدي اختباراً
in the middle	في المنتصف	look like	يشبه	do experiments	يجري تجارب

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
find	يجد	found	take	يأخذ	took
					taken

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
large	كبير	tiny/small	دقيق/صغير	more	أكثر	less	أقل
modern	حديث	old/ancient	قديم	together	معاً	alone	بمفرده

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – benefit – large – modern – media

Checkpoint

- One of reading books is learning new words.
- We learn about the world through the, like TV and newspapers.
- We worked together to find solutions the puzzle.
- We use computers in our classroom. They are smart.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 know/learn how to + inf. المصدر

يعرف/يتعلم كيف أن

- Teamwork helps us know how to communicate with others.
- We should learn how to use safe websites.

2

اسم + own + (my, your ...) صفة ملكية

تستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية الخاصة بشيء

- They learn how to express themselves freely using their **own** words.

Word-building Skills

A spidergram is a picture that helps us organize ideas.

المخطط العنكبوتي هو صورة تساعدنا على تنظيم الأفكار.

- It looks like a spider with legs. The main idea is in the middle. The "legs" show small ideas or examples.

إنها تشبه العنكبوت ذا الأرجل. الفكرة الرئيسية تكون في المنتصف. الأرجل تُظهر أفكارًا صغيرة أو أمثلة.



Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

techniques	أساليب/تقنيات	special methods ⁽¹⁾ or ways of doing something	(1) طرق
review	يراجع	looking at something again to remember it	
improve	يطور	to make something better	(2) إنجاز
successful	ناجح	achieving ⁽²⁾ what you wanted to do	
regularly	بانتظام	doing something often at the same times	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
avoid (v)	يتجنب	stop	يتوقف عن
goal (n)	هدف	aim	هدف
develop (v)	يطور	improve	يحسن

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
regular (adj)	منتظم	-ly		تحويل إلى حال		regularly (adv)	بانتظام
success (n)	نجاح	-ful				successful (adj)	ناجح
create (v)	يبدع/يبتكر	-ive		تحويل إلى صفة		creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What problems do you face while studying?
- 2 Do you prefer working individually or in a team?

1. Listen again to the audio text and write "True" or "False".

Learning how to learn is one of the most important skills for students. Every person has a different learning style. Some students learn best by reading. Others learn by listening, and some by doing activities. The key is to find your own style that works. Good learners don't just **memorize**⁽¹⁾ information - they understand it. They ask questions, take notes, and review regularly. When studying becomes difficult, good learners take breaks and try different **methods**⁽²⁾. The most successful students are those who never stop trying to improve their learning techniques.

Post-listening questions:

Write "True" or "False".

- 1 All students have the same learning style.
- 2 Good learners ask questions and review regularly.
- 3 Taking breaks is not helpful when studying is difficult.
- 4 The most successful students try to improve their learning techniques.

2. Listen to Ahmed's talk and answer these questions.

Hi, I'm Ahmed, a 12-year-old student. I've learned how to study better this year. First, I organize my notes in **folders**⁽¹⁾ so I can find them easily. I also make a study **schedule**⁽²⁾ every week. This helps me focus on one subject at a time. My teacher says good study habits are important for success. For example, I study in a quiet room and turn off my phone to avoid **distractions**⁽³⁾. Sometimes, it is hard to stay focused, but I take short breaks to relax. Learning to learn makes **schoolwork**⁽⁴⁾ easier and more enjoyable!

Post-listening questions:

- 1 How does Ahmed organize his notes?
- 2 What does Ahmed do to avoid distractions while studying?
- 3 Why does Ahmed take short breaks?



Lesson 2

SB page 30



(1) يحفظ

(2) طرق

()

()

()

()

(1) مجلدات

(2) جدول مذاكرة

(3) التشتيت

(4) عمل مدرسي

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Do you like team sports?
- 2 Do you enjoy working in a team? Why?

 **Read the text. Do students enjoy group learning?**

Lesson 3

SB page 32

Learning in groups has more **benefits**⁽¹⁾ than learning alone. When students work in large or small groups, they share opinions, discuss problems and find **solutions**⁽²⁾ to them.

Teamwork⁽³⁾ helps students **develop**⁽⁴⁾ their skills and be **confident**⁽⁵⁾. It also helps them know how to communicate with others and understand them. When a student shares their opinion about a topic, they learn how to express themselves freely using their own words. Teamwork teaches students **cooperation**⁽⁶⁾ and **leadership**⁽⁷⁾, it also helps them to be **creative**⁽⁸⁾ thinkers. Learning with others also helps students to make new friends because they spend much time with each other doing projects, solving problems and doing experiments.

Modern technology makes group learning very enjoyable. Students can use **apps** and websites on the internet to find information about their work. Using digital devices creates powerful learning **experiences**⁽⁹⁾.



- | | | |
|----------------|----------|-------------------|
| (1) فوائد/مزاي | (2) حلول | (3) العمل الجماعي |
| (4) يطور | (5) واثق | (6) التعاون |
| (7) القيادة | (8) مبدع | (9) تجارب |

Post-reading questions:

Read again and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The text is about
 - a) studying alone is better than working in groups
 - b) technology makes school easier
 - c) learning with others has many benefits
 - d) students should use apps for every lesson
- 2 According to the text, how does group learning help students understand better?
 - a) They watch videos together.
 - b) It helps them make new friends.
 - c) They use smartphones.
 - d) They take tests together.
- 3 What life skills does the text say students can learn from working in teams?
 - a) Reading and writing.
 - b) Cooking and cleaning.
 - c) Cooperation and leadership.
 - d) Drawing and painting.
- 4 The underlined word "**apps**" most likely means
 - a) tools and devices
 - b) food and drinks
 - c) advertisements
 - d) computer programs

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص 69-70 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
revise	يراجع	large	كبير
answer	حل	together	معًا
improve	يحسن/يطور	modern	حديث

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنقدم مهارة التفكير النقدي وكيفية التعامل مع أسئلتها:

- What is critical thinking?

ما هي مهارة التفكير النقدي؟

- هي عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التي جمعت من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأي نقدي شخصي على ما تم قراءته من معلومات في النص، ودائمًا ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة، ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Modern technology makes group learning very enjoyable. Students can use apps and websites on the internet to find information about their work. Using digital tools creates powerful learning experiences.

- Do you think modern technology is always useful in all fields المجالات? Why?

هل تعتقد أن التكنولوجيا الحديثة مفيدة دائمًا في جميع المجالات؟ لماذا؟

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Learning in groups has more benefits than learning alone.

☐ - التعلم في المجموعات له فوائد أكثر من التعلم الفردي.

☐ - التعلم في المجموعات له فوائد أقل من التعلم الفردي.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- تجعل التكنولوجيا الحديثة التعلم الجماعي ممتعًا جدًا.

☐ Modern technology makes group learning very boring.

☐ Modern technology makes group learning very enjoyable.

LESSON

2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I always my lessons before an exam.
a) try b) review c) find d) avoid
2. Reading every day can your vocabulary and spelling.
a) appear b) try c) improve d) answer
3. Basmala talking to strangers because she is shy.
a) improves b) practices c) avoids d) reviews
4. I wake up early to get ready school.
a) for b) to c) with d) at
5. I made a small in my spelling test.
a) distraction b) lab c) mistake d) goal
6. My brother's is to become a good doctor.
a) lab b) goal c) sleep d) exam
7. Our school is having a reading next week.
a) sleep b) solution c) competition d) completion
8. My sister practices the piano every evening.
a) regular b) while c) far d) regularly
9. Basma on her reading to finish the book early.
a) focused b) reviewed c) expressed d) avoided
10. Mr. Waleed used a smart for solving puzzles.
a) lab b) technique c) vocabulary d) road
11. I write new words in my notebook.
a) exam b) goal c) vocabulary d) oral

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mistake – hard – for – at – lab

Omar had a science exam this week, and he was nervous. He studied (1) every night and wrote notes to help him. At first, he made a (2), but his teacher explained the idea again. Omar visited the school (3) to do the experiment himself. Later, he found a smart solution online. He wants to be successful, so he always tries to revise (4) tests early.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher liked my story about a talking dog in space.
a) creative b) creation c) boring d) excited
2. I want to my speaking skill before the class presentation.
a) appear b) communicate c) enjoy d) develop
3. Camping with my family was the best I had this year.
a) experiment b) opinion c) experience d) scale
4. It's important to your feelings when you are upset or happy.
a) communicate b) express c) enjoy d) develop
5. We made a colorful to tell others about our school event.
a) advertisement b) opinion c) skill d) experience
6. One of teamwork is sharing different skills.
a) experiment b) leadership c) communication d) benefit
7. Football is a/an sport where players work together to win.
a) personal b) team c) program d) individual
8. We use email to communicate our teacher, Mr Mohammed.
a) for b) on c) with d) about
9. The teacher asked us to opinions in pairs before writing.
a) call b) charge c) share d) appear
10. After lots of practice, I felt about doing my class presentation.
a) old b) tiny c) modern d) confident
11. To be a good, you need to ask lots of questions.
a) walker b) thinker c) benefit d) media
12. The news was shared on all types of
a) media b) spidergram c) models d) medals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

doing – making – with – confident – benefit

Learning with others can be exciting! In group learning, you often enjoy working on fun tasks. One (1) is that you get to share opinions and hear new ideas. You may feel more (2) when you work in a team. I once watched a program on TV showing kids (3) a school project together. They looked so happy and creative. They really knew how to communicate (4) each other.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

1 can/can't

يستطيع أن / لا يستطيع أن

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Mazen (is/are) playing football with his friends. His sister (am/is) watching and cheering. The sun (are/is) shining, and they (are/am) having fun. After the game, they (can/are) eat ice cream. They are tired, so they (can/can't) go home on foot.

Form التكوين

Affirmative: الإثبات

Subject + can + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل

e.g. • I can play tennis well.

• Aya can ride a bike.

Negative: النفي

Subject + can't + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل

e.g. • My brother and I cannot (can't) play the piano.

• Anas cannot (can't) pull this bag. It's so heavy.

Subject الفاعل
I, We, They, You,
He, She, It
اسم مفرد / اسم جمع

Yes/No question السؤال بهل

Can + Subject + inf. ... مصدر الفعل

لاحظ اختصار (cannot) إلى can't

e.g. • Can they make mind maps?

• Can Maged run fast?

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My little sister can't (feeding) herself.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (feed) لأن can't يتبعها فعل في المصدر.

2 Where are my keys? I (can) find them.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (can't) لأن الجملة تعبر عن عدم القدرة على فعل شيء.

2 The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous tense to talk about actions that are happening or not happening now.

• نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث/ لا تحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

Affirmative الإثبات

I → am
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → is
We, They, You, اسم جمع → are

+ inf. مصدر الفعل
+ ing

e.g. - I am watching TV with my cousins.
- My mother is cleaning the house.
- They are going to the club now.

Form التكوين

Negative النفي

I → am not
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → is not (isn't)
We, They, You, اسم جمع → are not (aren't)

+ inf. مصدر الفعل
+ ing

e.g. - I am not watching TV with my cousins.
- My mother isn't cleaning the house.
- They aren't going to the club.

لاحظ

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing): (take - taking) - (come - coming)
- بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، غالباً ما نضعاف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing): (put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming) - (get - getting)
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ونضيف (y) قبل إضافة الـ (ing): (die - dying) - (lie - lying)

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The teacher is (explain) a difficult math lesson to his students.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (explaining) لوجود (is) التي يتبعها فعل مضاف له (ing).

Remember

Yes/ No question السؤال بمعنى هل

Am + I
Is + he, she, it, اسم مفرد
Are + we, they, you, اسم جمع

+ inf. مصدر الفعل
+ ing?

e.g. A: Are the birds singing in the trees at present?
B: Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

Question السؤال

Wh- question السؤال بأداة استفهام

am + I
Q. Word + is + he, she, it, اسم مفرد
are + we, they, you, اسم جمع

+ inf. مصدر الفعل
+ ing?

e.g. A: What is your brother doing outside?
B: He is playing football.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

يمكن أن يأتي المضارع المستمر مع كلمات معينة وتعني أن الفعل يحدث الآن (لفترة مؤقتة من الوقت):
- في هذه اللحظة at the moment - احترس Watch/Look out! - استمع Listen! - انظر Look! - مازال still - الآن now/right now
هذه الأيام nowadays/these days - اليوم today - في الحاضر at the present

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Why (do) the students laughing?
- الإجابة الصحيحة (are) لوجود (laughing) فعل مضاف إليه (ing).

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Rayan practices the piano every day, so he can beautiful songs now.
a) play b) plays c) to play d) playing
2. your grandmother baking cookies in the oven right now?
a) Does b) Did c) Has d) Is
3. I like English, but I speak it well.
a) can b) mustn't c) can't d) did
4. At this moment, Lina her bicycle in the park.
a) rides b) doesn't ride c) riding d) is riding
5. We come to the party tonight. We are very busy.
a) can't b) can c) doesn't d) do
6. What is Walid in his notebook right now?
a) writing b) writes c) write d) wrote
7. Look! Malak a beautiful picture of flowers in her notebook right now.
a) draws b) is drawing c) drawing d) draw
8. Yasmeen jump rope with her friends at school?
a) Have b) Do c) Is d) Can

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. Why (Layla/is) wearing winter coat inside the house?
2. Ziad is too young, so he (can) drive his father's car.
3. Look! Rana (feed) the hungry birds in the garden.
4. Reem's voice is beautiful, so she can (singing) in the school party.
5. The teacher is (write) today's homework on the whiteboard.
6. (Rasha/can) play the piano?
7. My little brother (not/eat) his vegetables at the moment.
8. What (Waleed/write) in his new diary?
9. Dina wears glasses to see clearly, so she can (reads) small letters now.
10. Basmala studies English every day, so she (can't) get good marks.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Malak's grandma is very old, so she run fast.
a) can't b) can c) do d) is
2. Where your parents going for their vacation?
a) are b) is c) am d) did
3. The baby girl at the moment because she is crying now.
a) is sleeping b) isn't sleeping c) sleeps d) doesn't sleep
4. Ibrahim is very smart, so he solve math problems quickly.
a) can't b) don't c) can d) is
5. Jana tell the time?
a) Has b) Can c) Was d) Is
6. Are the birds in the trees right now?
a) to sing b) sing c) to singing d) singing
7. At this moment, Hana a letter to her best friend who moved away.
a) writing b) writes c) is writing d) write
8. Leen is afraid of water, so she swim in the deep pool.
a) can b) don't c) can't d) is

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Farah loves art class, so she (can't) draw beautiful pictures of flowers.
2. Why (Mostafa/is) standing on that wobbly chair?
3. Fish don't have legs or feet, so they can't (to walk) on the ground.
4. Shams (not/wearing) her glasses at school today.
5. How many books (you/can) read in one week?
6. The cat (sleeps) on the warm sofa right now.
7. My friends (not) coming to my birthday party today.
8. Seif's leg is broken now, so he (can) play football with his friends.
9. Listen! Basma (singing) her favorite song.
10. How fast (horses/can) run when they race?

Skills Bank

Writing

How to write about benefits of learning together

كيفية الكتابة عن فوائد التعلم معاً

قم باستخراج الأفكار من خلال النقاط التالية:

What does "learning together" mean?

ماذا يعني «التعلم سوياً»؟

e.g. Learning together means working with classmates or friends.

How can learning in a group help you understand better?

كيف يمكن للتعلم في مجموعة أن يساعدك أن تفهم بشكل أفضل؟

e.g. It helps us understand better when we explain things to each other.

What can you do when you don't know something?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل عندما لا تفهم شيئاً ما؟

e.g. We can ask questions and get help quickly.

How does learning with others make you feel?

بم تشعر عند التعلم مع الآخرين؟

e.g. Studying in a group feels more fun and less lonely.

Why is learning with friends fun or helpful?

لماذا التعلم مع الأصدقاء ممتع ومفيد؟

e.g. It helps build teamwork and confidence.

حان دورك الآن أن تقوم بتجميع الأفكار السابقة في شكل فقرة:

راجع علامات
الترقيم
في مقدمة
الكتاب

قم بقراءة هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة للتعلم منه:

"Group learning"

Learning with others can be very helpful and fun. When we study in groups, we can share ideas and help each other understand things better. If one person doesn't know the answer, another friend might explain it in a simple way. Working as a team also makes learning feel less lonely. We can play learning games, ask questions, and solve problems together. Learning with friends makes us feel more confident. That's why learning together is a great way to grow and succeed.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What kind of learner is Omar?
a) Auditory. b) Visual. c) Kinesthetic. d) Verbal.
2. What does Omar use while studying?
a) Loud music. b) Charts and colors. c) Games and toys. d) Group talks.
3. Where does Omar like to sit in class?
a) At the back. b) Near the window. c) At the front. d) In the middle.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Omar likes to draw to remember facts.
5. His notes are and full of colors.
6. Omar feels happy when his study space is

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We did a fun science experiment in the today.
a) library b) playground c) lab d) laptop
2. between friends can help solve big problems faster.
a) Advertisement b) Cooperation c) Spidergram d) Operation

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

focus – regularly – goal – cooperation – distraction

Sara wanted to study, but there was too much (1)..... at home. Her baby brother was crying loudly. She went to another room to (2)..... better. She also found a great memory technique on a school website. Now she studies (3)....., even on weekends. She helps her friend get ready for English tests. Her (4)..... is to be one of the top students in her class.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

One day, our school had a special group learning day. We didn't sit in rows صفوف. Instead, we sat in circles and worked together. I was in the middle of my group, helping others make a poster about "Ways to Save Water." Every student had a small part to play. I learned new words and how to communicate with my team. It was fun to share ideas freely and learn from each other. The teacher showed us an advertisement about clean water, and we discussed it. I felt proud of what we made together. Group learning makes learning more fun and less stressful.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The group poster was about
a) saving animals b) saving water c) cooking food d) making music
- The underlined word "freely" means without
a) fear b) books c) colors d) talking

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- Where did the students sit on group learning day?
- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
- Why do you think group learning felt less stressful?

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Fareeda broke her arm yesterday, so she write with her right hand.
a) can b) is c) don't d) can't
- The cat milk in the kitchen right now.
a) are drinking b) drinks c) drink d) is drinking

6) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Leila's grandmother is very old, so she (not/can) climb the stairs easily.
- Why (Mira can't) come to my birthday party?
- Seif and Mazen (is building) a sandcastle on the beach now.
- Grandma is (tell) us an interesting story right now.

7) Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Benefits of group learning"

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Why (be) everyone laughing at the party right now?
- (Can) you write your name? I'm so surprised. You should know this.
- A: Where's your brother? B: I think he (study) in his bedroom.

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

ambition (n)	طموح	courage (n)	شجاعة	determination (n)	الإصرار/العزيمة
brave (adj)	شجاع	fluently (adv)	بطلاقة	respect (ed) (n/v)	يحترم/احترام
breath (n)	نفس	hesitate (d) (v)	يتردد	scared (adj)	خائف
bridge (n)	جسر/كوبري	invisible (adj)	خفى/غير مرئي	unity (n)	وحدة/اتحاد

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

add (ed) (v)	يضيف	golden (adj)	ذهبي	sign (n)	لافتة
clap (ped) (v)	يصفق	kindness (n)	عطف	success (n)	نجاح
critical (adj)	نقدي	power (n)	قوة	whisper (ed) (v)	يهمس
cross (ed) (v)	يعبر	quit (v)	يستسلم/يترك		
desire (d) (v/n)	يرغب/رغبة	refuse (d) (v)	يرفض		

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

believe in	يؤمن بـ	proud of	فخور بـ	take a step	يتخذ خطوة
beneath	تحت	step onto	يخطو على	pass hard situations	يتجاوز المواقف الصعبة
care for	يهتم بـ	succeed in	ينجح في	speak a word	ينطق كلمة
cheer (someone) ... on	يشجع	hold hands	يمسكون بأيدي بعضهم	take a deep breath	يأخذ نفساً عميقاً

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
give up	gave up	given up	mean	meant	meant
hold	held	held	sing	sang	sung

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
slowly	ببطء	quickly/fast	بسرعة	succeed	ينجح	fail	يفشل/يرسب

Read and complete with a word from the list:

fluently – quit – pass – take – in

- My brother the football team because he wanted to try swimming.
- I want to read so I can enjoy stories without stopping.
- It's important to believe your dreams and never give up.
- When you want to try something new, just a step and begin.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

clearly (adv)	بوضوح	diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي	plan (v/n)	يخطط/خطة
voice (n)	صوت (أدنى)	pronunciation (n)	نطق	profile (n)	ملف شخصي

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

invisible	غير مرئي	cannot be seen	(1) العطف
respect	يحترم	showing care and kindness ⁽¹⁾ to others	(2) واثق
courage	الشجاعة	being confident ⁽²⁾ , not afraid	(3) الرغبة
ambition	الطموح	a strong desire ⁽³⁾ to achieve success	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
care for (v)	يهتم بـ	look after	يعتني بـ
cheer on (v)	يشجع	encourage	يشجع
succeed in (v)	ينجح في	pass	ينجح في/يجتاز

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
gold (n)	ذهب	-en		تحويل إلى صفة		golden (adj)	ذهبي
kind (adj)	عطوف	-ness		تحويل إلى اسم		kindness (n)	عطف

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
in-		تعطى عكس المعنى		visible (adj)	مرئي	invisible (adj)	خفي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- To have is to be confident, not afraid.
a) kindness b) cleverness c) respect d) courage
- I saw a shiny gold ring in the jewelry shop. We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of "gold".
a) -ness b) -en c) -ly d) -ful
- We went to the game to cheer our team on. The synonym of "cheer on" is ".....".
a) encourage b) desire c) care for d) respect

B Reading & Listening Skills

The Magic Classroom

Lesson 4

Pre-reading questions:

1 What does **courage** mean?

2 How does courage help you pass hard situations?

Read the following text. What did children do in front of the invisible bridge.

SB page 34

CHAPTER TWO:

The power of unity

The next time the students entered, the Magic Classroom was more difficult. In front of the children was an **invisible**⁽¹⁾ bridge.

A glowing sign read: "Only those with **respect**⁽²⁾, **ambition**⁽³⁾, and **courage**⁽⁴⁾ can cross."

Sara thought for a moment. "Respect means we listen and care for each other."

Zain added, "Ambition means we believe in our success."

Omar took a deep breath, "Courage means we try even when we are scared."

They stepped onto the invisible bridge, holding hands and encouraging one another. Every kind word they spoke and every brave step they took made the bridge appear slowly beneath their feet. When Omar hesitated, his friends cheered him on, reminding him he wasn't alone.

At the end of the bridge, a golden door appeared with a message: "**Determination**⁽⁵⁾ opens every door. Never give up."

The team tried many ideas but nothing worked. Hours passed. They refused to quit.

Finally, Omar whispered, "Let's sing together. Maybe **unity**⁽⁶⁾ is the key."

They sang, and slowly, the golden door opened. They clapped and laughed, proud of their teamwork.



- (1) غير مرئي (2) الاحترام (3) الطموح
(4) الشجاعة (5) العزيمة / الإصرار (6) الوحدة/الاتحاد

CHAPTER 2

1 Read and match the words to their meanings:

(A)

1. invisible
2. respect
3. courage
4. ambition

(B)

- (a) showing care and kindness to others
- (b) a strong desire to achieve
- (c) cannot be seen
- (d) being confident, not afraid

2 Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The children crossed the bridge holding their hands. ()
2. The sign for the bridge listed "**Kindness**" as a required quality. ()
3. The bridge appeared instantly as they stepped on it. ()
4. Unity can't help them open the golden door. ()

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What did Sara think about respect?

.....

2. What did they find at the end of the bridge?

.....

3. Who hesitated on the bridge?

.....

4 Critical Thinking:

1. How did the kind words help the children?

.....

2. "Maybe unity is the key." What do you think this sentence means?

.....

3. What message do you think Chapter Two gives?

.....

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever used videos, drawing, or recording your voice to study?

 Read and complete this example using verbs.

SB page 36

My Learning Plan

To improve my English, I use learning styles when I study at home and at school.

In English class, I try to **sit** at the front to see the board clearly to practice writing, I **write** 3 - 5 sentences each day about what I did. I can record my voice to **listen** and know the correct pronunciation of words.

Sometimes, I can **watch** videos to help me as I can learn better when I listen and see at the same time.

Now, I am practicing vocabulary anywhere. I always **talk** to my friends in English. We like to draw diagrams to remind us.



Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why does the writer sit at the front in English class?
- 2 How many sentences does the writer try to write each day?
- 3 What does the writer do to check their pronunciation?
- 4 How do videos help the writer learn better?

Team-Project Roundtable

دفتري تعلمي My Learning Journal

SB page 38

Create a journal to reflect on your learning and plan how to become a better learner.

أنشئ دفتراً لتدوين أفكارك عن تعلمك، وخطط كيف تصبح متعلماً أفضل.

Instructions التعليمات:

- Describe how you learn best (for example: by reading, doing, listening, or watching).
- صف كيف تتعلم بشكل أفضل (مثال: من خلال القراءة، أو التطبيق، أو الاستماع، أو المشاهدة).
- Write about something you are proud of in your learning.
- اكتب عن شيء تفخر به في تعلمك.
- Set at least one goal to become a better learner.
- ضع هدفاً واحداً على الأقل لتصبح متعلماً أفضل.
- List steps you will take to reach your goal(s).
- اكتب خطوات ستتبعها لتحقيق هدفك أو أهدافك.
- Make your journal creative with drawings, colors, or pictures.
- اجعل دفتري إبداعياً باستخدام الرسومات أو الألوان أو الصور.



Presentation العرض التقديمي:

- Share your journal with your group first, then share your favorite parts with the class.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص 85-83 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
afraid	refuse
give up	invisible
خائف	يرفض
يستسلم/يترك	خفى

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنناقش كيفية التعامل مع سؤال استنتاج ما يشير إليه الضمير وهو من أسئلة القطعة الأساسية. وعادة يأتي السؤال كالتالي:

- What does the underlined pronoun "....." refer to?

How to answer this question:

Pronouns are words that refer to the closest specific noun right before them.

كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال:

أولاً: عليك أن تعرف إلى ماذا تشير الضمائر:

الضمائر عادة تشير لأقرب اسم يسبقها.

ثانياً: عليك قراءة الجملة التي تسبق الضمير جيداً وتحديد الاسم الذي تشير إليه.

FOR EXAMPLE:

The team tried many ideas but nothing worked. Hours passed. They refused to quit. Finally, Omar whispered, "Let's sing together. Maybe unity is the key."

They sang, and slowly, the golden door opened. They clapped and laughed, proud of their teamwork.

- What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Only those with respect, ambition, and courage can cross.

☐ فقط الذين لديهم واجب منزلي وذكاء يمكنهم القفز.

☐ فقط الذين لديهم احترام وطموح وشجاعة يمكنهم العبور.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- أستطيع أن أتعلم بشكل أفضل عندما أستمع وأرى في نفس الوقت.

☐ I can learn better when I listen and see at the same time.

☐ I can learn better when I eat and play at the same time.

LESSONS

4&5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You can take a deep to feel relaxed.
a) breath b) price c) key d) sign
2. My greatest is to be a famous scientist.
a) kindness b) ambition c) unity d) information
3. To reach her dreams, Marwa learned to a step each day.
a) sleep b) take c) rest d) nap
4. Sarah's parents are very proud her for winning the art competition.
a) with b) of c) at d) for
5. Don't practicing the piano just because it seems hard now.
a) whisper b) add c) cross d) quit
6. Hadeer is of dogs. She runs when she sees a dog.
a) full b) scared c) brave d) angry
7. We should always our teachers and listen to their advice.
a) respect b) refuse c) quit d) hesitate
8. To is speak very quietly using your breath.
a) desire b) refuse c) hesitate d) whisper
9. The teacher helped us with our in class to speak fluently.
a) sense b) semester c) voice d) pronunciation
10. We need a good for our school project.
a) plane b) game c) plan d) sound
11. The teacher asked us to make a about ourselves.
a) game b) profile c) sound d) picture
12. The made it easy to understand the lesson.
a) beauty b) gram c) diagram d) semester

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

in – up – invisible – took – made

The Magic Classroom was amazing again. The students stepped onto an (1)..... bridge in front of them. Omar felt scared but (2)..... a deep breath and didn't quit. His ambition helped him move. Sara spoke kind words, and Zain said respect and kindness were important. He believed (3)..... himself. They held hands and crossed together. The golden bridge appeared under their feet. They were brave and didn't give (4).....

Skills Bank

Writing

How to write about your learning plan كيفية الكتابة عن خطة تعلمك.

الموضوع سهل وبسيط وشيق؛ لذا سنتناوله بشكل مختلف. سأقدم إليك بعض الأسئلة مع إجابات تحتوي على أفكار مختلفة لمساعدتك على كتابة الموضوع.

Why do you need to have a learning plan? لماذا تحتاج أن تكون لديك خطة للتعلم؟

- I have a learning plan every day to help me understand things.

What do you do to understand your lessons better? ماذا تفعل لتفهم دروسك بشكل جيد؟

- I look at images and diagrams to understand the lesson.

How do you practice speaking and reading? كيف تمارس التحدث والقراءة؟

- I speak in English to practice pronunciation and communication.

Do you study alone or with friends? هل تذاكر بمفردك أم مع أصدقائك؟

- I enjoy working with friends because we share ideas.

Why is your learning plan helpful to you? لماذا تكون خطة التعلم مفيدة لك؟

- My learning plan makes learning easier and more fun.

راجع علامات
الترقيم
في مقدمة
الكتاب

نموذج مجاب عنه:

"My Learning Plan"

I have a learning plan that helps me study and grow. First, I use pictures and diagrams to understand each concept better. I also read aloud to improve my pronunciation. I try to speak clearly when I answer in class. Every day, I study in small steps and take short breaks. I ask questions when I don't understand something. I also like to learn with my friends and share ideas. My learning plan helps me stay organized and become a better learner.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hassan was when he jumped into the pool for the first time. He wasn't afraid.
a) scared b) frightened c) brave d) critical
2. I can see the picture on the wall; it was big and obvious واضح.
a) clearly b) quietly c) slowly d) quickly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

voice – vocabulary – improve – song – pronunciation

In English class, I usually sit at the front so I can see the board and focus better. To (1)..... my writing, I write 3 to 5 sentences daily about what I do or what I learn. I often record my (2)..... to listen and check my (3)..... of new words. I also watch videos that explain grammar or (4)..... because I understand more when I can both see and hear the lesson.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Qasim has small hands, so he (not/can) catch the big ball easily.
2. Cats can (to climb) trees easily.
3. (everyone/enjoy) the magic show right now?
4. Dalia (clean) the kitchen floor at the moment.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Leila uses different learning styles. Ali is asking her.

Ali : Hi Leila! What's your learning (1).....?

Leila : I use different learning styles.

Ali : Oh! What do you mean?

Leila : I mean that I like to see and listen when I study.

Ali : Do you watch videos?

Leila : (2)..... They help me understand better. (3).....?

Ali : I learn best by (4)..... and writing.

Leila : Learning by reading is great! We all learn in different ways.

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- learners learn best when they watch videos.
a) Auditory b) Mental c) Kinesthetic d) Visual
- Teachers have strong skills to organize work in classrooms.
a) leadership b) art c) digital d) science
- is exchanging information through speaking, writing, or using other signals.
a) Dictation b) Communication c) Distraction d) Leadership
- To think means to think in a new and unusual way.
a) simply b) creatively c) quietly d) loudly
- You should your time to succeed.
a) waste b) develop c) organize d) dry

B Language

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of present continuous:

- Listen! The girls (sing).
- She (study) for her math test right now.
- We (practice) pronunciation in the class at the moment.
- They (do) their homework this evening.

C Writing

3 Write a paragraph of about (80-100) words about how to use different learning styles.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A) Vocabulary

ambition (n)	طموح
auditory (adj)	سمعي
brave (adj)	شجاع
breath (n)	نفس
clearly (adv)	بوضوح
colorful (adj)	ملون
confident (adj)	واثق
cooperation (n)	التعاون
courage (n)	شجاعة
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي
distraction (n)	تشيت
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية
fluently (adv)	بطلاقة/بسهولة
focus (ed) (v)	يركز
hesitate (d) (v)	يتردد
identify (y) (ied) (v)	يحدد/يتعرف على
invisible (adj)	خفي/غير مرئي
journey (n)	رحلة
kinesthetic (adj)	حركي
leadership (n)	قيادة
method (n)	طريقة
neat (adj)	أنيق/مرتّب
organize (d) (v)	ينظم
determination (n)	العزيمة/الإصرار
powerful (adj)	قوي
profile (n)	ملف شخصي
pronunciation (n)	نطق
respect (ed) (n/v)	احترام/يُحترم
solution (n)	حل
successful (adj)	ناجح
techniques (n)	أساليب/تقنيات
unity (n)	وحدة
visual (adj)	بصري

B) Language

1. Can/can't

يستطيع/لا يستطيع

Affirmative

الإثبات

الفاعل + can + inf.

• I **can** make videos.

Negative

النفي

الفاعل + can't + inf.

• They **can't** speak English well.

2. The present continuous tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Affirmative

الإثبات

الفاعل + am/is/are + inf. + ing

• I'm **doing** my homework now.

• Roaa **is sleeping** at the moment.

• The children **are playing** outside.

Negative

النفي

الفاعل + am not/isn't/aren't + inf. + ing

• I'm **not doing** my homework now.

• Roaa **isn't sleeping** at the moment.

• The children **aren't playing** outside.

Question

السؤال

Am/Is/Are + الفاعل + inf. + ing?

• **Am** I making noise?

• **Is** Roaa sleeping at the moment?

• **Are** the children playing outside?

C) Speaking

Ask and answer about learning styles

1. Which learning style suits you best?

- The visual learning style suits me best because I like looking at pictures.

2. What do teachers do to help you learn best?

- They explain things with pictures and give us fun activities.

3. Do you like your school?

- Yes, I like my school because I learn new things.

4. What learning style do you prefer? Why?

- I prefer the kinesthetic learning style because I enjoy doing things with my hands.



A

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What was the class about?
 - a) Plants.
 - b) English.
 - c) Maths.
 - d) Science.
2. What did each group do?
 - a) Played games.
 - b) Made charts.
 - c) Watched TV.
 - d) Ate lunch.
3. What helped the group express ideas better?
 - a) Working alone.
 - b) Copying books.
 - c) Being creative in a group.
 - d) Using phones.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Each group had a different
5. We made a chart and wrote our
6. Being creative is easier when you work with

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** The activities in gym class help children learn by using their whole bodies.
a) colorful **b)** kinesthetic
c) useless **d)** auditory
- 2.** Engineers built a new, so people could cross the wide river.
a) foot **b)** key
c) bridge **d)** door

B

Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

give up – care for – of – vocabulary – review

A big spelling competition was coming. Adam really wanted to join. He started to practice every day with his older sister. He wrote new (1)..... in a notebook and made flashcards. Sometimes, he got confused مرتبك, but he didn't (2)..... . He worked step by step and asked his teacher to (3)..... his spelling. Adam didn't win first place, but he felt special and proud (4)..... himself.

4

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- B) Answer the following questions:**

- 6.** Why is it important to talk about your learning style with others?

C

5

- Learning to Learn | 93

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Sama/can) sleep when there is loud music playing nearby?
2. Tarek (can) see well, so he wears glasses.
3. The baby (not) crying at the moment.
4. The kids are (play) together in the park.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Kareem and Omar are talking about auditory learner.

Kareem : Omar, do you like learning with pictures?

Omar : No, I don't. I learn best by listening.

Kareem : Oh! Are you an (1)..... learner?

Omar : (2)..... I am. I like when teachers explain things.

Kareem : (3)..... you listen to music while studying?

Omar : Sometimes. It helps me focus.

Kareem : Do you read out loud?

Omar : Yes! It (4)..... me remember better.



Writing

8 Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Kareem to tell him what kind of learner you are.

Your name is Adel.

From : **To :** **Subject :**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

MODULE 1 QUESTION BANK

on Units 1&2



هذا الجزء عبارة عن مراجعة عامة على ما تم دراسته للتهيئة لتقييمات شهر أكتوبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. You must use safe to get the information you need online.
a) boards b) planes c) places d) websites
2. To is to work with another person or a group of people to do a certain task.
a) educate b) collaborate c) donate d) celebrate
3. The new project is a big; we must work hard to achieve success.
a) challenge b) holiday c) charge d) semester
4. A keyboard, a mouse and headphones are all tools.
a) medical b) paper c) digital d) web
5. Students who learn best by seeing information are learners.
a) audio b) auditory c) visual d) video
6. I want to my language skills; I need to make them better.
a) move b) improve c) do d) delete
7. You should be quiet and when you have an interview.
a) confident b) worried c) late d) corrected
8. My greatest is to be an architect مهندس معماري; I like to design buildings.
a) respect b) ambition c) courage d) fear

Language

9. I don't play tennis at all; I play it. Football is my favorite sport.
a) always b) usually c) sometimes d) never
10. Omar and Samir to the local park; they go there from time to time.
a) always goes b) always go c) sometimes goes d) sometimes go
11. My father doesn't often drive his car quickly. This means he drives quickly.
a) rarely b) usually c) always d) never
12. How do you go to the school library?
a) many b) often c) always d) never
13. Randa now; she is still studying.
a) is cooking b) don't cook c) isn't cooking d) cooks
14. I buy this toy; it's too expensive.
a) can't b) will c) can d) must
15. Are the boys in the school yard?
a) plays b) play c) played d) playing
16. I help you because I'm doing my homework.
a) will b) can c) can't d) must
17. Huda the housework right now. She is cleaning the house.
a) isn't doing b) don't do c) am doing d) is doing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ahmed (never) plays football; he practices it daily.
2. Can Shimaa (playing) the guitar?
3. Nader is (rarely) late, he comes late on most days.
4. He (eats/usually) cheese and bread.
5. Islam usually (play) football on Friday.
6. The school bus (always/arrive) at half past eight.
7. I (not/use) my laptop to watch videos. I always use my phone.
8. (you/are) going to Mazin's birthday party?
9. Ali never (come) late.
10. People (go/always) to the beach in summer.
11. Can Hossam (carrying) that heavy box?
12. I (not/do) my homework now; I'm tidying my room.
13. What (he/does) now?
14. Look, Sami and his friends (play) volleyball over there.
15. Dalia can't visit me; she (meet) her uncle at the airport now.
16. I (can't) help you solve the problem; don't worry.
17. How (I/can) make orange juice?
18. Dalia (makes) lunch now.
19. Wael (can) drive a car because he is still young.
20. Which game (Peter/is) playing now?
21. Who (doing) the washing now?
22. I don't know where (can/I) buy a book on China.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

share – challenges – curious – cheerful

1. The child was to know what happened.
2. We should work hard to face the in life.
3. We don't have enough money to buy a meal for each one; we can the two meals.
4. Samir is always smiling; he is

B)

memorize – auditory – do – visual – organize

Every person learns differently. All (1)..... learners learn best by seeing information. They often make maps and charts to (2)..... information. The people who learn best by hearing information are (3)..... learners. But I'm a kinesthetic learner. I like to (4)..... experiments, build models, and take breaks to move around.

C)

learning – skills – solve – shy – confident

Learning in groups is better than learning alone. Students in small or large groups can discuss ideas, share opinions, and (1)..... problems together. Working as a team helps them improve their skills and become more (2)..... . Group (3)..... also teaches students how to talk with others and understand different points of view وجهات النظر. These are important life (4)..... that help them both in school and in the future.

D)

board – record – styles – activities – hear

To improve my English, I use different learning (1)..... at home and school. In class, I always try to sit at the front so I can see the (2)..... well. At home, I write 3 to 5 sentences every day on my (3)..... to practice writing. I also (4)..... my voice and listen to it to check my pronunciation and see if I say the words correctly.

4 Complete the following dialog:

A) Samir is telling Rami about his digital day.

Samir : Hello, Rami. I want to share my digital day with you.

Rami : Hello, Samir. How do you start your day?

Samir : I start my day by checking my phone.

Rami : (1)..... you find new messages?

Samir : Yes, I find some messages from my friends.

Rami : What kind of message do they send you?

Samir : Some of them send (2)..... pictures.

Rami : Funny pictures! That's nice.

Samir : (3)..... do you send them?

Rami : I send them greetings and funny pictures too!

Samir : Do you meet them?

Rami : Yes, I do. I meet them in the club (4)..... Friday.

B) Faten and Huda are talking about their favorite digital tools.

Faten : Do you like using digital tools?

Huda : (1)....., I do.

Faten : (2)..... is the digital tool you like most?

Huda : The computer.

Faten : Why do you usually use it?

Huda : I use it to do my homework.

Faten : (3)..... often do you use it?

Huda : I usually use it every day. What about your favorite digital tool, Faten?

Faten : I like (4)..... very much. I use it to listen to music.

C) Fadi and Manal are speaking about learning in groups.

Fadi : I think learning in groups has more benefits than learning alone.

Manal : I (1)..... with you.

Fadi : When students work in groups, they share (2).....

Manal : You're right. Sharing opinions could be useful when discussing problems.

Fadi : (3)..... do you think teamwork can help students?

Manal : Teamwork helps them develop their skills and be confident.

Fadi : (4)..... there any other benefits?

Manal : Yes, it also helps them communicate with others.

D) Sara and Reda are talking about ways of learning.

Sara : People use different ways to learn.

Reda : You're right. I learn best (1)..... seeing information.

Sara : So, you're a (2)..... learner.

Reda : Yes, I like to read books, look at pictures, and use colorful notes. (3)..... about you?

Sara : I'm an auditory learner.

Reda : What do you like to (4).....?

Sara : I like to listen to music while studying and discuss topics with friends.

تطبيق الأضواء

محتواك الرقمي مجاناً مع الكتاب:

امسح الكود الشخصي بالغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب، واحصل على محتوى المادة الرقمي من تطبيق الأضواء.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



2

مقرر شهر
نوفمبر

MODULE



Unit **3** Role Models

Unit **4** Smart Choices

Module 2 Question Bank

Unit

3

ROLE MODELS



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify specific details about a role model's actions and qualities. Use context clues to understand vocabulary related to leadership and personal qualities.

Listening

Identify the main idea in interviews about role models and inspiring figures. Identify specific details such as what a role model did, their impact, and their personal qualities.

Speaking

Talk about a personal role model using past simple and key vocabulary.

Discuss leadership qualities in pairs or groups.

Language

Identify and use regular and irregular past simple verbs to talk about past actions and events.

Use past simple to ask and answer questions in conversations/ interviews.

Writing

Write a paragraph about someone students admire using past simple tense.

Express personal feelings and reflections about the qualities and actions of a role model.

LESSON 1 : An Egyptian Hero

• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان؛ حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
• قم باختيار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

A VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

accident (n)	حدث	community (n)	مجتمع	role model (n)	قدوة
achievement (n)	إنجاز	inspire (v) (d)	يُلهم/يُحفّز	scientist (n)	عالم
atomic radiation (n)	الإشعاع الذري	hero (n)	بطل	treatment (n)	علاج
Important adjectives صفات هامة					
caring (adj)	مهتم بالآخرين	determined (adj)	مصمم/عازم	kind (adj)	عطوف/طيب
brave (adj)	شجاع	inspiring (adj)	مُلهم		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

admire (d) (v)	يعجب بـ	motivation (n)	دافع/حافز	science (n)	مادة العلوم/العلم
aspirin (n)	أسبرين	peace (n)	سلام	spirit (n)	روح
believe (d) (v)	يعتقد/يصدق	person (n)	شخص	still (adv)	ما زال
cancer (n)	السرطان	Ph.D. (n)	درجة الدكتوراه	symbol (n)	رمز
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	physics (n)	الفيزياء	trusted (adj)	موثوق به
die (d) (v)	يموت/يتوفى	qualities (n)	صفات/سمات	United States (n)	الولايات المتحدة
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	research (n)	بحث علمي	web (n)	شبكة الإنترنت
invention (n)	اختراع	sadly (adv)	للأسف/من المحزن	women (n)	نساء

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

around the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	known for	معروف بـ	make sure	يتأكد
at Cairo University	في جامعة القاهرة	love/wish/hope for	حب/أمنية/أمل لـ	show love	يُظهر الحب
from a young age	منذ سن مبكرة	share knowledge with	يشارك المعرفة مع		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
become	يصبح	became	become	show	يظهر
			showed	shown	

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
true	حقيقي	untrue	غير حقيقي	cheap	رخيص	expensive	غالي

Checkpoint

Read and complete with a word from the list:

at – show – for – determined

- 1 Omar felt tired, but he was to win the race.
- 2 My friend is known helping others at school.
- 3 We can love by helping our friends when they're sad.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 was/were + born

وُلِدَ

- Waleed **was born** in Egypt in October 1985.

2 The first / The second / + عدد ترتيبي + to + inf. المصدر

الأول/الثاني ... ليفعل ...

- Samira Moussa became one of the **first** Egyptian women **to get** a Ph.D. in atomic radiation.

3 as + الصفة + as

بالمثل

- My wish for cancer treatment is to be **as cheap as** aspirin.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The twins in France in 2002.
 - a) are born
 - b) was born
 - c) were born
 - d) born
- 2 Our new house is your house.
 - a) as big as
 - b) as big
 - c) bigger
 - d) biggest
- 3 Mona was the fifth student the art class.
 - a) joined
 - b) to join
 - c) join
 - d) to joining

Vocabulary Builder

التعريفات Definitions

hero	بطل	a person who does great things for others	مهم (1) الوصول إلى (2)
kind	عطوف	friendly and caring ⁽¹⁾	
determined	مصمم/عازم	not giving up easily	
achievement	إنجاز	success in reaching ⁽²⁾ a goal	

Words and Synonyms **الكلمات ومرادفها**

مرادفها	Synonym (Meaning)	الكلمة	Word
شجاع	courageous (adj)	شجاع	brave
يعتقد	think	يعتقد/يصدق	believe (d) (v)

لاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
inspire (v)	يلهم/يحفز	-ing		تحويل إلى صفة		inspiring (adj)	ملهم
determine (v)	يصفّم/يحدد	-ed					determined (adj)	مصمم/عازم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Adam is brave. The synonym of "brave" is ".....".
a) known
b) determined
c) inspiring
d) courageous
- 2 We need to determine the best way to help our community. We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of "determine".
a) -ion
b) -ed
c) -ment
d) -ous
- 3 A/An is a person who does great things for others.
a) baby
b) enemy
c) hero
d) loser

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you think makes a person a hero in your community?
- 2 Do you have an inspiring person in your life? Who is this person?

 Read the following text. Why was Samira Moussa a symbol of hope for many Egyptian girls? **SB Page 36**

“Dr. Samira Moussa”

Dr. Samira Moussa was a true **hero**⁽¹⁾ who continues to **inspire**⁽²⁾ people today. She was born in Egypt in 1917 and showed a great love for science from a young age. She was **determined**⁽³⁾ to study physics and became one of the first Egyptian women to get a Ph.D. in **atomic radiation**⁽⁴⁾.

Samira was kind and always wanted to help her community. She believed that science should be used for peace and to improve people's lives. She often said, “My wish for cancer **treatment**⁽⁵⁾ is to be as cheap as aspirin.” She worked hard in research and taught students at Cairo University.

She traveled to the United States to continue her research and to share **knowledge**⁽⁶⁾ with other scientists. Her **achievement**⁽⁷⁾ in science and her moving spirit made her a symbol of hope for many Egyptian girls.

Sadly, she died in a car accident in 1952, but her work still inspires scientists around the world. Dr. Samira Moussa's story teaches us to be brave, caring, and determined in helping our community.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 When and where was Dr. Samira Moussa born?
- 2 What was Dr. Samira Moussa's wish?
- 3 Do you think Dr. Samira Moussa liked teamwork? Why?
- 4 How did Dr. Samira Moussa help her community and her students?
- 5 What three words would you use to describe Dr. Samira Moussa? Why?



- | | |
|-----------|------------------|
| (1) بطل | (2) يُلهِم |
| (3) عازِم | (4) الشعاع الذري |
| (5) علاج | (6) المعرفة |
| (7) إنجاز | |

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص 104 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
brave شجاع	true حقيقي
medicine علاج	young صغير السن
friendly ودود/طيب	cheap رخيص

2 Comprehension strategies:

Extract information:

استخراج المعلومات:

عليك قراءة السؤال جيداً والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيداً ثم العودة للنص.

For Example:

Dr. Samira Moussa was born in Egypt in 1917 and showed a great love for science from a young age. She was determined to study physics and became one of the first Egyptian women to get a Ph.D. in atomic radiation.

- What subject was Dr. Samira Moussa determined to study?

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Dr. Samira Moussa showed a great love for science from a young age.

☐

- أظهرت الدكتورة سميرة موسى حباً عظيماً للعلم منذ صغرها.

☐

- أظهرت الدكتورة سميرة موسى اهتماماً قليلاً بالعلم في شبابها.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- لا يزال عمل الدكتورة سميرة موسى يلهم العلماء في جميع أنحاء العالم.

☐

Dr. Samira Moussa's work still inspires scientists around the world.

☐

Dr. Samira Moussa's work helps scientists everywhere.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I live in a friendly We all feel happy and safe together.
a) corner b) roof c) community d) hole
2. We should give old people good and health care.
a) invention b) treatment c) accident d) discovery
3. The golden star is a for excellent work in the classroom.
a) symbol b) Ph.D. c) web d) spirit
4. I really my teacher because he is patient and very kind.
a) listen b) think c) continue d) admire
5. Children love to their parents by helping in the house.
a) show b) care c) admire d) make
6. Dina started to play the piano a young age.
a) off b) from c) in d) on
7. My mother is my because she works hard and helps everyone.
a) person b) neighbor c) role model d) scientist
8. My sister broke her arm in a car
a) achievement b) discovery c) accident d) invention
9. Dr. Samira Moussa was the first Egyptian woman to get a Ph.D.. in
a) accident b) discovery c) achievement d) atomic radiation
10. The soldier was very brave. Here, "brave" means ".....".
a) excited b) slow c) hesitated d) courageous
11. My neighbor usually does brave actions; he is a/an
a) thief b) magician c) hero d) enemy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

determined – for – achievements – treatment – heroes

Samira Moussa was a famous scientist from Egypt. She was known (1)..... her research in atomic radiation. From a young age, she was (2)..... to help people. She worked hard to find safe (3)..... for cancer. Many students admire her spirit. Sadly, she died in an accident, but she is still remembered today. Her (4)..... continue to inspire children around the world.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dr. Samira Moussa's in science made her a symbol of hope for many Egyptian girls.
a) achievement b) treatment c) dream d) sleep
2. My friend was to achieve his ambition, so he could reach his goal!
a) lazy b) careless c) determined d) appeared
3. Good teachers their students to work hard and never give up.
a) inspire b) believe c) continue d) repair
4. I think the internet is the greatest
a) protection b) discovery c) invention d) treatment
5. Our teacher always gives us to study harder.
a) motivation b) treatment c) discovery d) achievement
6. Who is your model in life?
a) roll b) rule c) rail d) role
7. work hard to make medicines for new diseases.
a) Artists b) Tourists c) Scientists d) Patients
8. The has millions of videos that teach us new things.
a) web b) spirit c) Ph.D. d) symbol
9. My mother takes when she has a terrible headache from working.
a) aspirin b) drink c) discovery d) courage
10. The teacher noticed that students were sad, so he helped them.
a) careless b) unkind c) caring d) courageous

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

achievements – caring – looking – community – hero

Huda Sha'arawi was an Egyptian woman who helped women. She started schools for girls and helped women greatly. She wanted to make her (1) better and safer. Huda Sha'arawi helped Egyptian women believe in themselves. She made many (2) in Egypt. She was a true (3) She showed that (4) for others is important.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1. Talking about a personal role model التحدث عن قدوة شخصية



What do you think makes someone a hero?

ما الذي يجعل الشخص بطلاً في رأيك؟

A hero is someone who helps others and works to make the world better.



البطل هو شخص يساعد الآخرين، ويعمل على جعل العالم مكاناً أفضل.



Do you have an inspiring person in your life?

هل لديك شخص ملهم في حياتك؟

Yes, I admire Dr. Samira Moussa. She wanted to use science to help people.



نعم، أعجب بالدكتورة سميرة موسى. أرادت استخدام العلم لمساعدة الناس.



What qualities do you think a role model should have?

ما الصفات التي تعتقد أن القدوة يجب أن تتحلى بها؟

A role model should be kind, determined, helpful, and honest.

يجب أن تكون القدوة عطوفة، ومصممة، ومساعدة للآخرين، ومصادقة.



How does your role model inspire you?

كيف يلهمك قدوتك؟

My role model inspires me to study hard and never give up.

قدوتي يلهمني أن أدرس بجد، ولا أستسلم أبداً.

2. Talking about a scientist you admire most التحدث عن عالم تعجب به أكثر شيء



What is the scientist's name?

ما اسم العالم/العالمة؟

The scientist's name is Dr. Samira Moussa.

اسم العالمة هو الدكتورة سميرة موسى.



When and where was she born?

متى وأين ولدت؟

She was born in Al-Gharbia in 1917.

ولدت في الغربية في عام ١٩١٧.



What did she study? Where?

ماذا درست؟ وأين؟

She studied physics at Cairo University.

درست الفيزياء في جامعة القاهرة.



What special qualities does/did the scientist have?

ما الصفات المميزة التي كانت لديها؟

She was kind, brave, determined, and inspiring.

كانت عطوفة، وشجاعة، ومصممة، وكانت ملهمة.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1. Complete the following dialog:

► Salma admires Dr. Samira Moussa.

Ali : Do you have a hero, Salma?

Salma : Yes! I really (1)..... Dr. Samira Moussa.

Ali : (2)..... is she a hero?

Salma : Because she wanted to use science to help people.

Ali : That's amazing. What (3)..... did she have?

Salma : She was brave, kind, and very smart.

Ali : Do you want to be like her?

Salma : (4).....! She inspires me to study hard.

2. Complete the following dialog:

► Omar asks Tamer about his favorite scientist.

Omar : Who is your favorite scientist?

Tamer : I admire Dr. Ahmed Zewail.

Omar : (1)..... did he win?

Tamer : He (2)..... the Nobel Prize.

Omar : What did he study?

Tamer : He (3)..... physics and chemistry.

Omar : (4)..... did he study?

Tamer : At Alexandria University and then in the USA.

Omar : That's amazing!

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



How to write about someone you admire (Your role model).

كيفية الكتابة عن شخص تعجب به (مُدوتك).

1 Who do you admire the most?
من الذي تُعجب به كثيرًا؟
e.g. My role model is my father.

2 Why do you admire this person?
لماذا تُعجب بهذا الشخص؟
e.g. I admire him because he is always caring and loves us very much.

3 What did this person do that was special or helpful?
ماذا الففء الخاص أو المميز الذي فعله هذا الشخص؟
e.g. He always works hard to take care of our family. When we have a problem, he helps us and gives us advice.

My role model

4 What good qualities does this person have?
ما الصفات الجيدة التي يتمتع بها هذا الشخص؟
e.g. My father is kind to others and respects everyone.

5 How does this person inspire you?
كيف يلهمك هذا الشخص؟
e.g. He inspires me to work hard and love my family.

استخدم الأفكار السابقة لكتابة فقرتك:

راجع علامات الترقيم في مقدمة الكتاب.

نموذج مجاب عنه:

"Someone I Admire (My Role Model)"

I admire Dr. Ahmed Zewail because he is a great example of hard work and success. He worked hard and discovered many things. He won the Nobel Prize and made Egypt proud of him. I like how he always believed in learning and never gave up. Dr. Zewail is smart, kind, and determined. He showed that anyone can succeed with hard work. He inspires me to study and help others. That's why he is my hero and my role model.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dr. Samira Moussa is a/an person who never gave up.
 a) lazy b) cheap c) inspiring d) atomic
2. We all need to live in and help each other.
 a) physics b) science c) research d) peace

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

get – care – believe – role – radiation

Many girls in Egypt see Samira Moussa as a (1)..... model. She believed that women should study science and share knowledge with others. Her work in physics helped many people understand atomic (2)..... . She became one of the first women to (3)..... a Ph.D. in her field. Her life teaches us to (4)..... in ourselves and our dreams.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Hani admires his English teacher, Mr. Gamal.

Aya : Who is your hero, Hani?

Hani : My (1)..... is my English teacher, Mr. Gamal.

Aya : Really? (2)..... do you admire him?

Hani : Because he always helps me and believes in me.

Aya : What makes someone a (3)..... to you?

Hani : A hero is someone who helps others and shows kindness.

Aya : Does your teacher do that?

Hani : Yes, he (4)..... . He is caring and always encourages us.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"The person you admire most"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

admiration (n)	إعجاب	encourage (v) (d)	يشجّع	strength (n)	قوة
attack (ed) (n/v)	هجوم/يهاجم	motivate (d) (v)	يحفّز	terrorists (n)	الإرهابيون
defend (ed) (v)	يدافع	officer (n)	ضابط		
Egyptian Army (n)	الجيش المصري	soldier (n)	جندى		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

absent (adj)	غائب	camp (n)	معسكر	vacation (n)	عطلة/إجازة
advice (n)	نصيحة	job (n)	وظيفة	visit (ed) (v)	يزور

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

during	أثناء	go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	on exams	في الامتحانات
give advice to	يعطي نصيحة لـ	keep it safe	يُبقّيها آمنة	travel for work	يسافر للعمل
give his life	يهب حياته	move to	ينتقل إلى	work hard	يعمل بجد

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
fight	يقاتل/يحارب	fought	give	يعطي	gave
feel	يشعر	felt	grow up	يكبر/يبلغ	grew up

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
die	يموت	live	يعيش	strength	قوة	weakness	ضعف

Read and complete with a word from the list:

grow – takes – strength – gives – absent

- 1 You need and courage to try new things and never give up.
- 2 Leila was from school because she had a cold.
- 3 I want to be a doctor when I up.
- 4 My mom always advice to me when I have a problem.

LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	location (n)	موقع (جغرافي)	politics (n)	السياسة
award (n)	جائزة	medal (n)	ميدالية	role (n)	دور
geographer (n)	عالم جغرافيا	member (n)	فرد/عضو (جماعة)	writer (n)	كاتب
geography (n)	الجغرافيا	motivated (adj)	مُتحفز/لديه دافع		
history (n)	التاريخ	personality (n)	شخصية		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

acting (n)	تمثيل	country (n)	بلد/دولة	land (n)	أرض
arts (n)	فنون	deep (adj)	عميق	people (n)	شعب/ناس
climate (n)	مناخ	England (n)	إنجلترا	Qalyubia	القليوبية
combine (d) (v)	يجمع/يجمع بين	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	Suez Canal (n)	قناة السويس

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

famous for	مشهور بـ	State Appreciation Award	جائزة الدولة التقديرية	make a difference	يُحدثُ فرقًا
interested in	مهتم بـ	including	متضمنًا/بما في ذلك	top medal	ميدالية رفيعة المستوى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
win	يفوز/يكسب	won	write	يكتب	wrote
		won		wrote	written

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف	win	يفوز/يكسب	lose	يخسر/يفقد

Read and complete with a word from the list:

climate – win – lose – in

- The in Egypt is hot and sunny in summer.
- I'm interested drawing pictures of animals.
- Mariam smiled when she saw her team the game.



يَقْضِي spend + وقت + v+ing

• I **spent** two hours **studying** English.

يَسْتَعْرِقُ

Word-Building Skills

1 A suffix:

اللاحقة

A suffix is a group of letters added to the end of a word to change its meaning or part of speech. Suffixes help us create new words.

اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الحروف تُضاف إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو نوعها في الكلام. تساعدنا اللواحق في تكوين كلمات جديدة.

Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	Root Word	أصل الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
-ful		تحويل الاسم / الفعل إلى صفة		power (n)	قوة	powerful (adj)	قوى
				help (v)	يساعد	helpful (adj)	مساعد/مفيد
-ist		تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل		science (n)	علوم	scientist (n)	عالم
-ment		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		agree (v)	يوافق	agreement (n)	اتفاق
				pay (v)	يدفع	payment (n)	الدفع
				move (v)	يتحرك	movement (n)	حركة
-er		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل		think (v)	يفكر	thinker (n)	مفكر
				sing (v)	يغنى	singer (n)	مغنى
-ly		تحويل الصفة إلى حال		quick (adj)	سريع	quickly (adv)	بسرعة

2 A prefix:

البادئة

A prefix is a group of letters added before a word to change its meaning.

البادئة هي مجموعة من الحروف تُضاف في بداية الكلمة لتغيير معناها.

prefix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	Root Word	أصل الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
in-				correct (adj)	صحيح	incorrect (adj)	غير صحيح
				afraid (adj)	خائف	unafraid (adj)	غير خائف
un-				usual (adj)	معتاد	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد
				motivated (adj)	متحفز	unmotivated (adj)	غير متحفز
				happy (adj)	سعيد	unhappy (adj)	غير سعيد
ir-				regular (adj)	منتظم	irregular (adj)	غير منتظم
				responsible (adj)	مسئول	irresponsible (adj)	غير مسئول
dis-				like (v)	يحب	dislike (v)	يكره

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

inspire	يُلهم	to motivate ⁽¹⁾ or encourage	يُحفز (1)
respect	يحترم	to feel admiration ⁽²⁾ for someone	.....
role model	قدوة	someone you admire and try to be like	إعجاب (2)

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
award (n)	جائزة	prize	جائزة
combine (d) (v)	يجمع/يجمع بين	mix	يخلط
famous for	مشهور بـ	known for	معروف بـ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
admire (v)	يعجب بـ	-ation		تحويل إلى اسم		admiration (n)	إعجاب
differ (v)	يختلف	-ence				difference (n)	اختلاف

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I agree with you. To form the opposite of "agree", we add the prefix ".....".
a) im- b) ir- c) dis- d) in-
- To is to motivate or encourage someone.
a) discourage b) inspire c) damage d) move
- To form the adjective of "power", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ist b) -ment c) -ful d) -ness

تطبيق الأضواء



ذاكر دروسك الآن بطريقة تفاعلية من خلال
فيديوهات شرح الدروس.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



B Reading & Listening Skills



Lesson 3

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 Who is your role model?
- 2 What qualities do you admire most in your role model?

1. Listen to Noha's post.

SB page 44

My **role model**⁽¹⁾ is my mother. She works very hard every day and always helps others. Even when she's tired, she smiles and takes care of our family.

She **inspires**⁽²⁾ me to work hard at school and to be kind to everyone. I **respect**⁽³⁾ her because she never gives up, even when things are difficult. She teaches me that being strong doesn't mean never feeling sad - it means keeping going. When I grow up, I want to be just like her. That's why my mother is my favorite role model.



- (1) قدوة (2) يُلهِم
(3) يحترم

2. Listen to the dialog about Ahmed El-Mansy and answer the questions.

Omar Hi, Nada. Do you know Ahmed El-Mansy?

Nada Yes, of course. He's a brave Egyptian **hero**⁽¹⁾.

Omar What was his job?

Nada He was an officer in the **Egyptian army**⁽²⁾.

Omar What did he do for Egypt?

Nada He fought the **terrorists**⁽³⁾ and protected our country.

Omar How did he and his soldiers fight?

Nada They **defended**⁽⁴⁾ their **camp**⁽⁵⁾ bravely and did not give up during the attack.

Omar That's very brave! Did he save any soldiers?

Nada Yes, he helped and saved many soldiers before he died.

Omar Why do people love him so much?

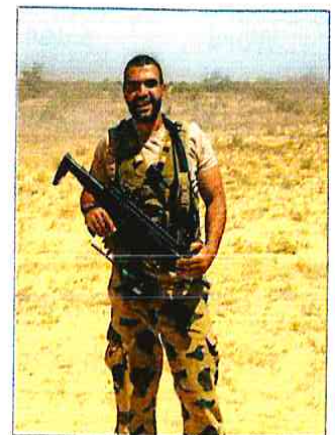
Nada Because he loved Egypt and gave his life to keep it safe.

Omar What lesson do we learn from him?

Nada We learn to love our country, be brave, and help others.

Omar Yes, we should always remember him as a true hero.

Nada Of course, Omar. He will always live in our hearts.



- (1) بطل (2) الجيش المصري
(3) الإرهابيون (4) يدافع
(5) معسكر

Post-listening questions:

- 1 What did the soldiers do during the attack?
- 2 What lesson can we learn from this story?

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Do you have a role model?
- 2 Is your role model a family member, a famous person, athlete, teacher or someone else?

 Read the text about Dr. Gamal Hemdan.

Lesson 3

SB page 46

Dr. Gamal Hemdan

Dr. Gamal Hemdan was a famous Egyptian **geographer**⁽¹⁾ and writer. He was born in 1928 in Qalyubia, Egypt. He studied geography at Cairo University and later got his Ph.D. from a university in England. Dr. Hemdan was not only a scientist, but also a deep **thinker**⁽²⁾. He **combined**⁽³⁾ geography, history, and **politics**⁽⁴⁾ to explain why Egypt is a very special country.

His most famous book is "*The **Personality**⁽⁵⁾ of Egypt*", where he wrote about Egypt's land, its people, and its important role in history. He also wrote books about the Suez Canal.

Dr. Hemdan won many **awards**⁽⁶⁾, including the **State Appreciation Award**⁽⁷⁾ in 1986 and a top medal in science and arts. He was known for his strong ideas. He believed Egypt's location made it powerful.

His work still helps students and scientists understand Egypt better. He died in 1993, but his books are still important today.



(1) عالم جغرافيا (2) مفكر

(3) يمزج (4) السياسة

(5) شخصية (6) جوائز

(7) جائزة الدولة التقديرية

Post-reading questions:

A) Read the text again and choose the correct answer:

1. Dr. Gamal Hemdan was interested in
a) geography b) music c) arts d) acting
2. Dr. Gamal Hemdan was not only a scientist, but also a/an
a) geological b) thinker c) actor d) doctor
3. Dr. Gamal Hemdan the State Appreciation Award in 1986.
a) sent b) won c) made d) lost
4. He believed that Egypt's made it strong and powerful.
a) climate b) people c) awards d) location

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What was Dr. Gamal Hemdan famous for?

.....

6. Why do many people see Dr. Hemdan as a role model?

.....

Skills Bank Reading



1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص 116-117 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
prize جائزة	win يفوز/يكسب
combine يدمج	strong قوى
known for معروف بـ	die يموت

2 Comprehension strategies:

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dr. Gamal Hemdan was a famous Egyptian geographer and writer. He was born in 1928 in Qalyubia, Egypt. He studied geography at Cairo University and later got his Ph.D. from a university in England. Dr. Hemdan was not only a scientist, but also a deep thinker. He combined geography, history, and politics to explain why Egypt is a very special country.

- What's the main idea of the passage?

(ذكر الفكرة الرئيسية للنص)

- What does the underlined word "his" refer to?

(فهم ما تشير إليه كلمة)

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Dr. Hemdan was not only a scientist, but also a deep thinker.

☐ لم يكن الدكتور حمدان عالماً فقط، بل كان أيضاً مفكراً عميقاً.

☐ لم يكن الدكتور حمدان مدرساً فقط، بل كان أيضاً رياضياً.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

☐ His books are no longer useful today.

☐ His books are still important today.

- ولا تزال كتبه مهمة حتى يومنا هذا.

LESSON

2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar wants to on a trip to see the Pyramids.
a) take b) go c) wash d) keep
2. My coach always me to train even when I feel tired.
a) remembers b) motivates c) stops d) feels
3. Last year, a shark Belal and he lost a leg.
a) protected b) attacked c) inspired d) helped
4. You need much to carry that box. It's too heavy.
a) strength b) admiration c) advice d) attack
5. My best friend was from school yesterday because she was sick.
a) happy b) absent c) present d) sad
6. I have great for my teacher because she always helps us learn quickly.
a) situation b) advice c) admiration d) job
7. I hope to be successful like my father when I up.
a) give b) stand c) grow d) hurry
8. A/An protects his country and keeps the people safe.
a) pupil b) grandpa c) soldier d) baby
9. The soldiers and officers in the Egyptian are very brave.
a) company b) army c) village d) town
10. Our soldiers and officers usually bravely to protect our country.
a) fear b) feel c) fight d) reach
11. We should do our best to our country.
a) do b) learn c) pretend d) defend
12. The soldiers fought bravely to defend their
a) view b) camp c) opinion d) duty

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

helpful – soldier – attack – proud – strength

When I grow up, I want to be like my grandpa. He was a brave (1)..... who protected his country. My grandma told me many stories about how he used his (2)..... to help others. I feel (3)..... of him. He used to give advice to young people to always be kind and (4)..... .

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Naguib Mahfouz was a famous He wrote a lot of interesting books.
a) player b) member c) geographer d) writer
2. Ali got a/an for writing the best short story.
a) role b) award c) ward d) modal
3. Dr. Gamal Hemdan was a famous Egyptian and writer.
a) geography b) geographer c) history d) photographer
4. Reem has a cheerful and always makes her friends feel happy.
a) history b) personality c) personal d) acting
5. Rania wants to become a doctor so she can a difference in people's lives.
a) make b) do c) play d) give
6. The school invited a/an to speak about healthy living and training hard.
a) number b) stranger c) athlete d) member
7. Dr. Gamal Hemdan geography, history, and politics to explain why Egypt is a very special country.
a) corrected b) deleted c) combined d) carried
8. This restaurant has a perfect near the park and the lake.
a) award b) location c) situation d) present
9. I agreed to lend Ali my camera. To change "agree" into a noun, add the
a) prefix "un-" b) prefix "dis-" c) suffix "-ment" d) suffix "-ity"
10. Is my answer correct? To give the opposite of "correct", add the
a) prefix "in-" b) prefix "un-" c) suffix "-ly" d) suffix "-less"

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

combined – geographer – geography – explains – location

Dr. Gamal Hemdan was one of Egypt's most important scientists — a (1) who studied Egypt's land and (2) He was born in 1928 in Qalyubia, he went to Cairo University before getting his Ph.D. in England. He (3) geography with history and politics to show why Egypt is special. His famous book "The Personality of Egypt" (4) how our country's special place in the world made it powerful throughout history.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Grammar story:



Yesterday, Omar **walked** (1) to the store with his sister. They **bought** (2) some fruit and snacks. Afterward, they **watched** (3) a movie together. They **enjoyed** (4) their day.

-Try to write the infinitive form of the bold verbs.

1. walk

2.

3.

4.

Usage الاستخدام

We use **the past simple tense** to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.

• يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

- e.g. • I **watched** a nice movie yesterday.
• Soha **bought** a new dress last Friday.

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject + the verb + the object

Form التكوين

Negative النفي

Subject + **didn't** + inf. + the object

- e.g. • I **helped** my parents yesterday.

(فعل منتظم)

- Last Monday, Mazin **wrote** stories using AI.

(فعل غير منتظم)

- e.g. • I **didn't** help my parents yesterday.

- Last Monday, Mazin **didn't** write any stories using AI.

Yes/ No question
السؤال بمعنى هل

Question
السؤال

Wh- question
السؤال بأداة استفهام

Did + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل ...?

e.g. A: Did you help your parents yesterday?

B: Yes, I did. / B: No, I didn't.

Q. Word + subject + did + (أداة استفهام) + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. A: What did Mazin do last Monday?

B: He wrote stories using AI.

لاحظ أن

في حالة السؤال عن الفاعل يكون تكوين السؤال كالتالي:

Who + التصريف الثاني للفعل?

e.g. A: Who helped you with the homework?

B: My father.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday أمس الماضي ... last منذ ... ago في الماضي in the past

in + سنة في الماضي (in 2010) عندما كنت صغيراً When I was young

e.g. • We went to Alex last month.

• I volunteered in a children's hospital two weeks ago.

• She learned to ride a bike when she was five.

Got it ?

يمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My grandma (teach) me how to play the guitar. It was three years ago.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (taught) لوجود ago الدالة على أن الجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط.

2 Last year, I (not/ travel) to Alexandria. I went to Hurghada.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't travel) لوجود Last الدالة على أن الجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط والجملة هنا منفية.

3 Why did the coach (ask) Omar to join the team?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (ask) لوجود did التي يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

4 Salma visited her grandmother (next) weekend.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (last) لوجود visited فعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

الفعل "يكون" من الأفعال غير المنتظمة وله تكوين خاص به.

Verb "to be":

Affirmative الإثبات

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **was** +

e.g. • Omar **was** tired last night.

We, They, You, اسم جمع + **were** +

e.g. • We **were** at the club yesterday.

Negative النفي

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **wasn't** +

e.g. • Omar **wasn't** tired last night.

We, They, You, اسم جمع + **weren't** +

e.g. • We **weren't** at the club yesterday.

Yes/ No question

السؤال بمعنى هل

Was + I, he, she, it, اسم مفرد + ... ?

e.g. A: **Was** Omar tired last night?

B: Yes, he **was**. / No, he **wasn't**.

Were + you, we, they, اسم جمع + ... ?

e.g. A: **Were** you at the club yesterday?

B: Yes, we **were**. / No, we **weren't**.

Yes, I **was**. / No, I **wasn't**.

Question السؤال

Wh- question

السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word (أداة استفهام) + **was** + I, he, she, it, اسم مفرد +?

e.g. A: How **was** your last summer vacation?

B: It **was** great!

Q. Word (أداة استفهام) + **were** + we, they, you, اسم جمع +?

e.g. A: Where **were** the children yesterday?

B: They **were** at the club.

في الإجابة يمكن تحويل (Were you...?) إلى (was I).

لاحظ أن



Got it ?

تمتلك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My sons (be) happy at the party last night.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود **last** الدالة على أن الجملة في زمن الماضي.

2 (Did) your father at work yesterday?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Was) لوجود **yesterday** الدالة على أن الجملة في زمن الماضي ولعدم وجود فعل أساسي في الجملة.

3 I (not/ be) at school yesterday morning because I had a bad cold.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't) لوجود **yesterday** الدالة على أن الجملة في زمن الماضي.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yesterday, Yara her favorite meal with milk before going to school.
a) eats b) ate c) eating d) eat
2. Last Tuesday, Ibrahim his new bicycle to school for the first time.
a) rides b) riding c) rode d) ride
3. Malak finish her homework because she felt sick.
a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) wasn't
4. The children very happy when they saw the colorful balloons at the party.
a) were b) was c) are d) is
5. Two days ago, Nour a beautiful butterfly in her grandmother's garden.
a) see b) sees c) seeing d) saw
6. Rayan help his mother clean the kitchen after dinner last night?
a) Do b) Does c) Did d) Was
7. The weather cold and rainy when we went camping.
a) is b) was c) are d) were
8. Yousef and his cousin a big sandcastle at the beach together last weekend.
a) build b) builds c) built d) building

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Zain (play) football with his friends in the park yesterday.
2. My sister (not/help) my mother last night because she was tired.
3. (Do) Hana eat breakfast before going to school this morning?
4. The children (be) very happy when they went to the park last Saturday.
5. Where (do) you put your school bag when you came home?
6. Roaa (watch) her favorite cartoon on TV for one hour yesterday.
7. We (not/see) any dolphins near the beach during our trip last summer.
8. Bilal (go) to the dentist with his mother three days ago.
9. Why did the teacher (gave) us extra homework last Monday?
10. The cat (sleep) under the big tree in our garden yesterday.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Omar his favorite toy car under the bed yesterday.
a) find b) found c) finding d) finds
2. Farah her best friend a birthday card three weeks ago.
a) make b) making c) made d) makes
3. Last Saturday, we go to the zoo because it was closed for repairs.
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) weren't
4. Leila all her colored pencils to draw a picture last Monday.
a) uses b) using c) use d) used
5. Hana like the vegetables on her plate yesterday, so she left them.
a) didn't b) doesn't c) don't d) wasn't
6. Where you put your backpack when you came home from school yesterday?
a) do b) did c) does d) was
7. The puppies very small when we first brought them home last year.
a) was b) is c) were d) are
8. What time the movie start when you went to the cinema?
a) did b) do c) was d) does

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. Nour (not/like) the new movie we watched at the cinema last week.
2. (Does) your brother help you with your math problems yesterday evening?
3. Tala (make) a beautiful drawing for her art class two days ago.
4. The boys (be) late for school because the bus didn't come on time.
5. What time (did) the movie last Friday?
6. Eman (forget) to bring her lunch box to school this morning.
7. There (not) ice cream for us at the store yesterday.
8. Waleed (swim) in the pool with his cousins at the club last weekend.
9. How many goals (do) the team score in yesterday's football match?
10. The baby (cry) because she was hungry and cold.

How to write about a great Egyptian role model

كيفية الكتابة عن قدوة مصرية عظيمة.

Dr. Samira Moussa

1

Who is Dr. Samira Moussa?

من هي الدكتورة سميرة موسى؟

e.g. Samira Moussa was a famous Egyptian scientist.

2

What did she study or do?

ماذا درست أو فعلت؟

e.g. She was the first Egyptian woman in Egypt to study atomic radiation.

3

What was her dream for science and people?

ماذا كان حلمها للعلم والناس؟

e.g. She worked to make science safe and helpful for everyone.

4

What challenges did she face as a woman?

ما التحديات التي واجهتها كأمراة؟

e.g. It was hard for women to study science, but she didn't give up.

5

Where did she travel to learn more?

أين سافرت لتتعلم المزيد؟

e.g. She traveled to the U.S. to learn more.

6

Why do many people remember her today?

لماذا الكثير من الناس يتذكرونها اليوم؟

e.g. She is remembered for her courage and love for Egypt.

استخدم الأفكار السابقة لكتابة فقرة:

راجع علامات
الترقيم
في مقدمة
الكتاب.

قم بقراءة هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Dr. Samira Moussa"

Dr. Samira Moussa was a great Egyptian scientist and role model. She was the first female nuclear scientist in Egypt. Dr. Samira worked hard to make science helpful and safe for everyone. She wanted cancer treatment to be cheaper for all people. Even though it was hard for women to study science at that time, she never gave up. She also traveled to the U.S. to learn more. Dr. Samira Moussa is remembered for her courage and love for her country. She is inspiring for all women.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where was Dr. Samira Moussa born?
a) Syria. b) Jordan. c) Egypt. d) Morocco.
2. What did she love to read about?
a) Cooking. b) History. c) Animals. d) Space and physics.
3. Who helped her go to school?
a) Her uncle. b) Her brother. c) Her friend. d) Her father.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Dr. Samira Moussa was born in in 1917.
5. She loved to read about and physics.
6. Her helped her learn and go to school.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dr. Hemdan believed Egypt's made it powerful.
a) situation b) location c) stress d) address
2. Huda was proud when she got a gold for winning the school race.
a) medal b) model c) sign d) symbol

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

medal – combining – leaving – personality – strong

My mother is my greatest role model. She works hard every day, (1)..... her job with taking care of our family. She teaches me to be (2)....., kind, and never afraid to fail. Her (3)..... is full of love and wisdom الحكمة. She may not have a (4)....., but she is the best leader I know.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Dr. Hassan was a famous geographer from Egypt. He studied the land, rivers, and climate of different areas. He traveled across the country to learn more about its geography. He later explained what he learned in books and on TV. Many people watched his shows and learned about Egypt's history. He also talked about the Suez Canal and why it is important. Dr. Hassan wanted to make a difference by helping students understand the world. His deep knowledge and kind words made him loved by many. He won the State Appreciation Award for his work in geography.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dr. Hassan studied
a) sports b) geography c) music d) medicine

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

crystal (adj)	كريستالي	grin (ned) (v)	يبتسم ابتسامة عريضة	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
curiosity (n)	فضول	honesty (n)	أمانة	stand (n)	حامل/مسند
final (adj)	نهائي	nod (ded) (v)	يوميئ (برأسه)	warm smile (n)	ابتسامة مشجعة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

agreement (n)	موافقة	heart (n)	قلب	promise (d) (v)	يعد
change (d) (v)	يغير/يتغير	keen (adj)	حريص/متحمس	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
happiness (n)	سعادة	pride (n)	فخر	return (ed) (v)	يعود

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do the right thing	يفعل الصواب	full of	ممتلئ بـ	show agreement	يبدى الموافقة
from that day on	من ذلك اليوم فصاعدًا	give up on	يتخلى عن/يفقد الأمل في	people with kidney diseases	مرضى الكلى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
do	يفعل	did	done	find	يجد
				found	found

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
inside	داخل	outside	خارج	up	أعلى	down	أسفل

Read and complete with a word from the list:

agreement – honesty – off – of

- 1 People trust you more when you have
- 2 Sara and her friend made an to play together after school.
- 3 The sky was full bright stars last night.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

admirable (adj)	جدير بالإعجاب	face (d) (v)	يواجه	kidney (n)	كلية
dedication (n)	تفانٍ	healthy (adj)	صحي	overcome (v)	يتغلب على
disease (n)	مرض	hopeful (adj)	مُفعم بالأمل	patient (n)	مريض

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

biography (n)	سيرة حياة ذاتية	Olympics (n)	الأولمبياد	swimmer (n)	سباح
great (adj)	عظيم	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي	transplant (n)	زراعة أعضاء

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

care about	يهتم بـ	kind to	طيب مع
follow a dream	يتبع حلمًا		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
fight	يقاتل	fought	become	يصبح	became
					become

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
face	يواجه	escape	يهرب	patient	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة

Read and complete with a word from the list:

happiness - patient - great - final

- The doctor smiled at the young and gave him some medicine.
- Today is the day of school before the summer holiday.
- Seeing my friends at school fills me with

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 reach

• I **reached** the park at 10 a.m.

arrive in

• We **arrived in** Luxor last night.

arrive at

• They **arrived at** the cinema at 9 p.m.

get to

• How do you **get to** school?

يصل إلى (مكان / مدينة / دولة / قارة)

يصل إلى (مدينة/دولة)

يصل إلى (مكان داخل مدينة)

يصل إلى (مكان / مدينة / دولة / قارة)

2 not only ... but also

• He **not only** did his work well, **but also** helped his friends.

ليس فقط....ولكن أيضاً

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

grin	يبتسم ابتسامة عريضة	to smile	موافقة (1)
curious	فضولى	keen to learn or know more about something	
nod	يوميئ برأسه	move the head up and down to show agreement ⁽¹⁾	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
grin (v)	يبتسم ابتسامة عريضة	smile	يبتسم	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى	get to	يصل إلى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
health (n)	صحة	-y		تحول إلى صفة		healthy (adj)	صحي
admire (v)	يعجب بـ	-able				admirable (adj)	جدير بالإعجاب

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Dad reaches his work on time. The synonym of "reach" is ".....".

a) overcome

b) face

c) give up

d) get to

2 Eating fruits and vegetables is good for your health. To form the adjective of "health", we add the suffix ".....".

a) -ous

b) -y

c) -ion

d) -able

3 To is to move the head up and down to show agreement.

a) nod

b) admire

c) reach

d) face

The Magic Classroom

Pre-reading questions:

1 Do you think the children will reach the final room?

2 What do you think they will find in the final room?

 Read the following text. How did children feel when the box clicked open?

SB page 48

CHAPTER THREE:

The Greatest Lessons

Inside the final room, the children found a glowing book on a **crystal stand**⁽¹⁾. Mr. Adam appeared with a warm smile. "You have completed the Magic Classroom," he said. "But remember, the real magic is not in the puzzles, it is in the values you showed."

He opened the magical book, and glowing words appeared:

"Responsibility. Curiosity. Teamwork. Respect. Determination. Courage."

Sara smiled, "We solved every problem by working together."

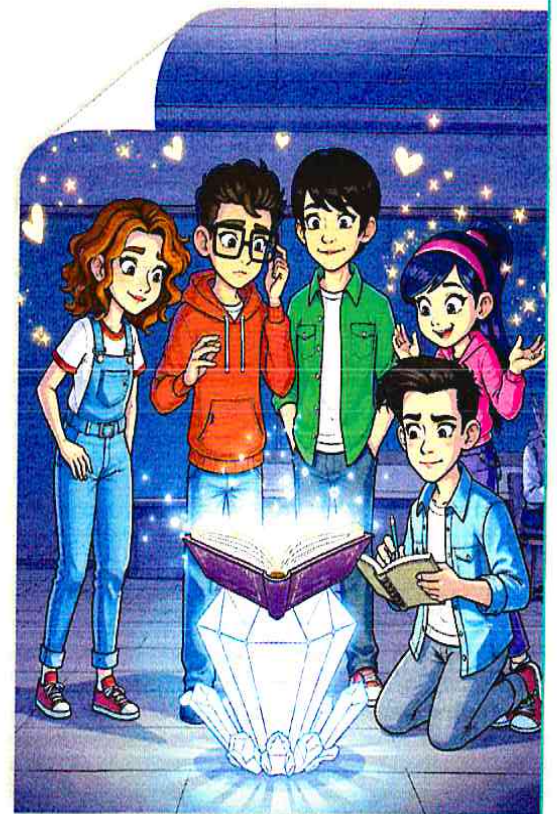
Zain added, "We respected each other and stayed curious."

Omar **grinned**⁽²⁾, "I had courage because my friends believed in me."

Mr. Adam nodded, "You also showed honesty - doing the right thing even when no one was watching."

The children returned to their classroom, their hearts full of **pride**⁽³⁾ and happiness. From that day on, they promised to use these values in everything they did—at school, at home, and online.

They knew that the greatest lessons they had learned were not about magic, but about kindness, respect, and never giving up on themselves or each other.



(1) حامل کریستالی (2) بیخشم (3) الفخر

CHAPTER 3

1 Read and complete the sentences with the correct words from the box.

Determination – grin – curious – Nod

- means to move the head up and down to show agreement.
- To be keen to learn or know more about something means
- To is to smile.
- means not giving up when things are hard.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The children found a in the final room.
 a) glowing book b) magic wand c) locked door d) treasure box
- Sara said that they, so they solved every problem.
 a) left the room b) worked together c) stayed inside d) asked the teacher
- The children promised to after leaving the room.
 a) play more games b) stop being curious
 c) use values they learned in life d) forget the final lesson

3 Answer the following questions.

- Where was the glowing book?

.....

- Who opened the magical book?

.....

- Who did the children see in the final room?

.....

4 Critical thinking

- How do you think the children help Omar to change?

.....

- Why do you think the teacher was proud of the children?

.....

Pre-reading question:

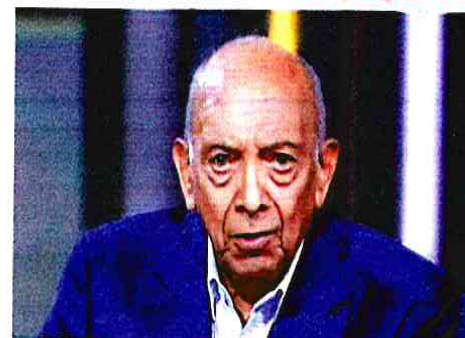
- What qualities do you think make someone a real-life hero?

Read and complete from the box:

Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem is a famous Egyptian doctor and a **hero** to many people. He is a determined doctor who worked hard to help people with **kidney**⁽¹⁾ diseases. Dr. Ghoniem's **achievements** are many, as he developed new methods for kidney **transplants**⁽²⁾ and helped many patients in his **community**.

He is brave because he worked in difficult **situations**⁽³⁾ and did not stop when he faced problems. Dr. Ghoniem is also very kind to his patients, always taking time to listen to them. Many young doctors say that Dr. Ghoniem **inspires** them to become better doctors and to help others.

His work is important not only in Egypt, but also around the world. Dr. Ghoniem shows us that one person can make a big **difference** when they care about and love their work. He teaches us that true heroes are those who help people and make their communities stronger and **healthier**.



(1) كلية (2) زراعة (3) مواقف

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What kind of doctor is Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem, and what did he work hard to treat?
- 2 What are some of Dr. Ghoniem's important achievements?
- 3 How did Dr. Ghoniem help his community and other doctors?

Team-Project Roundtable

ملصق قدوتي My Role Model Poster

Create a poster about someone you really admire.

Show why they are special and how they inspire you to think about your future.

You can work in pairs or small groups:

Instructions التعليمات:

- Choose a famous person, someone in your family, or community.
اختر شخصاً مشهوراً أو شخصاً من عائلتك أو مجتمعك.
- Write their name at the top of the poster and add a picture (drawn or printed).
اكتب اسمه/اسمها في أعلى الملصق وأضف صورة (مرسومة أو مطبوعة).
- Write 3 - 5 interesting facts about their life and achievements.
اكتب من ٣ إلى ٥ معلومات مثيرة عن حياته/حياتها وإنجازاته/إنجازاتها.
- Write 3 - 4 strengths or good qualities they have.
اكتب من ٣ إلى ٤ نقاط قوة أو صفات جيدة يتمتع بها.
- Add one sentence explaining how they inspire you and how they impact your future.
أضف جملة واحدة تشرح كيف يلهمك هذا الشخص وكيف يؤثر على مستقبلك.

Presentation التقديم:

Present your poster to your group first, then share it with the whole class. اعرض ملصقك أولاً أمام مجموعتك، ثم شاركه مع الصف بأكمله.

Lesson 6

SB page 52

أنشئ ملصقاً عن شخص تُعجب به كثيراً.

وضح لماذا هو/هي شخص مميز، وكيف يلهمك للتفكير في مستقبلك.

يمكنك العمل مع زميل أو في مجموعات صغيرة:



1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة 132-134 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
smile يبتسم	kind to طيب مع
keen حريص/متحمس	healthy صحي
illness مرض	inside داخل

2 Comprehension strategies:

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem is courageous because he worked in difficult situations and did not stop when he faced problems. Dr. Ghoniem is also very kind to his patients, always taking time to listen to them. Many young doctors say that Dr. Ghoniem inspires them to become better doctors and to help others.

1. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

(فهم ما تشير إليه كلمة)

2. The word "patient" means someone who is

(تخمين معنى كلمة)

a) well

b) sick

c) healthy

d) determined

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- We respected each other and stayed curious.

☐ - احترمنا بعضنا البعض وبقينا فضوليين.

☐ - تجاهلنا بعضنا البعض وبقينا غاضبين.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- إنه شجاع لأنه عمل في ظروف صعبة.

☐ He is brave because he worked in difficult conditions.

☐ He is tired because he worked in easy conditions.

LESSON

4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yasmin's made her ask many questions about how airplanes can fly.
a) curiosity b) responsibility c) dedication d) disease
2. Sama's bag is always full books, pencils, and her favorite snacks for school.
a) of b) to c) from d) over
3. Tomorrow is our exam, so we need to study very hard tonight.
a) final b) crystal c) admirable d) healthy
4. My grandmother's appears in her eyes when we visit her.
a) agreement b) happiness c) responsibility d) ability
5. We all love kind and friendly people. To change "kind" into a noun, add the suffix " "
a) -ation b) -ment c) -ity d) -ness
6. The boy started to when he saw his birthday presents. He was happy.
a) grin b) change c) nod d) face
7. Emad smiled at his friend to agreement on their project idea.
a) color b) write c) show d) wash
8. My parents felt great when I won the spelling competition.
a) pride b) curiosity c) dedication d) disease
9. My father to take us to the zoo next weekend.
a) grinned b) promised c) reached d) said
10. My at home is to set the table before dinner.
a) agreement b) responsibility c) happiness d) pride
11. We should the right thing and tell the truth.
a) face b) arrive c) do d) make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

magic – giving – lessons – taking – true

The children learned many lessons. They knew that the greatest (1) they had learned were not about magic, but about kindness, respect, and never (2) up on themselves or each other. They had become (3) friends who cared and listened. Together, they learned that helping others is the real (4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The students felt about passing the test after studying hard.
a) hopeful b) crystal c) final d) healthy
2. My uncle needed a kidney because his kidney stopped working.
a) agreement b) transplant c) happiness d) pride
3. Good friends always care each other when someone is feeling sad or lonely.
a) about b) on c) to d) with
4. Salma wants to her dream of becoming a famous artist who paints beautiful pictures.
a) spend b) follow c) face d) protect
5. The nurse gave medicine to every in the ward العنبر.
a) patient b) doctor c) swimmer d) grandmother
6. We must our environment by not throwing trash anywhere.
a) promise b) protect c) reach d) return
7. The doctor's saved many lives because he worked through the night.
a) disease b) agreement c) curiosity d) dedication
8. Adam had a bad that made him stay in bed for a whole week.
a) disease b) mind c) solution d) stand
9. The teacher asked us to write a/an about our favorite person.
a) agreement b) biography c) happiness d) pride
10. It is how Yousef helps the old woman carry her heavy bags.
a) healthy b) final c) admirable d) politely
11. You should your teacher for help.
a) give b) think c) ask d) answer

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

do – heart – healthier – heroes – make

Dr. Magdy Yacoub is a famous doctor. He shows us that one person can (1)..... a big difference when they care about and love their work. He teaches us that true (2)..... are those who help people and make their communities stronger and (3)..... . His love for helping children with (4)..... problems changed many lives.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



How to write a biography of a famous Egyptian person

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية عن مصري مشهور.

Dr. Magdi Yacoub

- 1 **Who is Dr. Magdi Yacoub?**
من هو الدكتور مجدي يعقوب؟
e.g. Dr. Magdi Yacoub is a famous heart doctor from Egypt.
- 2 **Where was he born?**
أين ولد؟
e.g. He was born in Egypt.
- 3 **Why did he study medicine?**
لماذا درس الطب؟
e.g. He studied medicine to help sick people.
- 4 **What did he become famous for?**
بم أصبح مشهوراً؟
e.g. He became one of the best heart surgeons in the world.
- 5 **How did he help patients?**
كيف ساعد المرضى؟
e.g. He helped many patients live better and longer lives.
- 6 **What else did he do for doctors?**
ماذا فعل أيضاً للأطباء؟
e.g. He opened hospitals and trained young doctors.
- 7 **How did he make Egypt proud?**
كيف جعل مصر فخورة؟
e.g. He won many awards in medicine around the world.

استخدم الأفكار السابقة لكتابة فقرة:

راجع علامات
الترقيم
في مقدمة
الكتاب.

قم بقراءة هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Dr. Magdi Yacoub"

Dr. Magdi Yacoub is a famous Egyptian heart doctor. He was born in Egypt and studied medicine to help sick people. He became one of the best heart surgeons in the world. Dr. Yacoub helped many patients live longer and healthier lives. He also opened hospitals and trained young doctors. Many people respect him for his kind heart and hard work. In conclusion, Dr. Magdi Yacoub is a great man who made Egypt proud.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Gamal moved his head up and down to show agreement. This means he
a) selected b) signed c) nodded d) added
2. How can I Cairo railway station?
a) arrive b) reach c) get d) go

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

honesty – patients – biography – dedication – transplants

Dr. Mohamed Ghoneim is a great Egyptian doctor. He helped many (1)..... with kidney diseases. His (2)..... to science made him famous around the world. He built a special center for kidney (3)..... . People respect him for his (4)..... and kindness. He once said, "Never give up on your dream." From that day on, many children saw him as a true role model.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Where (did) your father last evening?
2. They built a sandcastle at the beach and (play) in the waves.
3. Alaa and Amir didn't (enjoying) their time at the cinema yesterday.
4. The weather (be) very cold and windy during our camping trip last month.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Omar admires his grandfather.

Omar : My hero is my grandfather.

Nour : (1).....?

Omar : Because he helped people a lot.

Nour : That's nice. (2).....?

Omar : A hero means someone who cares and helps others.

Nour : Does he inspire you?

Omar : (3)..... I want to be kind like him.

Nour : (4).....

لا حظ: 
أكمل المحادثة بجملة
كاملة.

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

Reading

1 Read the short biography and answer the questions.

Malak is a young swimmer from Egypt. She started swimming when she was five. At 17, she went to the Olympics. People admire her because she works hard and never gives up. She inspires young girls to follow their dreams. Malak trains every day and has won many national and international medals. She dreams of becoming a world champion and hopes to open a swimming school in Egypt to help children learn how to swim. Her family and coaches support her journey, and she says believing in yourself is the first step to success.

- When did Malak start swimming?
- Why do people admire her?
- Who does she inspire?

B

Vocabulary

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Patients feel better after taking the regularly.
a) knowledge b) accidents c) treatment d) researches
- My teacher is my because she works hard and always encourages her students.
a) role model b) achievement c) thinker d) medal
- We all Malak for working hard and never giving up on her goals.
a) admire b) determine c) agree d) appear
- Winning the gold medal was a big for our team.
a) example b) achievement c) heart d) community

C

Language

3 Complete the sentences using the past simple.

- The soldiers (fight) bravely to protect their country in 1973.
- She (be) a great leader in the project last year.
- They (have) a big dream.
- We (learn) about role models in class last week.

D

Writing

4 Write a biography (80-100) words about someone you admire. Use past simple and vocabulary from this unit.

.....

.....

A) Vocabulary

admirable (adj)	جدير بالإعجاب
admiration (n)	إعجاب
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي
atomic radiation (n)	الإشعاع الذري
attack (ed) (n/v)	هجوم/يهاجم
award (n)	جائزة
brave (adj)	شجاع
crystal (adj)	كريستالي
curiosity (n)	فضول
dedication (n)	تفاني
determined (adj)	مُحْصَم/عازم
encourage (v) (d)	يشجّع
geographer (n)	عالم جغرافيا
grin (ned) (v)	يتسّم ابتسامة عريضة
hero (n)	بطل
hopeful (adj)	مُفْصَم بالأمل
inspire (v) (d)	يُلْهِم/يُحْفِز
inspiring (adj)	مُلهِم
kidney (n)	كلية
location (n)	موقع (جغرافي)
motivate (d) (v)	يُحْفِز
motivated (adj)	متحفّز/لديه دافع
overcome (v)	يتغلب على
personality (n)	شخصية
politics (n)	السياسة
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
role (n)	دور
role model (n)	قدوة
soldier (n)	جندي
strength (n)	قوة
treatment (n)	علاج

B) Language

1. Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative: الإثبات

التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل

e.g. Omar **bought** a new bike yesterday.

Negative: النفي

الفاعل + didn't + inf. ...

e.g. Omar **didn't** buy a new bike yesterday.

Questions: الأسئلة

Did + الفاعل + inf. ...?

e.g. Did Omar buy a new bike yesterday?

Wh-word + did + الفاعل + inf. ...?

e.g. When did Omar buy a new bike?

2. Verb to "be" in the past

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative: الإثبات

الفاعل + was/were + ...

e.g. Alaa **was** at the park last Monday.

The children **were** happy at the party.

Negative: النفي

الفاعل + wasn't/weren't + ...

e.g. Alaa **wasn't** at the park last Monday.

The children **weren't** happy at the party.

Questions: الأسئلة

Was/Were + الفاعل + ...?

e.g. **Was** Alaa at the park last Monday?

Were the children happy at the party?

C) Speaking

Talking about a personal role model

1. What do you think makes someone a hero?

• A hero is someone who helps others and works to make the world better.

2. Do you have an inspiring person in your life?

• Yes, I admire Dr. Samira Moussa.

She wanted to use science to help people.

3. What qualities do you think a role model should have?

• A role model should be kind, determined, helpful, and honest.

4. Who is your role model? Why?

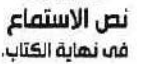
• My role model is Dr. Ahmed Zewail because he made great discoveries.

5. How does your role model inspire you?

• My role model inspires me to study hard and never give up.

3

Listening



142 | Unit 3

4

W

A

2. The underlined word “admire” most likely means _____.

B

- [illegible]

- [illegible]

- [illegible]

- [illegible]

C

5

2. Sarah bring her new doll to school yesterday?

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hadi (catch) a big fish yesterday.
2. Sarah (not/come) to my last birthday party.
3. (do) you remember to feed the goldfish before going to bed yesterday?
4. The children (build) a huge sandcastle at the beach during their last vacation.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sara admires Mohamed Salah.

Sara : I admire Mohamed Salah.

Youssef : Do you mean the football player?

Sara : Yes, I (1)..... He works hard and helps people, too.

Youssef : (2)..... do you think makes someone a hero?

Sara : A hero never gives up and helps others.

Youssef : What (3)..... does Salah have?

Sara : He is strong, kind, and determined. Do you like him?

Youssef : Yes. I (4)..... him, too!



Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A biography of your role model"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 1

LESSON 1

1 Complete the sentences with words from the list below:

smartboard – sad – respect – kinesthetic – goal – cheerful – achievement

1. My main for this year is to learn to search online.
2. The students used the to share their ideas in the classroom.
3. She is always, even when things are difficult.
4. Many people prefer learning, where they learn by doing activities.
5. It's important to show for different cultures.
6. Winning the **championship**⁽¹⁾ was a huge⁽²⁾ for the team.
7. She looked when she heard the bad news.

بطولة (1)

ضخم (2)

2 (A) Listen to the audio text and answer the following questions:

1. Why is the Cairo Monorail considered an important transportation project in Egypt?
.....
2. In what ways will the Monorail improve the daily life of Egyptian citizens?
.....
3. What are the main differences between the Monorail and other types of public transportation in Cairo?
Mention two.
.....



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

(B) Listen again and put T (True) or F (False):

4. The Monorail will only connect downtown Cairo with Giza. ()
5. The Cairo Monorail is a traditional railway system that runs underground. ()
6. One of the aims of the project is to encourage people to use public transportation instead of private cars. ()

3 Listen and answer the questions below:

1. What are some digital devices used in modern learning?
.....
2. What does online learning need students to be?
.....
3. How can technology help to improve communications?
.....
4. In what way does digital learning improve communication skills?
.....
5. Why are people still important in education, even with technology?
.....

4 Writing an email:

Imagine you are having some trouble understanding a topic in your class. Write an email to your teacher of (80-100) words, explaining your difficulty and asking for help. Your email should include:

To write an email:

- Add a clear subject line.
- Mention the topic you find it difficult.
- Ask for suggestions or resources that might help.
- Add a polite greeting.
- Explain why you are finding it difficult.
- Add a polite closing.



LESSON

2

Word Classification

1 Classify the following words into the correct categories.

digital – experiment – passionate – screen – physical – determined – website – auditory – hero – ebook – visual – courageous

Technology	Learning Styles	Personal Qualities
digital	kinesthetic	caring

2 Complete the sentences with words from the list below:

collaborate – monitor – organize – progress – confident – challenge – peaceful

1. Students need to their time before exams.
2. The teacher will our performance during the test.
3. Working together helps us better.
4. She feels about her presentation skills.
5. Learning a new language is always a
6. We should watch our in each subject.
7. The library provides a place to study.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Technology has changed the way students learn. With devices like tablets and laptops, they can access information easily and learn at their own speed. Different students learn in different ways - some by seeing, some by listening, and others by doing activities. Modern classrooms now have smartboards and video calls which help students learn better and connect with people around the world.

But there are also problems. Students need to learn how to use technology wisely and stay focused without getting distracted. Still, technology makes learning more interesting and helps students get ready for the future. A good mix of old and new learning methods is important.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Students use digital devices like tablets and laptops to
 - a) play games in class
 - b) take breaks from learning
 - c) access information and communicate
 - d) avoid doing homework
2. One challenge of digital learning is that students must
 - a) stop using the internet completely
 - b) develop digital literacy and stay focused
 - c) ignore their classmates
 - d) study only with books

B) Answer the following questions:

- 3. Mention some digital devices students use to learn today.**

#####

- 4.** Name three types of learning styles mentioned in the text.

[illegible]

- ### 5. How do modern classrooms use technology to improve learning?

[illegible]

4 Complete the dialog between Ahmed and Mariam.

Ahmed: Hi Mariam! What are you doing? You look very focused.

Mariam: Hi Ahmed! I'm actually trying to organize my notes for the history project. It's a bit of a challenge.

Ahmed: (1).....?

Mariam: Oh, thank you! I'm using a new app that helps create mind maps.

Ahmed: That sounds really helpful. I usually just write everything down.

Mariam: (2).....

Ahmed: Wow, that's smart! I often find it hard to remember all the details.

Mariam: Exactly! It really helps to see the connections visually.

5 Read and circle the correct word:

1. My brother (is always watching/ always watches) TV in the evening.
2. A fish (can/ can't) fly, but it (can/ can't) swim.
3. Yesterday, I (go/ went) to the library.
4. She (is writing/ writes) an email right now.
5. He is a very (quickly/ quick) learner.
6. The cat sat (on/ under) the mat.

6 Writing a Short Biography:

Choose someone you admire who shows great courage or determination.

In your notebook, write a short biography of (80-100) words. You can use the following ideas:

- Their names and what they are known for.
- Why you consider them a role model and how they inspire you.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Unit

4

SMART CHOICES

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main idea and at least two specific details in a text about your choices.
- Use context clues to understand vocabulary related to making smart choices.

Listening

- Identify the main idea in conversations about making difficult choices.
- Find specific details about options and advice in situations.

Speaking

- Talk about personal daily choices.
- Give and ask for advice using "should" and first conditional.

Language

- Identify and create first conditional sentences to talk about future possibilities.
- Use "should and shouldn't" for advice.

Writing

- Write a blog post about a personal problem.

LESSON 1 : Think Before You Choose

• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان؛ حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
• قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

A VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary	المفردات الرئيسية				
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	evaluate (d) (v)	يقيم/يقدر	option (n)	خيار/اختيار
choice (n)	اختيار	fair (adj)	عادل/منصف	left out (adj)	مُستبعد/مرفوض
careless (adj)	مهمل	fluent (adj)	طلايق/فصيح	result (n)	نتيجة
decision (n)	قرار	harmful (adj)	ضار/مؤذ	responsible (adj)	مسئول

Additional Vocabulary	المفردات الإضافية				
actions (n)	أفعال/تصرفات	close friend (n)	صديق مقرب	join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى
smart (adj)	ذكي	decide (d) (v)	يقرر	party (n)	حفلة
carefully (adv)	بحرص/بعناية	finish (ed) (v)	ينتهي/ينتهى	plan (ned) (v)	يخطط
classmate (n)	زميل دراسة	invite (d) (v)	يدعو	side (n)	جانب

Language Expressions & Prepositions	التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر				
act with care	يتصرف بحذر/بعناية	in the end	في النهاية	to his surprise	لدهشته
close to	مقرب/قريب من	in the future	في المستقبل	make a choice	يتخذ خياراً/يختار
excited about	فرح ب-/متحمس لـ	think of	يفكر في	make a decision	يتخذ قراراً

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة						
Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.		
understand	يفهم	understood	am/is/are	يكون	was/were	been	

Words and Opposites	الكلمات وعكسها						
Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح	positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب	responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول

Read and complete with a word from the list:

classmate – in – fair – with

- 1 It's to give students the same chances.
- 2 Sarah is my best at school.
- 3 Always act care when crossing the street.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

Language Notes

أدرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



ask to + inf. المصدر

يطلب أن

- A day before the party, two classmates **asked to join**.

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

decision	قرار	choosing what to do	(1) نتيجة
evaluate	يُقيم/يُقدر	to think carefully before deciding	
positive	إيجابي	a good or helpful result ⁽¹⁾	(2) ضار
negative	سلبي	bad or harmful ⁽²⁾	
responsible	مسئول	to act with care ⁽³⁾ and think of others	(3) اهتمام
careless	مهمل	not caring about your actions	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
behave (v)	يتصرف	act	يتصرف
choice (n)	اختيار	option	خيار
problem (n)	مشكلة	trouble	مأزق/ورطة
actions (n)	أفعال/تصرفات	behaviors	سلوكيات

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
harm (n/v)	ضرر/يضر	-ful		تحول لصفة		harmful (adj)	ضار/مؤذ

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
im-		تعطى العكس		polite (adj)	مؤدب	impolite (adj)	غير مؤدب

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

1 What was the last important decision you made?

2 What were your options?

3 What was the result?

Read the text:

SB page 60

Youssef was excited about his birthday and planned a small party after school. He invited eight close friends who had been **responsible**⁽¹⁾ in class and finished their homework. A day before the party, two classmates asked to join. They weren't very close to Youssef, and one had been careless in class. Youssef faced a difficult decision. He thought, and said, "If I let them come, the party may become too big and make others uncomfortable. And if I say no, the two may feel **left out**⁽²⁾." He carefully thought about the positive and negative sides of each **choice**⁽³⁾. In the end, Youssef made a responsible and polite decision.



(1) مسئول

(2) مستبعد

(3) اختيار

(4) يتصرف

He explained that the party was only for close friends who had **behaved**⁽⁴⁾ well, and he encouraged the boys to be more responsible in the future. To his surprise, they understood and respected his decision. One even promised to improve. The party was a success, and Youssef felt proud and said, "If everyone thinks well before taking a decision, they won't make mistakes."

Post-reading questions:

1 What decision did Youssef have to make?

2 What is the main idea of the text?

3 What would you do if you were in the same situation?

4 What problem did Youssef face?

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للقطعة ص 152 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
option	اختيار	positive	إيجابي
act	يتصرف	comfortable	مريح
end	ينتهي/ينتهى	polite	مؤدب

2 Comprehension strategies:

Youssef explained that the party was only for close friends who had behaved well, and he encouraged the boys to be more responsible in the future. To his surprise, they understood and respected his decision. One even promised to improve. The party was a success, and Youssef felt proud of making a positive and fair choice.

1. Why was Youssef proud of his choice? (استخراج معلومة من النص)

2. The underlined word "improve" is similar in meaning to (تخمين معنى كلمة)

- a) understand b) behave c) develop d) encourage

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Youssef faced a difficult decision.

☐

- واجه يوسف قراراً صعباً.

☐

- واجه يوسف فكرة صعبة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- لقد فكر بعناية في الجوانب الإيجابية والسلبية.

☐

He carefully thought about the positive and negative sides.

☐

He quickly thought about the positive and negative sides.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You should a choice between the red bike and the blue one.
a) make b) act c) behave d) invite
2. My sister is in three languages, which helps her travel easily.
a) excited b) fluent c) unfair d) impolite
3. Children should always politely when talking to their teachers.
a) evaluate b) join c) believe d) behave
4. The school is very close my house, so I walk there.
a) on b) in c) to d) with
5. You should be and give your children the same treatment المعاملة.
a) full b) unfair c) cruel d) fair
6. Mona feels because her friends don't play with her anymore.
a) left out b) responsible c) positive d) fluent
7. I never trust people. They don't care about other people.
a) responsible b) helpful c) careless d) possible
8. The teacher will your answers and give you feedback tomorrow.
a) join b) evaluate c) plan d) think
9. What are the positive sides of mass media? "....." is the opposite in meaning to 'positive'.
a) Expensive b) Negative c) Cheap d) Impossible
10. Eating too much fast food can be for your body.
a) harmful b) responsible c) fair d) fluent
11. What was the last important decision you?
a) appeared b) thought c) made d) did

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

responsible – make – act – planned – classmates

Youssef was very excited about his birthday party. He (1)..... to invite eight close friends. He loves them because they are (2)..... . Just one day before the party, two (3)..... asked Youssef to join the party. They weren't close to Youssef, and one didn't behave well in class. Youssef had to (4)..... a difficult choice. He wanted to be fair to everyone.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My new bed is big and; I like it!
a) uncomfortable b) tired c) fluent d) comfortable
2. Every day we make that affect our future in small or big ways.
a) choices b) actions c) parties d) activities
3. My mom went shopping and asked me to act care with my little brother.
a) in b) for c) at d) with
4. Let's our holiday trip before summer starts.
a) behave b) invite c) plan d) plane
5. A/An person can understand things quickly and clearly.
a) smart b) comfortable c) careless d) rich
6. Always be by saying "please" and "thank you."
a) comfortable b) polite c) active d) negative
7. My children are so excited going to the park tomorrow!
a) by b) for c) with d) about
8. A/An student always does their homework and helps others.
a) responsible b) impolite c) uncomfortable d) happy
9. The of the test was great. I got the full mark.
a) cause b) result c) option d) problem
10. A good citizen must be and cooperative متعاون.
a) responsible b) careless c) possible d) impossible
11. When will you the football team for practice this season?
a) behave b) join c) plan d) delete

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

left out – join – at – in – fair

Omar and I are close friends. One day, we wanted to (1) the school football team. The coach wanted only one of us. I knew he was better at football than I was, so I didn't try to get his place. The coach (2) me, but I knew he had made the (3) choice. I'm sure that (4) the future, I'll have more chances to be better and join the team.

حلل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1. Talking about a problem your friend and you once faced

التحدث عن أزمة واجهتها أنت وصديقك ذات مرة

← online

Have you ever had a problem? هل واجهت مشكلة من قبل؟

Yes, I once had a problem with my friend. نعم، واجهت مشكلة أنا وصديقتي.

What was it? ما هي هذه المشكلة؟

We had to choose between joining the science team or the art team. كان علينا أن نختار بين الانضمام إلى فريق العلوم أو فريق الفنون.

Who helped you solve it? من ساعدك في حلها؟

Our teacher helped us by asking what we liked more. معلمتنا بسؤالنا عما نحب أكثر.

What lesson did you learn from it? ما الدرس الذي تعلمته منها؟

I learned that thinking calmly and talking together helps solve problems. علمت أن التفكير بهدوء والتحدث معاً يساعد في حل المشكلات.

Was it hard to make a choice? Why? هل كان من الصعب اتخاذ القرار؟ لماذا؟

Yes, it was very hard because both options were fun. نعم، كان من الصعب جداً لأن كلا الخيارين كان ممتعاً.

What did you finally choose? Why? ما الذي قررتم اختياره في النهاية؟ لماذا؟

We chose the science team because we wanted to learn new things. اخترنا فريق العلوم لأننا أردنا تعلم أشياء جديدة.

2. Asking and answering about "Daily choices" instructions

طرح الأسئلة والإجابة حول "الاختيارات اليومية"

← online

Do you think you often make smart choices? هل تعتقد أنك غالباً ما تتخذ قرارات ذكية؟

Yes, I try to make smart choices by thinking before I act. نعم، أحاول اتخاذ قرارات ذكية من خلال التفكير قبل أن أتصرف.

What do you usually have to choose? بماذا تحتاج عادةً إلى أن تختار؟

I usually have to choose what to eat, when to study, and how to spend my free time. عادةً ما أحتاج إلى اختيار ما سأكله، ومتى أدرس، وكيف أقضي وقت فراغي.

 Do you usually choose your study time?

هل تختار عادةً وقت المذاكرة؟

Yes, I like to choose a quiet time in the evening to study.

 نعم، أحب اختيار وقت هادئ في المساء للمذاكرة.

 How can I make smart decisions?

كيف يمكنني اتخاذ قرارات ذكية؟

You can make smart decisions by staying calm.

 يمكنك اتخاذ قرارات ذكية من خلال البقاء هادئًا.

 Who helps you when you have to choose something important?

من يساعدك عندما تحتاج إلى اتخاذ قرار مهم؟

My parents usually help me when I have a big choice to make.

 والداي يساعدانني عادةً عندما أحتاج إلى اتخاذ قرار كبير.

 Why is it important to make good choices every day?

لماذا من المهم أن نتخذ قرارات جيدة كل يوم؟

Because good choices help us have a better life.

 لأن القرارات الجيدة تساعدنا على الحصول على حياة أفضل.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1. Complete the following dialog:

► Omar had a problem to choose between the science team and the art team.

Mariam : Did you have a problem before?

Omar : Yes, I (1)..... I once had a problem with my friend.

Mariam : (2)..... was it?

Omar : We had to choose between the science team and the art team.

Mariam : (3)..... helped you solve it?

Omar : Our teacher helped us by asking what we liked more.

Mariam : What did you choose in the end?

Omar : We (4)..... the science team because we love learning new things.

2. Complete the following dialog:

► Nour and Ammar are discussing smart choices.

Nour : Do you think you often make smart choices?

Ammar : Yes, I (1)..... I try to think before I choose.

Nour : (2)..... do you usually have to choose every day?

Ammar : I usually choose what to eat, when to play, and when to study.

Nour : What (3)..... you eat for lunch today?

Ammar : I chose a healthy sandwich and fruit.

Nour : That sounds smart!

Ammar : (4)..... I feel better when I eat healthy food.

How to write about an important decision you made

كيفية الكتابة عن قرار هام قمت باتخاذ

1 What was the important decision you had to make?
ماذا كان القرار الذي اضطررت لاتخاذ؟
e.g. One day, I had to choose between الاختيار الأول and الاختيار الثاني.

2 Why was it difficult to choose?
لماذا كان من الصعب الاختيار؟
e.g. It was hard because I wanted to do both.

3 Who helped you make the decision?
من ساعدك على اتخاذ القرار؟
e.g. I asked (شخص) to help me decide.

An important decision I made

4 What did you finally decide to do?
ماذا قررت في النهاية؟
e.g. In the end, I chose to (القرار).

5 How did you feel after making that choice?
بم شعرت بعد اتخاذ القرار؟
e.g. I felt (الشعور) after making that choice.

اقرأ الأسئلة السابقة بإجاباتها واستخدمها لتكوين فقرة:

راجع علامات التقييم في مقدمة الكتاب

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نموذج مجاب عنه:

"An important decision"

One important decision I made was to study for my science test instead of watching TV. At first, I really wanted to watch my favorite cartoon, but I remembered that my test was the next day. I asked myself what the smart choice was. I chose to study because I wanted to do well. My parents were proud of me, and I felt happy when I got a good mark. Making good choices helps me become better every day.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Children are always excited their birthdays.

- a) of b) about c) for d) in

2. Your good and responsible choices help you have a better life.

- a) actions b) parties c) birthday d) dream

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

In – to – choices – make – polite

I was part of a club and had to (1)..... a decision about helping new members. I wanted to choose someone (2)..... and helpful. I had a few (3)....., so I took my time. The person I chose worked hard and made the club better. (4)..... the end, everyone was happy, and the new members felt welcome and safe.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Youssef is telling Salma about a hard choice she had.

Youssef : Did you ever face a hard choice with your friend?

Salma : Yes, I (1)..... . We had to decide between going to the park or visiting my grandma.

Youssef : That's a difficult decision. (2)..... helped you?

Salma : My mom helped us.

Youssef : (3)..... did you do?

Salma : We visited grandma, and it made her very happy.

Youssef : Was it the right choice?

Salma : Yes, it (4)..... . We felt proud of our decision.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A difficult choice you had"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

benefit (n)	فائدة	effect (n)	تأثير	skip (ped) (v)	يتخطى/يتفرب
coach (n)	مدرب	grade (n)	درجة/صف دراسي	waste (d) (v)	يضيع/يهدر
consequence (n)	نتيجة/عاقبة	goal (n)	هدف		
decision (n)	قرار	injury (n)	إصابة		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

careless (adj)	مهمل	instructions (n)	تعليمات	study time (n)	وقت المذاكرة
cross (ed) (v)	يعبر	sick (adj)	مريض	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب/يدرب

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة	lead to	يقود الى	study for	يذاكر من أجل
benefit your grades	يحسن درجاتك	pass my test	اجتاز اختباري	with a high score	بدرجة عالية
cause problems	يسبب مشاكل	reach our goals	نصل لأهدافنا		
consider all your options	فكر في جميع خياراتك	stay home	يبقى في البيت		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
pass	ينجح في	fail	يفشل/يرسب في	forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر

Read and complete with a word from the list:

library – for – at – forgot – grade

- I worked hard and got a good in my math test.
- She is studying the science test after lunch.
- Our has many storybooks and picture books.
- My sister to feed the cat this morning.

LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

fully (adv)	بالكامل/تماماً/كلياً	interview (n)	مقابلة/حوار	recover (ed) (v)	يُشفى/يتعافى
impact (n) (on)	تأثير (على)	interviewer (n)	مُحاور	risk (n)	خطر
influence (d) (n/v) (on)	تأثير/يؤثر (على)	problem-solving (adj)	حل المشكلات	tough (adj)	قاسٍ/صعب
injure (d) (v)	يصيب/يؤذي	race (n)	سباق	wise (adj)	حكيم

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

cause (n)	سبب	newspaper article (n)	مقال صحفي	rule (n)	قاعدة
gold medal (n)	ميدالية ذهبية	personal (adj)	شخصي	sensible (adj)	عقل
lazy (adj)	كسول	rest (ed) (v)	يستريح/يرتاح	training (n)	تدريب

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

choose between	يختار بين	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	miss a race	يفوت سباقاً
responsible for	مسئول عن	get rest	يأخذ قسطاً من الراحة	run the race	يشارك في السباق
take part in	يشارك في	make up your mind	اتخذ قرارك	take a risk	يأخذ مخاطرة/يخطر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
have to	يُضطر أن	had to	choose	يختار	chose
		had to		chose	chosen

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
possible	ممکن	impossible	مستحيل	worse	أسوأ	better	أفضل

Read and complete with a word from the list:

in – at – risk – training

- Ahmed took a when he climbed the tall tree.
- Mariam loves to take part art competitions every year.
- Omar goes to football every Friday.

Word-building Skills

1. A **synonym** is a word with the same meaning. المرادف هو كلمة لها نفس المعنى.

Word	Synonym	Word	Synonym
big كبير	large ضخم	consequence نتيجة	result نتيجة
decision قرار	choice اختيار		

2. An **antonym** is a word with the opposite meaning. العكس هو كلمة لها معنى مخالف.

Word	Antonym	Word	Antonym
hot حار	cold بارد	wise حكيم	foolish أحمق
positive إيجابي	negative سلبي	responsible مسئول	irresponsible غير مسئول

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

goal هدف	something you want to achieve
benefit فائدة	to be useful to someone
consequence عاقبة	the result or effect of an action

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
grade (n)	درجة/صف دراسي	mark	درجة
skip (ped) (v)	يتخطى/يتغيب	miss	يتغيب/يقوت
fully (adv)	بالكامل/تماماً/كلياً	completely	تماماً

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
care (v/n)	يهتم/رعاية	-less		تعطى عكس المعنى		careless (adj)	مهمل

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
im-		تعطى عكس المعنى		possible (adj)	ممكن	impossible (adj)	مستحيل

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What does it mean to make a smart choice?
- 2 Why do people sometimes make bad choices?
- 3 Who do you ask for advice when making a decision?

1. Listen to the text.

Every day, we make many **decisions**⁽¹⁾. Some are small, like choosing clothes.

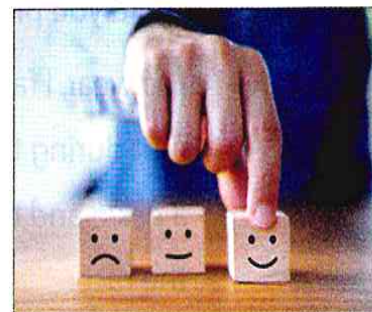
Others are big, and can affect our future. Making smart **choices**⁽²⁾ is important because all choices have **consequences**⁽³⁾.

A smart choice can lead to good results, while a poor choice might cause problems. To make smart choices, consider all your options. Then, you should **think**⁽⁴⁾ about the possible consequences of each option. Also, try to focus on what is most important for your future. For example, if you choose to finish your homework before playing, it will benefit your grades. Remember, smart choices help us reach our goals and live happier lives.



Lesson 2

SB page 62



- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| (1) قرارات | (2) اختيارات |
| (3) عواقب | (4) يفكر |

2. Listen to Ammar's story about his decision.

Yesterday, I had to make a smart choice.

My friends wanted to go to the park, but I had a test today. I really wanted to go, but I remembered my teacher's advice, "Think about tomorrow, not just today". I stayed home and studied. Today, I passed my test with a **high score**⁽¹⁾! I felt proud because I made the right decision. Smart choices are not always easy, but they help us reach our **goals**⁽²⁾. Now, my friends are proud of me too.

SB page 62

Post-listening questions:

- 1 What did Ammar's friends want to do?
 - a) Go to school.
 - b) Go to the park.
 - c) Go to the library.
 - d) Study at home.
- 2 Why did Ammar stay home?
 - a) He was sick.
 - b) His parents told him to stay.
 - c) He wanted to study for a test.
 - d) He didn't like the park.
- 3 What happened after Ammar had made a smart choice?
 - a) He failed the test.
 - b) He forgot about the test.
 - c) He didn't talk to his friends.
 - d) He passed the test and felt proud.

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Have you ever had a difficult problem?
- 2 How do you feel when you have a problem?
- 3 Who do you always ask for help?

Lesson 3

SB page 64

A Wise Decision

Interviewer Today we are talking to Adam, a young athlete⁽¹⁾, about a wise⁽²⁾ decision he had to make. Adam, could you please tell us about it?

Adam Last year, I faced a problem before a big race. I injured my foot during training. I had to choose between taking a risk⁽³⁾ and taking part in a race, or resting and missing the race.

Interviewer That's tough⁽⁴⁾. What helped you make up your mind?

Adam I used problem-solving⁽⁵⁾ skills. I talked to my coach, who has a big influence⁽⁶⁾ on me. We discussed the possible consequences⁽⁷⁾.

If I run, it will make the injury⁽⁸⁾ worse. If I rest, I will recover⁽⁹⁾ fully for the next race.

Interviewer What did you decide?

Adam I decided not to run. It was a wise choice. The impact was positive because I recovered, and I won a gold medal in the next race.

Interviewer What advice can you give to young athletes?

Adam You should think carefully and ask for advice before taking a risk. If you make a wise decision, you will have a better future in sports.



- | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|------------|
| (1) رياضى | (2) حكيم | (3) مخاطرة |
| (4) صعب | (5) حل المشكلات | (6) تأثير |
| (7) عواقب | (8) إصابة | (9) يتعافى |

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What is the name of the athlete?
- 2 What is the main idea of the text?
- 3 Why did the athlete choose not to run the race?
- 4 This text is

a) a personal letter

b) a newspaper article

c) an interview

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning / Synonym – Opposite / Antonym

ارجع للقطعة الخاصة ص 163-164 وحاول أن تستخرج من القطعة كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
result	نتيجة	negative	سلبي
mark	درجة	easy	سهل
impact	تأثير	unimportant	غير هام

2 Comprehension strategies:

Last year, I faced a problem before a big race. I injured my foot during training. I had to choose between taking a risk and taking part in a race or resting and missing the race. I used problem-solving skills. I talked to my coach, who has a big influence on me. We discussed the possible consequences. If I run, it will make the injury worse. If I rest, I will recover fully for the next race.

1. Do you think the writer made the right choice? Why/Why not?

(مهارة التفكير النقدي)

.....

2. The underlined word "problem" is similar in meaning to ".....".

(تخمين معنى كلمة)

a) solution

b) trouble

c) impact

d) answer

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Last year, I faced a problem before a big race.

☐ - في العام الماضي، واجهت مشكلة قبل سباق كبير.

☐ - في العام الماضي، واجهت موقفًا قبل سباق كبير.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- إذا استرحت، فسأستعافى بشكل كامل للسباق التالي.

☐ If I rest, I will recover fully for the next race.

☐ If I take a rest, I will win the next race.

LESSON

2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We need to hard if we want to join the football team.
a) cross b) train c) skip d) waste
2. I need to study my English quiz tonight.
a) for b) on c) with d) at
3. The teacher was angry because I got a bad in the test.
a) trip b) benefit c) grade d) sign
4. Tamer forgot the and made a mistake in the game.
a) benefit b) health c) injury d) instructions
5. It's not good to your time on the phone.
a) cross b) waste c) paste d) train
6. Did you expect the of this bad decision?
a) idea b) benefits c) consequences d) reasons
7. I studied all night because I wanted to the test.
a) pass b) cross c) fail d) succeed
8. That football chose me to join the school team.
a) sugar b) effect c) cause d) coach
9. I never breakfast because it's the most important meal.
a) train b) skip c) wait d) cross
10. Basmala plans her before watching TV.
a) waste time b) consequence c) study time d) trip
11. Hadeer took photos during the family to Luxor.
a) trap b) consequence c) benefit d) trip

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

teacher – study – trip – effect – grade

Last week, I made a smart decision. I decided to study hard for my science test. I planned my (1) time well and didn't waste my energy on games. When I got the result, I was so happy with my high (2) My (3) told me that planning your study time has a good (4) on your life.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My favorite was about a young girl who built her own robot.
a) rule b) race c) article d) medal
2. You should take your medicine and get some rest to after this operation.
a) recover b) discover c) cure d) prove
3. Who do you for advice when making a decision?
a) look b) ask c) think d) make
4. Randa her arm, but she could finish the painting for the school show.
a) covered b) injured c) recovered d) rested
5. We need to choose staying home or going to the zoo.
a) for b) with c) under d) between
6. The doctor said she should for a week to feel better.
a) injure b) influence c) rest d) cover
7. Fatma will part in three games today.
a) take b) make c) run d) walk
8. Climbing that mountain alone is a/an you shouldn't take.
a) influence b) risk c) task d) training
9. Hamza won the gold medal after winning the running
a) race b) impact c) interview d) influence
10. Don't a risk and complete the match when you're injured.
a) think b) give c) take d) look
11. The of practicing this sport is great; I became fitter than before.
a) reason b) impact c) cause d) contact
12. Do you think you often important choices in life?
a) make b) do c) search d) invent

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

taking – getting – training – skills – choice

Adam is a young athlete. He had a big challenge last year. He injured his foot when he was (1).....
He had to choose between (2)..... part in the next event or rest and get better? It was a difficult (3).....
but Adam used problem-solving (4)..... and talked to his coach, who had a big impact on him.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

1 The first conditional

تذكر المضارع البسيط:

Remember the present simple:

Affirmative الإثبات

He/She/It + **inf.** المصدر + (s/es/ies) ...

e.g. Sally **watches** TV at night.

I/You/They/We + **inf.** المصدر ...

e.g. We **play** football on Fridays.

Negative النفي

He/She/It + **doesn't** + **inf.** المصدر ...

e.g. Sally **doesn't** watch TV at night.

I/You/They/We + **don't** + **inf.** المصدر ...

e.g. We **don't** play football on Fridays.

Usage

الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about the probable result of an action.

- نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن نتيجة محتملة لفعل ما.

e.g. If you **study** hard, you **will** succeed.

• When we **recycle** old things, the world **will be** cleaner.

Form

التكوين

If/When + subject (الفاعل) + **present simple** مضارع بسيط, subject (الفاعل) + **will/won't** + **inf.**

e.g. • If she **comes** early, she **will** watch the film. • When Sally **helps** her parents, they **will be** proud of her.

• If Anas **doesn't** get up early, he **won't** catch the train.

Subject (الفاعل) + **will/won't** + **inf.** + **if/when** + subject (الفاعل) + **present simple** مضارع بسيط

e.g. • You **will** pass the test **if** you **study** hard.

• They **won't** play outside when it **rains**.

Question

السؤال

Will + subject (الفاعل) + **inf.** + **if/when** + subject (الفاعل) + **present simple** مضارع بسيط

e.g. • Will our team **win** the game **if** they **play** well?

Q. word (أداة استفهام) + **will** + subject (الفاعل) + **inf.** + **if/when** + subject (الفاعل) + **present simple** مضارع بسيط

e.g. • What will you **buy** **if** you **have** a lot of money?

عند إعطاء شخص نصيحة، تتبع التالي:

الإثبات Affirmative

... المصدر + **should + inf.** + الفاعل

- e.g. • You **should** help your parents.
• You **should** study hard.

Form
التكوين

النفى Negative

... المصدر + **shouldn't + inf.** + الفاعل

- e.g. • You **shouldn't** waste your time.
• Mona **shouldn't** play too much video games.

السؤال بمعنى هل Yes/ No question

...? المصدر + **inf.** + الفاعل + **Should**

- e.g. A: **Should** Mazin **study** hard? B: Yes, he should.

Question
السؤال

السؤال بأداة استفهام Wh- question

...? المصدر + **inf.** + الفاعل + **should** + أداة الاستفهام

- e.g. What **should** I **do** now?



Got it?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 If he (run) fast, he'll win the race.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (runs) لأن الفاعل مفرد.

- 2 You (should) eat unhealthy food.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (shouldn't) لأنه لا يجب أن نأكل طعامًا غير صحي.

- 3 If you don't study hard, you (wouldn't) pass your exam.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (won't) لأنها الحالة الشرطية الأولى.

- 4 You shouldn't (to sleep) late.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (sleep) لأن (should) يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When we eat lunch, we to the park to play football with our cousins.
a) will go b) went c) goes d) going
2. We help clean our school.
a) shouldn't b) should c) need d) mustn't
3. If Omar studies hard for his test, he a high grade this time.
a) get b) will get c) got d) is getting
4. You play video games all night and forget your homework.
a) can b) should c) doesn't d) shouldn't
5. If my sister forgets her books again, the teacher very angry.
a) be b) has c) will be d) are
6. You shout at your friends even when you're angry.
a) should b) didn't c) shouldn't d) will
7. If I enough money, I'll buy that smart watch.
a) will have b) would c) have d) had have
8. We be careful when we cross the street.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) should d) has to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you (helps) me, we'll finish faster.
2. Children (shouldn't) sleep early to feel fresh in the morning.
3. I will take a photo if I (saw) stars in the sky.
4. When should we (visited) Aunt Fatma next?
5. You should (eating) fresh fruits every day to stay healthy.
6. If we (not/leave) now, we will miss the school bus.
7. What (I/should) do if I feel sick?
8. If it (be) sunny tomorrow, we will have a picnic.
9. You should (to eat) healthy food.
10. When my mom (finish) work, we will go shopping.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. If I don't sleep early, I very tired at school in the morning.
 a) was b) would be c) were d) will be
2. Why help the new student in our class?
 a) should we b) have we c) we should d) we shouldn't
3. If the weather is nice, we a picnic at the beach tomorrow.
 a) would have b) had c) will have d) has
4. You take your umbrella because it is going to rain.
 a) can't b) should c) might d) didn't
5. When my father comes home, we dinner together and talk.
 a) will have b) having c) had d) has
6. We leave trash on the beach after our picnic.
 a) should b) might c) shouldn't d) must
7. A: Should I wear a jacket if it's cold outside? B:
 a) No, you shouldn't b) Yes, you should c) No, they don't d) Yes, you can
8. come with me if I finish my project today?
 a) Will you b) You will c) Are you d) You are

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. If my brother (not/do) his homework, he won't play.
2. Will you come if we (invited) you to our show?
3. What will you do if your pen (break)?
4. If Omar (will study) well, he will pass the exam.
5. When we (will arrive) at the zoo, we'll see the lions first.
6. I (save/should) money for something important.
7. You (shouldn't say) sorry if you hurt someone.
8. We should (to wait) for the green light to cross.
9. Children (should) watch TV all day long.
10. We (shout) at our friends when we're angry.

Skills Bank Writing

How to write about a wise decision you made

كيفية الكتابة عن قرار حكيم قمت باتخاذ



حاول الإجابة عن الأسئلة السابقة ثم ابدأ بكتابة فقرتك:

راجع علامات
التقييم
في مقدمة
الكتاب.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نموذج مجاب عنه:

"My Wise Decision"

Last year, I made a wise decision that helped me a lot. I chose to study every day after school instead of playing video games for hours. At first, it was hard because I wanted to play with my friends. But I made a study schedule and followed it. My grades got better, and I felt proud of myself. I still had time to play, but after finishing my homework. Making that smart choice helped me learn more and feel happy. A wise decision can lead to great results.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did the friends do at the party?
 - a) Watched TV.
 - b) Played games and shared stories.
 - c) Went swimming.
 - d) Took a test.
2. What did one boy promise after the party?
 - a) To bring a gift.
 - b) To join a bigger party.
 - c) To behave better.
 - d) To stay home.
3. What did Youssef learn in the end?
 - a) Parties are boring.
 - b) Making good choices is easy.
 - c) Good choices can help everyone.
 - d) He should never choose.

B) Listen and complete:

4. After the party, Youssef felt very
5. One of the boys wasn't to the party.
6. Youssef learned that good choices can lead to things for everyone.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should work hard to our goals.
 - a) forget
 - b) arrive
 - c) reach
 - d) give up
2. If you have good skills, you will have a better life.
 - a) tough
 - b) impossible
 - c) problem-solving
 - d) negative

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

have – for – at – injury – consequences

One day, I skipped breakfast before the football practice. I got very tired. Then, I fell and had an (1)..... . The coach advised me to (2)..... my breakfast first. That day, I learned that my actions have big (3)..... . Next time, I'll ask (4)..... advice before doing something risky.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Adam was preparing for an important race. During one training session, he injured his foot and felt pain. He faced a hard decision: He had to choose between taking part in the race and resting. Adam talked to his coach and used problem-solving skills to think about what was best. He knew running might make his injury worse, but resting would mean missing the race. After careful thought, Adam decided to rest and **recover** fully. Later, he was able to run again and even won a gold medal. His wise choice showed that thinking carefully and asking for help can lead to success.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Adam talked to his to help him make a decision.
a) cousin b) dad c) coach d) teacher
- The word "**recover**" means to after being hurt.
a) give up b) harm c) injured d) get better

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- What injury did Adam have?
- Who helped Adam decide what to do?
- Why was Adam's decision wise?

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A:** Should I apologize to Ali if I hurt his feelings? **B:**
a) Yes, you should b) No, he should c) Yes, he will d) No, you can't
- If Sara helps her brother, he finish his homework faster.
a) will b) is c) was d) can be

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If you (will walk) in the rain, your shoes will get wet.
- Will you help me if I (be) in trouble?
- Should I (drawing) a picture for the poster?
- Fatma (should) skip breakfast before school.

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A smart decision you made"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- We (shouldn't) never eat bad food.
- If you feel sick, you (will) see a doctor.
- Do you think (should we) move to another city?

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

annual (adj)	سنوي	gentle (adj)	لطيف/رقيق	lead (n)	صدارة/قيادة/ريادة
create (d) (v)	ينشئ/يبدع/يبتكر	give up (v)	يتخلى عن/يستسلم	left out (adj)	مُستبعد
design (ed) (v)	يصمم	honest (adj)	صالح/أمين	machine	آلة/ماكينة
fair (n/adj)	معرض/عادل	ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل/يهمل	matter (ed) (v)	يهم/له قيمة
fix (ed) (v)	يصلح/يثبت	judgment (n)	حكم	water-saving (adj)	موفر للمياه

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

chance (n)	فرصة	meeting (n)	اجتماع	principle (n)	مبدأ
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	model (n)	نموذج	refuse (d) (v)	يرفض
flow (ed) (v)	تدفق/يتدفق	moral (adj/n)	أخلاقي/مغزى	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
friendship (n)	صداقة	organized (adj)	منظم	test (ed) (v)	يختبر
material (n)	مادة خام	pipe (n)	أنبوب/ماسورة		

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at first	في البداية	give attention to	يولي اهتماما لـ	take the lead	يحتل الصدارة
----------	------------	-------------------	-----------------	---------------	--------------

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
keep	يحتفظ/يستمر	kept	give	يعطي	gave
					given

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق	left out	مُستبعد	included	مُشتمل

Read and complete with a word from the list:

nervous – eco-friendly – kept – take

- We use bags at home to help protect the Earth.
- Sara ran fast to the lead and help her team win.
- Hedaya asking questions because she was very curious.

LESSON 5

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	save (d) (v)	يحفظ/يؤخر/ينقذ/يدخر
effective (adj)	فعال	receive (d) (v)	يستلم/يتلقى	stressed (adj)	مضغوط

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

candy (n)	حلوى	free time (n)	وقت فراغ	hobby (n)	هواية
-----------	------	---------------	----------	-----------	-------

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

come up	يقترِب/يظهر	end up	يَنْتَهِي بـ	nervous about	متوتر من/بشأن
---------	-------------	--------	--------------	---------------	---------------

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
leave	يترك/يفادر	left	spend	ينفق	spent

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
save	يحفظ/يؤخر	destroy	يدمر	receive	يستلم/يتلقى	send	يرسل

Read and complete with a word from the list:

save – receive – left – free – explore

Checkpoint

- 1 We will our test results next week.
- 2 I want to money to buy a new toy.
- 3 She the party early because she was sleepy.
- 4 My brother plays football in his time.

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

ignore	يتجاهل	not to listen or give attention ⁽¹⁾ to someone or something	(1) انتباه
honesty	الأمانة	being honest ⁽²⁾ and having strong moral principles ⁽³⁾	(2) أمين
give up	يقلم عن/يستسلم	to stop	(3) مبادئ
create	ينتج/يُنشئ	to make or invent something new	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
fix (v)	يصلح	repair/mend	يصلح
affect (v)	يؤثر على	influence	يؤثر

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
judge (v)	يحكم	-ment		تحويل إلى اسم		judgment (n)	حكم
stress (n)	ضغط	-ed		تحويل إلى صفة		stressed (adj)	مضغوط

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
dis-		تعطى عكس المعنى		agree (v)	يوافق	disagree (v)	لا يوافق

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hot weather affects the plants. The synonym of "affect" is ".....".

a) judge

b) give up

c) fix

d) influence

2 I felt stress before the big test. We add the suffix "....." to "stress" to form its adjective.

a) -ment

b) -ed

c) -er

d) -ly

3 To is not to listen or give attention to someone or something.

a) leave

b) agree

c) ignore

d) create

B Reading & Listening Skills

The Dream Team

Lesson 4

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think teamwork is important?
.....
- 2 What should you do when a member of your team feels left out?
.....

 Read the following text. How did children feel when the box clicked open?

SB page 66

CHAPTER ONE:

Never Give Up

In the cheerful village, there is an **annual**⁽¹⁾ invention **fair**⁽²⁾. The children were excited to create something useful. Sara, Omar, Zain, and two new friends, Lily and Karim, decided to build a **Water-Saving Machine**⁽³⁾.

In their first meeting, Omar wanted to finish quickly and take the **lead**⁽⁴⁾. Lily felt **left out**⁽⁵⁾ because her ideas were **ignored**⁽⁶⁾. Sara stopped and said gently, "We need to be **fair**⁽⁷⁾. Everyone's ideas matter. We are a team."

Karim added wisely, "We must have **honesty**⁽⁸⁾. Let's make **honest**⁽⁹⁾ choices and think carefully."

They all agreed to respect each other and give everyone a chance to speak. Even when their ideas failed at first, they kept trying. "Determination!" Sara reminded them. "We can't give up."

Together, they used their curiosity and good **judgment**⁽¹⁰⁾ to improve the machine step by step. Each member of the team had a role. Zain designed the model.

Omar fixed the pipes. Lily suggested **eco-friendly**⁽¹¹⁾ materials. Karim tested the water flow and Sara kept everyone organized. The more they worked together, the stronger their friendship became.



- | | | | |
|-----------|------------|----------------------|---------------|
| (1) سنوي | (2) معرض | (3) آلة توفير المياه | (4) الصدارة |
| (5) منبوذ | (6) يتجاهل | (7) عادل | (8) أمانة/صدق |
| (9) أمين | (10) حكم | (11) صديق للبيئة | |



THE DREAM TEAM EXERCISES

CHAPTER

1

1 Read and match the words to their meanings:

(A)	(B)
1. create	(a) not to listen or give attention to someone or something
2. ignore	(b) being honest and having strong moral principles
3. honesty	(c) to stop
4. give up	(d) to make or invent something new

2 Read and write True or False.

1. There was a science exam in the cheerful village. (.....)
2. The children decided to build a Water-Saving Machine. (.....)
3. Omar wanted to take the lead and finish quickly. (.....)
4. Karim reminded the group about giving up after the first idea failed. (.....)

3 Who said the following?

1. "We need to be fair. Everyone's ideas matter."

.....

2. "We must have honesty. Let's make honest choices and think carefully."

.....

4 Answer the following questions.

1. How did the children feel about creating something useful?

.....

2. What did Omar want in the first meeting?

.....

3. What did all children agree to do in the end?

.....

5 Critical thinking:

1. Why do you think we should have honesty?

.....

2. What might happen if other children didn't refuse what Omar did?

.....

 Read each situation below and write advice to help your friend:

1. Rodina is nervous about a big test coming up and doesn't know how to study effectively.

SB page 68

Advice: You **should** study a little every day and **shouldn't** wait until the last minute.

2. Roqia spends a lot of time playing video games and is worried it might be affecting her schoolwork.

Advice: You **should** do your homework first and **shouldn't** play for too many hours.

3. Your friend got birthday money and is not sure to spend or save.

Advice: You **should** save the money for something special and **shouldn't** spend it too quickly.

4. Your friend leaves school projects to the last minute and ends up stressed.

Advice: You **should** start early and **shouldn't** leave it until the last day.

5. Your friend doesn't know what to do in free time.

Advice: You **should** try new hobbies and **shouldn't** waste free time doing nothing.

Team-Project Roundtable

Write a poster about classroom rules. اكتب ملصقاً عن قواعد الفصل الدراسي.

SB page 70

Write what students should/shouldn't do during the lesson.

اكتب ما يجب وما لا يجب أن يفعله الطلاب أثناء الدرس.

Instructions التعليمات:

- Include at least 6 rules: 3 should and 3 shouldn't.
 - Use decision-making vocabulary.
 - Add drawings or pictures.
 - Make it colorful and easy to read.
- أدرج على الأقل ٦ قواعد: ٣ «يجب» و ٣ «لا يجب».
- استخدم مفردات اتخاذ القرار.
- أضف رسومات أو صوراً.
- اجعل الملصق ملوناً وسهل القراءة.

Presentation العرض التقديمي:

- Present your poster to the class or display it on your classroom wall.
- قدم ملصقك للصف أو علقه على حائط الفصل.



1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning / Synonym – Opposite / Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص 178 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
gentle لطيف/رقيق	at first في البداية
fix يصلح/يثبت	agree يوافق
refuse يرفض	fix يصلح/يثبت

2 Comprehension strategies:

Extract information:

استخرج المعلومات:

عليك قراءة السؤال جيداً والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيداً ثم العودة للنص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Salma, a 15-year-old girl from Egypt, loved photography. She often shared her photos on a website for young photographers. One day, she got a comment from Ashly, a girl of her age from Australia, who liked her photos. They started chatting and found out they had a lot in common. They both loved taking pictures of nature.

1. How old is Salma?
2. What did Salma love?
3. Where is Ashly from?

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- The children were excited to create something useful.

☐ - كان الأطفال خائفين من تجربة شيء جديد.

☐ - كان الأطفال متحمسين لصنع شيء مفيد.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- أراد عمر أن ينهي المباراة سريعاً ويتقدم بالنتيجة.

☐ Omar wanted to end the game quickly and take the lead.

☐ Omar wanted to stop playing and leave the lead.

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our team scored another goal and the lead.
a) thought b) did c) took d) made
2. We should always attention to our parents when they talk to us.
a) make b) take c) close d) give
3. A water broke in the bathroom, and water started coming out quickly.
a) machine b) pipe c) material d) fair
4. My painting will be shown at the art this Friday at school.
a) pipe b) model c) fair d) meeting
5. Good helps us know what is right and what is wrong.
a) judgment b) model c) fur d) machine
6. When you make a mistake, never give and try again.
a) of b) on c) over d) up
7. The of the story was to always tell the truth, even when it's hard.
a) meeting b) chance c) moral d) material
8. We need to the camera before we go on the school trip.
a) taste b) fix c) test d) agree
9. The farmer uses tools to protect the environment and save water.
a) moral b) water-saving c) wasting water d) honest
10. I never my teacher's tips نصائح to get high marks.
a) follow b) ignore c) disappear d) give
11. Our school has a/an science competition that happens every year in November.
a) monthly b) moral c) annual d) gentle
12. The teacher showed us a of the solar system with all the planets.
a) model b) machine c) teamwork d) modal

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pipes – friendship – away – designed – up

In our annual school project, we had to create something helpful. Our team (1) a water-saving machine. At first, the (2) didn't work well, but we didn't give (3) Omar helped fix them, and Salma tested the flow. Everyone gave attention to teamwork. We stayed organized and fair with each other. In the end, we took the lead! We learned that (4) and hard work really matter.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Too much can hurt your teeth.
a) candy b) water c) hobby d) time
2. She felt nervous the test results.
a) at b) about c) with d) from
3. We will their exam results tomorrow.
a) leave b) think c) receive d) explore
4. In my, I try to learn something new, like how to bake a cake.
a) candy b) hobby c) free time d) lost time
5. This medicine was very I got better in a short time.
a) effective b) interested c) harmful d) noisy
6. Don't your bag on the bus.
a) save b) leave c) receive d) explore
7. I usually feel before an exam.
a) colorful b) sleepy c) stressed d) shy
8. We should water and not waste it.
a) leave b) save c) receive d) explore
9. A problem came while we were doing the project.
a) with b) along c) into d) up
10. Children love to new places during holidays.
a) explore b) receive c) save d) invent

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

free – up – into – save – effective

Salma felt stressed because of her school tests. She didn't know how to study well. She asked her teacher for advice. The teacher gave her an (1)..... study plan. In her (2)..... time, Salma started using it and felt better. She also learned to (3)..... her energy by taking breaks. One day, a hard question came (4)..... in her test, and she answered it easily.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



Skills Bank Writing

How to write about advising a friend who had a problem

كيفية الكتابة عن نصح صديق لديه مشكلة

1 Who had the problem (your friend)?

من الذي كان لديه مشكلة؟

e.g. A friend had a problem (two choices, hard to decide).

2 How did your friend feel about it?

بم شعر صديقك تجاه المشكلة؟

e.g. The friend was sad and nervous.

3 What advice did you give?

ما النصيحة التي أعطيتها له؟

e.g. I listened to him and advised him to (اذكر النصيحة).

Advising a friend who had a problem

4 Did your friend follow your advice?

هل صديقك اتبع نصيحتك؟

e.g. My friend followed my advice and he felt better and solved the problem.

5 What do you think about helping friends?

ما رأيك في مساعدة الأصدقاء؟

e.g. Giving advice to a friend is (مفيدة).

حان الآن دورك، ستساعدك الأفكار كثيرًا في كتابة فقرتك:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نموذج مجاب عنه:

"Giving advice to a friend"

Last week, my friend Rana had a big problem. She was invited to two birthday parties on the same day, but she didn't know which one to choose. She felt sad and didn't want to upset anyone. I told her to talk to both friends and explain the situation honestly. I also said she could go to one party and send a nice message or gift to the other friend. Rana listened to my advice and felt much better. Helping friends with their problems is always a kind thing to do.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We should recycle old like plastic and paper to protect nature.
a) material b) iron c) chance d) moral
- Let's travel around by bus. It's a good way to the city.
a) affect b) explore c) invite d) move

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

give up – ignore – agree – model – attention

Our class joined an eco-friendly fair. We had to build a (1)..... using recycled material. I felt left out at first because no one listened to my idea. But I didn't (2)..... . I suggested a new water pipe system. It worked. Everyone was honest and gave (3)..... to my judgment. Our model showed great teamwork. The moral is never (4)..... someone's idea. They might save the day.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If I have a school trip, I wil (getting) up very early.
- When my cousin (visit) me, we'll play video games.
- We (shouldn't) help our parents when they are tired.
- Ahmed should (to read) more to do better in school.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Zeinab is asking Kareem about experiencing a problem to solve.

Zeinab : Did you and a friend have a problem to solve?

Kareem: (1)..... . We had to choose which friend to help first.

Zeinab : (2)..... ?

Kareem: One needed help with homework, the other felt sad.

Zeinab : (3)..... ?

Kareem: We decided to help our sad friend first and do homework later.

Zeinab : Was everyone happy in the end?

Kareem: (4)..... . Both friends felt better.

A Vocabulary

1 Match the words to their meanings.

A (Words)

1. decision
2. consequence
3. risk
4. responsible

B (Meanings)

- a) the result of an action
- b) a choice you make
- c) doing the right thing
- d) the chance of something bad happening

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

decision – consequence – risk – responsible

Omar is very (1) ; he always finishes his homework on time. Climbing the mountain without a guide is a big (2) Every action has a (3), so think before you act. He made a good (4) to study before the test.

B Language

3 Read and complete the sentences.

1. If I study hard, I (get) good grades.
2. You should (goes) to bed early before the test.
3. If she eats too much candy, she (feel) sick.
4. You should (asking) your parents for advice.
5. If she (will be) late, the teacher will be angry.
6. If he (not come), we'll leave without him.

C Writing

4 Write a descriptive paragraph of 80 words about a smart choice you made.

.....

.....

.....

A) Vocabulary

annual (adj)	سنوي
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف
benefit (n)	فائدة
choice (n)	اختيار
consequence (n)	نتيجة/عاقبة
decision (n)	قرار
effect (n)	تأثير
effective (adj)	فعال
evaluate (d) (v)	يقيم/يقدر
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف
fair (adj)	عادل/منصف
fluent (adj)	طليق/فصيح
gentle (adj)	لطيف/ريقف
give up (v)	يتخلى عن/يستسلم
harmful (adj)	ضار/مؤذ
honest (adj)	صادق/أمين
ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل/يهمل
impact (n) (on)	تأثير (على)
influence (d) (n/v) (on)	تأثير/يؤثر (على)
judgment (n)	حكم
lead (n)	مصدرة/قيادة/ريادة
left out (adj)	مستبعد
matter (ed) (v)	يهم/له قيمة
problem-solving (adj)	حل المشكلات
race (n)	سباق
recover (ed) (v)	يشفي/يتعافى
responsible (adj)	مسئول
risk (n)	خطر
skip (ped) (v)	يتخطى/يتقرب
tough (adj)	قاس/صعب
waste (d) (v)	يضيع/يهدر
wise (adj)	حكيم

B) Language

1. First conditional

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

- If it is fine tomorrow, we **will** go to the zoo.
- He **will** answer the question **if** he reads it well.
- We **will** play outside **when** the weather is nice.

2. Giving advice

إعطاء النصيحة

Affirmative

الإثبات

الفاعل + should + inf. ...

- Alaa **should** study hard.
- You **should** do your homework.

Negative

النفي

الفاعل + shouldn't + inf. ...

- You **shouldn't** eat unhealthy food.
- The children **shouldn't** play in the street.

Question

السؤال

Should + الفاعل + inf. ...?

- **A:** Should Alaa study hard?
- **B:** Yes, he **should**.

C) Speaking

Talking about a problem your friend and you once faced

- **A:** Have you ever had a problem?
- **B:** Yes, I once had a problem with my friend.
- **A:** What was it?
- **B:** We had to choose between joining the science team or the art team.
- **A:** Who helped you solve it?
- **B:** Our teacher helped us by asking what we liked more.
- **A:** What lesson did you learn from it?
- **B:** I learned that thinking calmly and talking together helps solve problems.
- **A:** Was it hard to make a choice?
- **B:** Yes, it was very hard because both options were fun.
- **A:** What did you finally choose?
- **B:** We chose the science team because we wanted to learn new things.

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The child felt sick because he/she
a) skipped breakfast
b) ran too fast
c) ate too much sugar
d) had an injury
2. The coach gave advice about
a) study time
b) food
c) sleeping
d) grades
3. Now, I always make food choices.
a) smart
b) negative
c) delicious
d) rich

B) Listen and complete:

4. I felt sick in class and couldn't
5. Sugar can have a bad on our body.
6. Now, I don't breakfast.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** I will your presentation and help you improve your speaking skills.
a) skip b) evaluate
c) join d) behave
- 2.** One of reading is learning new words quickly.
a) scale b) instruction
c) reason d) benefit

B

Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

coach – interviewer – recover – options – risk

Before an important race, Adam injured himself while training. He had two (1).....: either join the race and (2)..... more pain or take time off to rest. After discussing with his (3)....., Adam decided to wait and (4)..... This helped him come back stronger and ready for future competitions. He learned that sometimes patience is very important.

4

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- B) Answer the following questions:**

- 6. Why do you think advice from adults is important?**

5

- Smart Choices | 189

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I (seeing) you tomorrow, I'll tell you the latest news.
2. What will happen if Alaa (drop) juice on the table?
3. Why (he should) leave the door open?
4. My brother shouldn't (to leave) his toys on the floor.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Farid is telling Hala about what they did when their friend had an accident.

Hala : I know your friend had a terrible accident yesterday.

Farid : That's (1)..... A car hit him while crossing the street.

Hala : (2)..... did you do to help him?

Farid : We didn't move him and called the ambulance at once.

Hala : That was a wise decision to make. (3)..... the ambulance arrive quickly?

Farid : Yes, it did.

Hala : I'm sure he will be more (4)..... when crossing the street!

Farid : Surely, he will do this.



Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A problem you faced or a friend of yours"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. My grandpa usually us to achieve more success.
a) inspires b) speaks c) exchanges d) expresses
2. We should help our to live in a place full of love and peace.
a) unity b) community c) ability d) activity
3. Dr. Zewail a lot of awards.
a) thought b) earned c) beat d) won
4. My cousin is He always asks questions for more information.
a) helpless b) furious c) careless d) curious
5. To stop smoking is a good to make.
a) decision b) action c) homework d) task
6. Good teachers have a great on us.
a) course b) cause c) reason d) influence
7. Our teacher always encourages us to and make something new.
a) copy b) pay c) create d) ignore
8. What problem did you face yesterday? "Problem" is a synonym to ".....".
a) position b) situation c) trouble d) project

Language

9. My uncle visited London 2022.
a) since b) ago c) when d) in
10. you sad when you lost your cell phone?
a) Did b) Are c) Were d) Do
11. What when you knew the tourist was in trouble?
a) did you do b) will you do c) you have done d) do you do
12. I to school yesterday because I was very ill.
a) went b) didn't go c) don't go d) have gone
13. What if the money you have is enough?
a) you didn't buy a) you will buy b) did you buy c) will you buy
14. I'll tell Dalia about the latest news when she me.
a) meets b) meet c) will meet d) met
15. I think Hatim the competition if he trains well.
a) win b) won c) will win d) would win

16. You follow your teacher's advice before the exam.
 a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) has to d) should
17. You stay up late when you have an exam; it's better for your health.
 a) must b) shouldn't c) didn't d) should
18. What I do to keep fit?
 a) should I b) I should c) have I d) need

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Who (break) that toy yesterday?
2. (Does) Fatma buy the blouse she wanted last evening?
3. Dalia (fly) to Paris last week.
4. I reached the company and (meet) Mr. Adly yesterday.
5. What (is) the weather like when you were in the village?
6. A: Why did you go to the hospital? B: I (have) to visit my uncle.
7. Salma (went) to the club because she was busy; she had to revise for the exam with her friend at home.
8. Last time, Walid (does) his homework alone and made no mistakes!
9. Who (did help) Tamer to repair his bike?
10. A week ago, Hadeer (spend) a nice time with her friends in her village.
11. Manal (repeat) the same mistakes last time.
12. If Dalia travels to London, she (send) us an email.
13. I will borrow the book I need if I (will go) to the school library.
14. What (you will buy) if you go to the supermarket?
15. I (will buy) that dress if I go to the mall; I will buy a cheaper one.
16. If she (have) a task to do, she won't go to the club.
17. Tamer, you shouldn't (wastes) your time watching too much TV.
18. We (shouldn't) eat healthy food.
19. (Do) you buy a new laptop if you have enough money?
20. What should Ali (to do) to solve his problem?
21. If Adel is tall, (would) he play basketball?
22. We will go to the park if the sun (shine) tomorrow.
23. (Does) your child be happy if you take him for a walk?
24. If you (won't) clean your room, it won't look nice.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

qualities – determined – famous – passion – passionate

1. Dr. Samira Moussa showed love for science from a young age.
2. My brother is always to achieve his dreams in life.
3. What do you think a hero should have?
4. Dr. Gamal Hamdan was a Egyptian geographer and writer.

B)

goals – motivates – hero – qualities – numbers

My role model is my father. He is a real (1)..... . He has a lot of good (2)..... . He is always determined to achieve his (3)..... in life. He is dedicated to his work. He always (4)..... me to follow my dreams and never give up.

C)

awards – chemistry – proud – pride – respect

We have a lot of inspiring people in our lives. We all (1)..... those who make life better. We are so (2)..... of our great scientists in different fields. Dr. Ahmed Zewail was a pioneering figure in (3)..... . He won many (4)..... for his great achievements.

D)

comfortable – decision – positive – responsible – benefits

My friends and I made a good (1)..... to take part in keeping the environment clean. We chose (2)..... friends. We met a lot of the people living in our area. We told them about the (3)..... of planting more trees. All of them were pleased as they knew they would live in a healthy and (4)..... place.

E)

goals – problem – positive – influence – instructions

Sometimes I have a lot of trouble in life. When I face a/an (1)....., I usually ask for my father's advice. He is very wise and has a great (2)..... on me. I usually follow his (3)..... . As a result, I always achieve my (4)..... .

4 Complete the following dialog:

A) Amir tells Basim about his role model in life.

Basim : Who is your role model in life?

Amir : (1)..... is my father, of course.

Basim : What (2)..... he encourage you to do?

Amir : He always encourages me to be positive and fair.

Basim : What else does he advise you to do?

Amir : He usually advises me not to lose hope and to (3)..... the lead.

Basim : So, you achieve your goals when you follow his tips.

Amir : You're right, Basim. What (4)..... you?

Basim : My role model is my uncle. He is a famous writer.

B) Samir is speaking about his favorite scientist.

Amin : Hello, Samir. Who is the scientist you'd like to speak about today?

Samir : Hello, Amin. He is Dr. Gamal Hamdan.

Amin : When (1)..... he born?

Samir : He was born in 1928.

Amin : I know he was a famous geographer.

Samir : You're right. He was not only a scientist but also a deep thinker.

Amin : (2)..... he write famous books?

Samir : Yes, he did. His most famous book is "The Personality of Egypt".

Amin : What was the main idea of that book?

Samir : It was Egypt's (3)..... in history.

Amin : Did he write other well-known books?

Samir : Yes, of course. One of these books is about the (4)..... Canal.

C) Amani is speaking about a book she has just read.

Heba : What was the book you read about?

Amani : It was about Dr. Samira Moussa.

Heba : What was most known about her?

Amani : She was the first Egyptian woman to get a Ph.D. in atomic (1).....

Heba : (2)..... did she believe science should be used for?

Amani : She believed science should be used for peace and to improve people's lives.

Heba : Did she do all her research in Egypt?

Amani : (3)....., she didn't. She traveled to the United States to continue her research and to share knowledge with other scientists.

Heba : (4)..... do you seem you're sad after reading the book?

Amani : Because I read she had died in a car accident when she was 35.

3

مقرر شهر
ديسمبر

MODULE



Unit **5** Future Dreams

Unit **6** Global Citizens

Module 3 Question Bank



Unit

5

FUTURE DREAMS



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify the main idea and at least two supporting details in different text types.

Use context clues to understand new words related to jobs and future planning.

Listening

Identify the main idea in a text about future plans and careers.

Identify at least two supporting details in a text about future plans and careers.

Speaking

Talk about personal future goals and describe steps to achieve them using "going to".

Share personal dreams and give reasons in a short presentation or discussion.

Language

Recognize and explain future tense structures with "going to" in context.

Writing

Write a structured review about a dream job and steps to achieve.

• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان؛
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
• قم باختيار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع
لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

A VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bright future (n)	مستقبل مشرق	graduate (d) (v)	يتخرج	purpose (n)	غرض
career (n)	حياة مهنية	opportunity (n)	فرصة	skillful (adj)	ماهر
contact (ed) (v)	يتواصل مع	passion (n)	شغف	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح
designer (n)	مصمم	path (n)	مسار/طريق	support (ed) (v)	يدعم/يساند
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	profession (n)	مهنة	workshop (n)	ورشة عمل

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

abroad (adv)	خارج البلاد/بالخارج	reader (n)	قارئ	unsure (adj)	غير متأكد
hope (v) (d)	يأمل	reality (n)	واقع/حقيقة	wait (ed)	ينتظر
maybe (adv)	ربما	step (n)	خطوة/إجراء	whatever (pro)	مهما

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

dream of	يحلم بـ	achieve a goal	يحقق هدفًا	tell a story	يحكى قصة
planning for the future	التخطيط للمستقبل	follow a rule	يتبع قاعدة	work hard	يعمل بجد
think about	يفكر في	take an opportunity	يغتني/يستغل فرصة	explore your options	استكشف خياراتك

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
tell	يخبر	told	think	يفكر	thought

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
succeed	ينجح	fail	يفشل	dream	حلم	reality	واقع/حقيقة
bright	مشرق	dark	مظلم				

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition (v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Read and complete with a word from the list:

unsure – maybe – of – tell

- 1 I was about the answer, so I asked my teacher.
- 2 Can you a story about a brave hero?
- 3 Basmala dreams becoming a famous doctor one day.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

اسم + dream

الشيء الذي أحلم به

المهنة التي أحلم بها dream profession / الوظيفة التي أحلم بها dream job / الهدف الذي تحلم به dream goal

Vocabulary Builder

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
contact (v)	يتواصل مع	communicate with	يتواصل مع
opportunity (n)	فرصة	chance	فرصة
purpose (n)	غرض	goal	هدف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
design (v)	يصمم	-er		تحول لاسم فاعل		designer (n)	مصمم
skill (n)	مهارة	-ful		تحول لصفة		skillful (adj)	ماهر
real (adj)	حقيقي	-ity		تحول لاسم		reality (n)	واقع/حقيقة

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى		sure (adj)	متأكد	unsure (adj)	غير متأكد

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 She didn't miss the opportunity to help her friend. The synonym of "opportunity" is ".....".
a) passion b) skill c) chance d) career
- 2 Are you sure this is the right way? We add the prefix "....." to form the opposite of "sure".
a) im- b) in- c) dis- d) un-
- 3 I saw a real elephant at the zoo. We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of "real".
a) -ity b) -y c) -ment d) -ful

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Is planning for the future important?
- 2 What should people do to achieve their goals in the future?

 Read the advertisement below. What is it about?

Lesson 1

SB page 64

Discover Your Future: Choose Your Dream Profession Today!

Are you dreaming of a bright future?

Do you hope to find a job that makes you excited every day?

At Future Path Careers, we help you find your **ambition**⁽¹⁾ and develop every skill you need to succeed. You are going to discover a whole new world of **opportunities**⁽²⁾ with us!

Some want to become doctors, while others want to be designers or teachers. Whatever your plan is, we are here to support you. You will find your path if you work hard and believe in yourself.

Maybe you are still unsure, but you will decide today to explore your options.

If you join our workshop, you will discover your **passion**⁽³⁾. We believe you can create the future you want!

Don't wait!!! Take this opportunity now. Your dream **profession**⁽⁴⁾ will become your reality if you start planning today.

Contact us now. Your future starts right now, right here!

Post-reading questions:

Read the advertisement again and answer the following questions:

- 1 According to the text, how does Future Path Careers help you?
- 2 What is the purpose of this advertisement?
 - a) To give information about job history.
 - b) To tell a story about a famous worker.
 - c) To encourage readers to join a career workshop.
- 3 What does the word "Path" mean in this text?
 - a) A road or street.
 - b) A way to your dream or future.
 - c) A rule to follow.
- 4 Find a word in the text that is the opposite of "fail".



(1) طموح

(2) فرص

(3) شغف

(4) مهنة

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص ١٩٩ كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
goal هدف/غرض	unsure غير متأكد
fact واقع/حقيقة	bright مشرق
maybe ربما	succeed ينجح

2 Comprehension strategies:

At Future Path Careers, we help you find your ambition and develop every skill you need to succeed. You are going to **discover** a whole new world of opportunities with us!

1. How can Future Path Careers help you?

(استخراج معلومة من النص)

2. The word “**discover**” is similar in meaning to

(تخمين معنى كلمة)

a) find out

b) help out

c) look out

d) take out

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- **Whatever your plan, we are here to support you.**

☐

- مهما كانت خطتك، نحن هنا لدعمك.

☐

- أينما كانت خطتك، نحن هنا لنشجعك.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- **نساعدك في تحقيق طموحك وتطوير مهاراتك.**

☐

We help you achieve your ambition and develop your skills.

☐

We help you believe your ambition and waste your skills.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Did you know who America?
a) hoped b) contacted c) graduated d) discovered
2. What do you want to choose when you finish university?
a) passion b) decision c) profession d) reality
3. Aya is a great who loves to create new dress styles.
a) driver b) designer c) reader d) writer
4. If you want to a goal, you must keep trying even when it's hard.
a) achieve b) think c) take d) tell
5. The of this book is to help children learn English better.
a) price b) purpose c) opportunity d) profession
6. Many students dream becoming doctors when they grow up.
a) in b) off c) for d) of
7. When young people graduate, they look for job
a) parts b) opportunities c) opinions d) changes
8. makes people enjoy what they do.
a) Fight b) Fright c) Possession d) Passion
9. Shorouk studied very hard and in her exams; she was very happy.
a) supported b) failed c) contacted d) succeeded
10. Young people always hope for a bright
a) future b) furniture c) past d) post
11. Our teacher us during the school play and helped us improve.
a) failed b) communicated c) supported d) discovered
12. My sister began her dream after finishing university last year.
a) care b) career c) opportunity d) step

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

graduated – discover – career – taught – workshop

Leila always dreamed of becoming a scientist. She wanted to (1) new things to help the world. Her parents gave her support by buying her science books. She joined a science (2) at school. Leila worked hard to become a skillful student. After years of studying, she (3) with top grades. Now, she feels ready to follow her (4) path and build a bright future.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nadia is planning her future by learning new skills.
a) about b) in c) of d) for
2. helps a person try to do great things in life.
a) Anger b) Hunger c) Ambition d) Repetition
3. When we moved to the new city, I it well.
a) invented b) explored c) increased d) thought
4. Habiba always dreamt to be a doctor, but now it's her
a) reason b) cause c) workshop d) reality
5. I you will join the football team soon.
a) support b) fail c) hope d) hop
6. Amira her cousin to invite her to the birthday party.
a) thought b) enjoyed c) contacted d) communicated
7. Amr was brave enough to the opportunity to speak in front of the class.
a) appear b) think c) take d) tell
8. In developed المتطورة countries, all the people respect the teaching
a) job b) work c) profession d) suggestion
9. I like to read an adventure story. To form the noun of "read", we add the suffix "".
a) -or b) -er c) -ist d) -tion
10. After I, I'll travel and study in another country.
a) graduate b) contact c) locate d) fail
11. We need to this rule if we want to stay in the competition.
a) achieve b) work c) follow d) flow

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

encouraged – from – of – opportunity – reader

Ali loves books and he always has a passion for telling stories. He is a great (1) One day, he got an (2) to join a writing club. At first, he felt unsure, but his friends (3) him. He started writing short stories and sharing them. Ali wanted to become an author. He now dreams (4) a career in writing and is planning for his future.

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Talking about future goals and dream jobs

التحدث عن الأهداف المستقبلية ووظائف الأحلام

← online

 What is your dream goal/job for the future?

ما هو هدفك/وظيفتك التي تحلم بها في المستقبل؟

My dream job for the future is to become a doctor.

 وظيفتي الحلم - المستقبلية هي أن أصبح طبيباً.

 Why do you like that? / Why do you want it?

لماذا تحب هذه الوظيفة؟ / لماذا تريدها؟

I want to be a doctor because I love helping sick people feel better.

 أريد أن أصبح طبيباً لأنني أحب مساعدة المرضى على الشعور بالتحسن.

 How can you achieve it?

كيف يمكنك تحقيقه؟

I can achieve it by studying hard.

 يمكنني تحقيقه من خلال الدراسة الجادة.

 What skills do you need for that job?

ما المهارات التي تحتاج إليها لهذه الوظيفة؟

I need to be good at science.

 أحتاج إلى أن أكون جيداً في العلوم.

 Where would you like to work in the future?

أين تود أن تعمل في المستقبل؟

I would like to work in a big hospital.

 أود أن أعمل في مستشفى كبير.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► **Kareem dreams to be a doctor.**

Ali : What is your dream job for the future?

Kareem : My dream job is to become a (1).....

Ali : (2)..... do you want to be a doctor?

Kareem : Because I love helping people who are sick.

Ali : Is it hard to become a doctor?

Kareem : Yes, it (3)....., it takes many years of study.

Ali : (4)..... can you prepare for it?

Kareem : I will study science and read about medicine.

How to write about your dream profession

كيفية الكتابة عن مهنتك التي تحلم بها

قم باستخراج الأفكار من خلال النقاط التالية:

What is your dream job or profession?

ما هي وظيفة أحلامك؟

e.g. My dream profession is to become a (الوظيفة).

Why do you want to do this job?

لماذا تريد أن تشغل هذه الوظيفة؟

e.g. I want to be a (الوظيفة) because I like (السبب).

How will you prepare for it?

كيف ستستعد لها؟

e.g. I can prepare by (actions: studying, practicing, reading, etc.).

Where would you like to work in the future?

أين تود أن تعمل في المستقبل؟

e.g. In the future, I want to work (in a hospital, in a school, etc.).

How will you feel if you get this job?

بم ستشعر إن حصلت على هذه الوظيفة؟

e.g. I will feel proud and happy if I become a (الوظيفة) one day.

حان دورك الآن أن تقوم بتجميع الأفكار السابقة في شكل فقرة:

قم بقراءة هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة لتتعلم منه:

"My Dream Profession"

My dream profession is to become a teacher. I want to teach children how to read, write, and learn new things every day. Teachers help students grow and become smart. I like helping others, and I enjoy explaining things clearly. To be a good teacher, I need to be patient, kind, and well-prepared. I will study hard and practice speaking and teaching. One day, I hope to have my own classroom. Being a teacher is the job I dream about the most.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Try to find your and develop every skill you need to succeed.

- a) ambition b) definition c) condition d) musician

2. My parents usually me a story before I go to bed.

- a) think b) tell c) work d) believe

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

design – career – graduate – designer – support

Tarek's school invited students to a workshop where they could explore many jobs. Tarek met a pilot, a (1)....., and a chef. He was amazed. He thought about being a chef because he liked cooking. At home, he told his family about his new (2)..... . They were happy and said, "We will (3)..... your dream!" He now practices every day and wants to (4)..... from the cooking school.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Salma and Leila are discussing their future jobs.

Salma : What job do you want in the future?

Leila : I (1)..... to be an engineer.

Salma : (2)..... do you like that job?

Leila : Because I love building things.

Salma : (3)..... it a difficult job to get?

Leila : Yes, I have to be good at math.

Salma : How will you achieve it?

Leila : I'll study (4)..... to join the Faculty كلية of Engineering.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your dream profession"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

Apollo missions (n)	مهمات أبوللو	copy (y) (ied) (v)	يقلد/ينسخ	graphic designer (n)	مصمم رسوم
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	effort (n)	جهد/مجهود	participate (d) (v)	يشارك
chemistry (n)	الكيمياء	geology (n)	علم الجيولوجيا (دراسة طبقات الأرض)	talent (n)	موهبة
confidence (n)	الثقة	gift (n)	هبة/هدية		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

ability (n)	قدرة	land (ed) (v)	يهبط	natural (adj)	طبيعي
clever (adj)	ذكى/ماهر	list (n)	قائمة	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى/يحقق
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	medicine (n)	طب	twins (n)	توائم

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a type of	نوع من	for dinner	على العشاء	reach a goal	يصل إلى هدف
brings me closer	يقربني أكثر	for the future	من أجل المستقبل	select landing sites	يختار مواقع الهبوط
collect rocks	يجمع الصخور	on the Moon	على القمر	set a goal	يحدد هدفًا
design a website	يصمم موقع إلكتروني	prepare for	يجهز/يعد لـ	try hard	يحاول بجد

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten	write	يكتب	wrote	written

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
curious	فضولي	uninterested	غير مهتم	land	يهبط	take off	يقلم

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – in – talent – reach – landed

- 1 My sister has a for drawing beautiful animals.
- 2 The plane safely at the airport.
- 3 My mom cooked rice and chicken dinner.
- 4 We can our goal if we work as a team.

LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

achieve (d) (v)	يحقّق/ينجز	skill (n)	مهارة	university (n)	جامعة
education (n)	تعليم	success (n)	نجاح	wish (ed) (v)	يتمنّى
match (ed) (v)	يُطابق/يلتزم	training (n)	تدريب		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

come true (v)	يتحقّق	practice (d) (v)	يعارس/يتدرب	smile (d) (v)	يبتسم
hospital (n)	مستشفى	respected (adj)	محترم	teaching (n)	التدريس

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

feel better	يشعر بتحسن	look after	يعتني بـ	reach a dream	يحقق حلمًا
hope for	يأمل بـ	match my talent	تتطابق مع موهبتي		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
learn	يتعلم	learnt	learnt
become	يصبح	became	become

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
success	نجاح	failure	فشل

Read and complete with a word from the list:

after – success – skill – wish

- 1 Helping others is also a kind of in life.
- 2 Drawing is a that you can get better at with practice.
- 3 Nurses look sick people in hospitals.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



career مهنة / profession مهنة

Career - «حياة مهنية / مشوار وظيفي»

• My father has an amazing career in education.

Profession - «مهنة تتطلب دراسة»

• Teaching is a noble profession.

تشير إلى الرحلة الطويلة في العمل طوال حياتك، وقد تشمل عدة وظائف أو مهنة.

نوع معين من العمل يتطلب تدريباً خاصاً أو دراسة، مثل الطبيب، المحامي، المهندس، المعلم.

• My sister works in the nursing profession.

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

التعريفات

goal	هدف	something you want to achieve ⁽¹⁾	يحقق (1)
talent	موهبة	natural ⁽²⁾ skill or ability ⁽³⁾	طبيعي (2)
effort	مجهود	trying hard to do something	قدرة (3)

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
participate (d) (v)	يشارك	take part	يشارك
talent (n)	موهبة	gift	موهبة
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
practice (d) (v)	يمارس/يتدرب	train	يتدرب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
nature (n)	طبيعة	-al	تحول لصفة	natural (adj)	طبيعي
educate (v)	يُعلم	-ion	تحول لاسم	education (n)	تعليم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We had a delicious dinner. The synonym of "delicious" is "....."

- a) tasty b) clever c) bitter d) nervous

2 I love walking in nature. To form the adjective of "nature", add the suffix "....."

- a) -er b) -ing c) -ous d) -al

3 A is something you want to achieve.

- a) gift b) goal c) nature d) talent

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What do you want to be in the future?
- 2 What things can help you reach your goals?
- 3 What do you think is more important: talent or hard work?

1. Listen to Malek's social media post

My dream is to become a **graphic designer**⁽¹⁾. I enjoy drawing and using technology. Last summer, I joined a free art program in my city. It was hard work, but I learned a lot. My teacher said I have a real talent, and that gave me more **confidence**⁽²⁾. I set a new goal: to design my own website. I know I'll need time, **effort**⁽³⁾, and support from others. But I'm excited because every step I take brings me closer to my future.



Lesson 2

SB page 76

(1) مصمم رسوم

(2) الثقة

(3) مجهود

2. Listen to the interview with a famous scientist.

SB page 76

Student Hello, Dr. Farouk El-Baz! I'm very happy to meet you.

Dr. El-Baz Hello! I'm happy to meet you, too. Do you like science?

Student Yes, I do! I want to learn more about your work. What did you study?

Dr. El-Baz I studied **geology**⁽¹⁾ and **chemistry**⁽²⁾ at Ain-Shams University in Egypt. Then I got my Ph.D. in Geology in the United States.

Student Wow! That's amazing. How did you help the NASA scientists?

Dr. El-Baz I worked with NASA during the Apollo **missions**⁽³⁾. I helped the **astronauts**⁽⁴⁾ select safe **landing sites**⁽⁵⁾ on the Moon. I also trained them to read maps and collect rocks.

Student That's great! If you want to advise students who wish to be successful scientists, what will you say?

Dr. El-Baz You should study science, work hard, never give up, and always try to help your country and the world.

Student Thank you, Dr. El-Baz! You are a true hero in science.

Dr. El-Baz Thank you! And remember, you can be a hero too!



(1) الجيولوجيا

(2) الكيمياء

(3) مهمات

(4) رواد الفضاء

(5) مواقع الهبوط

Post listening questions:

- 1 Where did Dr. Farouk El-Baz help astronauts land?
- 2 Why did Dr. Farouk visit the school? Explain in your own words.
- 3 What does Dr. Farouk El-Baz study?
- 4 What is the opposite of the word "curious"?
 a) Bored. b) Tired. c) Clever. d) Uninterested.

Pre-reading question:

- What job do you dream of having in the future? Why?

 Read the text. What is Omar's biggest dream?

SB page 68

My Future Dreams and Career Plans

Hello, my name is Omar, and I am 11 years old. I always think about my future career.

I wish to find a profession that matches my talent⁽¹⁾ and makes me happy. I love helping people, so I want to become a doctor one day.

I know that I need a good education⁽²⁾ to reach my dream. After school, I will go to university⁽³⁾ to study medicine⁽⁴⁾. I will also need training in hospitals so I can learn how to look after patients. This training will help me have the skills I need for success⁽⁵⁾ in my profession.

My biggest dream is to help people feel better and to make them smile. I will work hard to achieve my goals. Sometimes I feel tired of studying, but I remember that I am working for my future.

I believe that if I study well and practice a lot, I will become a good doctor. I will also have a job that I love. This is a very long way, but I will work very hard to make my dreams come true.



(1) موهبة

(2) التعليم

(3) الجامعة

(4) الطب

(5) النجاح

Post-reading questions:

1 What profession does Omar hope for?

2 How can Omar reach his dream?

3 Do you think Omar is a kind person? Why?

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص ٢٠٩ - ٢١٠ كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
intelligent ذكي/ماهر	curious فضولي
tasty لذيذ	join ينضم إلى
skill مهارة/موهبة	look after يعتنى بـ

2 Comprehension strategies:

My name is Omar. I know that I need a good education to reach my dream. After school, I will go to university to study medicine. I will also need training in hospitals, so I can learn how to look after patients. This training will help me get the skills I need for success in my profession.

1. What do we need to reach our goals?

(استخراج معلومة من النص)

2. Do you think Omar is planning well for his future? Why?

(مهارة التفكير النقدي)

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- I wish to find a profession that matches my talent.

☐

- أتمنى أن أجد مهنة تناسب موهبتي.

☐

- أتمنى أن أجد مهنة تناسب مهاراتي.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- أحتاج إلى تعليم جيد لتحقيق حلمي.

☐

I need a good education to reach my dream.

☐

I need a good education to think about my dream.

LESSON

2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dr. El-Baz studied and chemistry at Ain-Shams University. He is a great geologist.
a) geology b) history c) physics d) photography
2. Dr. El-Baz worked with NASA during the Apollo
a) message b) mission c) visit d) trip
3. The pilot had a problem with the plane engine, but he could select a safe in a free area.
a) accident b) floating c) landing d) flying
4. Clever pilots choose the best for landing safely when they are in danger.
a) signs b) seats c) sets d) sites
5. helps us understand how substances
a) Physics b) Chemistry c) Geography d) History
6. Would you like to our team for the game on Saturday?
a) reach b) join c) participate d) arrive
7. To become a/an, Tamer knows he must study science.
a) artist b) tourist c) list d) astronaut
8. My parents gave me a beautiful for my birthday.
a) gift b) effort c) list d) skill
9. Nour has a real for playing the violin.
a) talent b) list c) information d) scale
10. Winning the race took a lot of and many months of practice.
a) list b) effort c) sleep d) dreams
11. What is your favorite type books to read before you go to sleep?
a) at b) of c) in d) to

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

for – with – curious – effort – come

Omar dreams of becoming an astronaut one day. He knows it takes a lot of (1) and study. He wants to prepare (2) the space school by reading and learning science. Omar is very (3) about stars and planets. He hopes to reach his goal of flying to the moon. His mother always says, "Hard work makes dreams (4) true!".

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. is important for doing a task well.
a) Luck b) Lack c) Chance d) Skill
2. You should work hard so you can your goals in life.
a) achieve b) forget c) change d) remind
3. Players need regular to perform well in competitions.
a) traveling b) eating c) smoking d) training
4. I'm sure completing that big project on time is a; we all worked hard indeed فى الواقع
a) luck b) failure c) success d) worry
5. I wish to buy a new car. "Wish" here is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) decide b) hope c) believe d) hate
6. The project was a great success. To change "success" into an adjective, add the suffix ".....".
a) -less b) -ity c) -able d) -ful
7. Going to school is important for getting good
a) education b) station c) vacation d) passion
8. I need to find a blue hat to my new blue winter coat.
a) smile b) smell c) practice d) match
9. With hard work, your dream to be a singer can
a) practice b) come true c) achieve d) smile
10. It makes me when my friend tells a very funny joke.
a) wish b) smell c) practice d) smile
11. My teacher is by all the students because she is fair.
a) training b) hated c) respected d) working
12. If you are sad, talking to a friend can help you better.
a) feel b) fall c) fill d) find

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

success – university – after – for – come

When I grow up, I want to be a doctor. I will look (1)..... people when they are sick or hurt. I plan to go to (2)..... and study medicine. I believe that good planning is the key to (3)..... I will get training to learn how to help people. I hope my dream will (4)..... true. I will be happy when I help people feel better.

حلل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

The Picnic Day

Leila and her family (is/are) packing food for a picnic. They (am/are) very excited. Her dad (is/are) putting sandwiches in a bag. Her mum (is/are) making juice. Leila (is/are) helping her little brother. They are (going/go) to visit the park. They are going (to play/play) games. They are going to eat under the trees. Everyone (is/are) going to have a great day.

"be" going to

سوف

We use 'be going to' to talk about plans in the future, especially when we are sure the plan is going to happen.

• نستخدم «be going to» للحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية، خاصة عندما نكون متأكدين من أن الخطة سوف تتحقق.

يمكن أن تأتي مع كلمات مثل:

decide - plan - intend

Affirmative الإثبات

الفاعل + am/is/are + going to + inf.

- e.g. • We are going to have a picnic this weekend.
• I am going to travel to Japan next year.

Form التكوين

Negative النفي

الفاعل + am not/isn't/aren't + going to + inf.

- e.g. • We aren't going to watch TV tonight.
• She isn't going to go to the party.

Yes/ No question السؤال بمعنى هل

Am/Is/Are + الفاعل + going to + inf. ... ?

- e.g. • A: Are you going to visit your grandparents?
B: Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
• A: Is she going to apply for that job?
B: Yes, she is. / No, she isn't

Question السؤال

Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.word أداة استفهام + am/is/are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر?

- e.g. • A: What are you going to do this weekend?
B: I'm going to see an action film.
• A: When is she going to arrive?
B: She is going to arrive next Monday.

Usage الاستخدام

1. Future plans: خطط مستقبلية

- e.g. • We are going to buy a car next month.

2. Future intentions: النية لعمل شيء في المستقبل

- e.g. • I am going to watch a movie tonight.

3. Prediction with evidence: التنبؤ لوجود دليل قائم الآن ومسبب للحدث

- e.g. • Look at the clouds! It's going to rain.

- He is going to have a party next week.

- We are going to go to the club in the evening.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Tomorrow is a weekend, so we to go to the zoo with our parents.
a) going b) are going c) going to d) will
2. Look at those dark clouds in the sky! It rain very soon.
a) going to b) are going to c) is going to d) will go to
3. Malak going to help her mother cook dinner tonight after school?
a) Are b) Will c) Does d) Is
4. The baby girl looks very tired, so she sleep for a long time.
a) is going to b) are going to c) going to d) will go
5. What you going to wear to the birthday party tomorrow afternoon?
a) is b) are c) do d) will
6. My brother has a new bicycle, so he is going it every day.
a) rode b) riding c) to ride d) ride
7. As decided, I sell my old car; it's wide and doesn't use much oil.
a) am not going to b) doesn't c) had to d) am going to
8. The students studied hard, so they pass the test next week.
a) is going to b) going to c) will go to d) are going to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sister (not/go) go to the birthday party because she is sick.
2. My mom (be) angry if I don't clean my room. I know her well.
3. Are you (go) to visit the park after school today?
4. He (going/be) a doctor when he grows up. He intends to do that.
5. They (not/go) visit the zoo this weekend because it's too far.
6. What (you/go) to do for your birthday next week?
7. Basmala (going to) be excited to see her friends at the party. She has told me.
8. We (not/go) swimming if it rains.
9. Are they (go) go to the concert next month?
10. I (going/buy) a new bike. It's my decision.

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar saved his money, so he buy a new video game tomorrow.
a) is going to b) are going to c) going to d) going
2. your family going to travel to the beach this summer vacation?
a) Will b) Is c) Does d) Do
3. The flowers need water, so I water them right now.
a) going to b) am going to c) am not going to d) are going
4. Where Yasmin going to celebrate her birthday party next Saturday?
a) are b) will c) is d) does
5. The children are very excited because they are visit the park tomorrow.
a) going b) going to c) go to d) will
6. Look at where you are walking! You fall down.
a) are going to b) have to c) going to d) going
7. My sister is sick, so she go to school today.
a) is going to b) are not going to c) is not going to d) not going to
8. Ahmed going to join the football team next month?
a) Are b) Will c) Does d) Is

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He (spend) the weekend in Marina as planned.
2. Are they (go) to help with the bake sale?
3. My mom (not/going) wash our clothes. The washing machine isn't working.
4. When are (you/go) have your birthday party?
5. I (going/visit) my aunt tomorrow. I have free time.
6. We (not) going to go to the event if it snows.
7. What is Amira (go) wear for the family photo?
8. I (going/join) the university of medicine. I've decided that.
9. Are you (go) to join the art class next month?
10. My dad (not/be) going to wake up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.

How to write about your future dreams.

كيفية الكتابة عن أحلامك المستقبلية.

الموضوع سهل وبسيط وشيق لذا سنتناوله بشكل مختلف. سأقدم إليك بعض الأسئلة مع إجابات تحتوي على أفكار مختلفة لمساعدتك على كتابة الموضوع.

ما هو حلمك المستقبلي؟

What is your dream for the future?

- My dream is to become a (وظيفة أحلامك).

لماذا تريد المضي قدماً خلف هذا الحلم؟

Why do you want to follow that dream?

- I want to be a (الوظيفة) because I like (السبب).

ماذا تحتاج للوصول لهذا الحلم؟

What do you need to do to reach your dream?

- I need to study hard and go to (الجامعة / الكلية).

Who do you want to help or what do you want to do in the future?

من الذي تريد مساعدته؟ أو ماذا تريد أن تفعل في المستقبل؟

- In the future, I hope to help (الفئة التي تريد مساعدتها).

بم ستشعر لو تحقق حلمك؟

How will you feel if your dream comes true?

- I will be happy when I become a (الحلم).

استخدم الإجابات التي أكملتتها لتكتب فقرة:

"My dream"

I have many dreams for my future. One big dream is to become a doctor. I want to help sick people feel better. I enjoy learning about the human body and how medicine works. I know I need to study hard at school to reach my dream. I will also go to university and learn more. I want to work in a hospital and help many people. My dream is important to me, and I will work hard to make it come true.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did Aya want to become?
a) Doctor. b) Teacher. c) Designer. d) Writer.
2. Where did Aya go after graduation?
a) A school. b) A workshop. c) A hospital. d) A factory.
3. What is the purpose of Aya's job?
a) To travel abroad. b) To meet friends.
c) To make people feel happy. d) To follow rules.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Aya joined a to learn more.
5. Aya's friends were very
6. Aya told her friends to and follow their dreams.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dr. El-Baz helped astronauts to the best landing sites on the moon
a) forget b) affect c) protect d) select
2. your goal and work hard to achieve it.
a) Sit b) Set c) Give d) Let

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

clever – delicious – nature – natural – feel

Yasmin wants to study medicine when she grows up. She made a list of what she must do: study science, read health books, and eat well. She always tries to eat (1) and healthy food. She believes in (2) ways to stay strong. Yasmin's teachers say she is very (3), and she always helps others (4) better.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Dr. Farouk El-Baz is a famous Egyptian scientist. He was born in Egypt in 1938. From a young age, he loved science and space. He studied hard and went to university in Egypt. Then, he continued his education in the United States. He worked with NASA, the American space agency. He helped the astronauts choose safe places to land on the moon. Dr. El-Baz is famous around the world for his smart ideas. He believes that education is the key to success. He also teaches students and encourages young people to follow their dreams. Dr. El-Baz always says that hard work can help anyone reach their goals. He is a great example of how dreams can come true.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** Dr. Farouk El-Baz helped NASA by
a) fixing rockets **b)** landing on the moon
c) choosing safe landing spots **d)** flying the spaceship
- 2.** The word "**famous**" in the passage means
a) tired **b)** well-known **c)** rich **d)** well-advised

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
4. Where did Dr. El-Baz continue his education?
5. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?
6. Why do you think Dr. El-Baz tells young people to work hard?

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**
- 1.** The sun is shining bright, so we have a picnic in the garden. We have planned that.
a) going to b) are going to c) is going to d) going
- 2.** When you going to finish your homework?
a) have b) are c) will d) do

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1.** How long (you/going) to stay in London?
- 2.** It's going (be) fun to go camping this summer. I know it's good.
- 3.** They (not/be) going to be home for dinner because they are out.
- 4.** Are you (go) to join the music class next year?

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your plans for the future"

[illegible]

مجاہد عنہ نہایت کتاب.

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The sky is cloudy. It's going (rainy).
2. Watch out! A car (come) towards you.
3. We (go) to the theater as intended.

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

aspiration (n)	طموح/تطلع	divide (d) (v)	يُقسَّم	unique (adj)	فريد/مميز
blame (d) (v)	يلوم	perfectly (adv)	بشكل مثالي/تماماً		
discouraged (adj)	محبط/مثبط العزيمة	shy (adj)	خجول		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

equally (adv)	بالتساوي/بمساواة	pathway (n)	ممر	shape (n)	شكل
gather (v) (ed)	يجمع	plant (n)	نبات	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل
instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	rainwater (n)	مياه الأمطار	water (ed) (v)	يروى/يسقى

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

along the way	على طول الطريق	lose hope	يفقد الأمل	take shape	يتخذ شكلاً/يتجسد
full of heart	ملء بالشفف	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ		
help with	يساعد في	share laughs	يشارك الضحك		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
lose يفقد	lost	lost	take يأخذ	took	taken

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
perfectly	بشكل مثالي	imperfectly	بشكل غير مثالي	win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

Read and complete with a word from the list:

equally – divide – lose – make

- 1 We the pizza so everyone gets a slice.
- 2 I shared the cake among all the children.
- 3 Even when it's hard, we should never hope.

LESSON 5

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

design (ed) (v)	يصمم	engineering (n)	الهندسة	focused (adj)	مُرَكَّز
-----------------	------	-----------------	---------	---------------	----------

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

studio (n)	استوديو/مرسم	summer (n)	الصيف	building (n)	مبنى
------------	--------------	------------	-------	--------------	------

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

stay/remain focused	يظل / يبقى مركزاً	do a job	يؤدي وظيفة	make money	يكسب مالاً
talent for	موهبة لـ	make a plan	يضع خطة	take a course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
win	يفوز	won	say	يقول	said

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions

التعريفات

perfectly	بشكل مثالي/تماماً	completely ⁽¹⁾ or fully done	(1) تماماً
shy	خجول	nervous and uncomfortable	(2) غير عادي
unique	مميز/فريد	unusual ⁽²⁾ or special	

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
aspiration (n)	طموح/تطلع	ambition	طموح
gather (v)	يجمع	collect	يجمع

Suffix

اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
aspire (v)	يطمح	-ation		تحويل إلى اسم		aspiration (n)	طموح/تطلع

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We gather flowers from the garden for grandma. The synonym of "gather" is ".....".
a) collect b) design c) make d) take
- To be is to be nervous and uncomfortable.
a) shy b) focused c) unique d) busy
- I aspire to become a great doctor one day. We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of "aspire".
a) -ous b) -ful c) -ion d) -ation

B Reading & Listening Skills

The Dream Team

Lesson 4

Pre-reading questions:

1 Do you think good friendships help with teamwork?

2 How can we support each other in teamwork?

Read the following text. How did children feel when the box clicked open?

SB page 80

CHAPTER TWO:

Does Lily feel shy now?

Days passed and the Water-Saving Machine started to take shape. But the team faced another problem. The machine worked, but not **perfectly**⁽¹⁾. Some members felt **discouraged**⁽²⁾.

Sara gathered them and said, "Our **purpose**⁽³⁾ isn't just to win the competition, it's to help people. Let's not lose hope."

Omar nodded, "We have an **aspiration**⁽⁴⁾ — to save water for our village. We can do this!"

Lily, who felt shy before, found her voice, "We can make it better if we test it again and again."

The team worked late, supporting each other. They respected every idea, and organized the work when **dividing**⁽⁵⁾ tasks, and sharing steps along the way. When Karim made a mistake, no one **blamed**⁽⁶⁾ him. Instead, they helped him fix it.

Finally, the machine was ready. It used rainwater to water plants and clean small pathways.

It wasn't perfect, but it was **unique**⁽⁷⁾ and full of heart.

The team were proud of what they built — not just the machine, but the friendship they shared.



(1) تماماً (2) محبط (3) غرض

(4) طموح (5) تقسيم (6) يلوم

(7) مميز/فريد



THE DREAM TEAM EXERCISES

CHAPTER 2

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

1. The Water Saving Machine started to take
a) time b) shape c) water d) prices
2. Some members felt
a) excited b) happy c) proud d) discouraged
3. When Karim made a mistake, no one him.
a) helped b) noticed c) blamed d) praised

2 Read and match column (A) with column (B):

(A)	(B)
1. Sara reminded her friends	(a) to save water.
2. Omar shared their aspiration	(b) when he made a mistake.
3. The team didn't blame Karim	(c) of their purpose.
	(d) to lose the competition.

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What was the problem that faced the team?
2. What happened when Karim made a mistake?
3. How was the machine useful?

4 Critical Thinking:

1. Why do you think we shouldn't blame people who make mistakes?
2. What was the main purpose of the team?

5 Who said this?

1. "Our purpose isn't just to win the competition. It's to help people."
2. "We can make it better if we test it again and again."

 Read and complete.

- My dream job is (the name of the job)
- I want to be a/an (job) to (your purpose)
- I need (computer/language) skills to achieve my goal to be a famous (job)
- I'm going to (study/practice/learn) to do my job.
- The most important part of my dream job is (helping others/making money)

أكمل النص حسب وظيفة أحلامك.

Team-Project Roundtable

عمل خريطة ذهنية لوظيفة أحلامى My Dream Job Mind Map

Make a Creative Mind Map to Show Your Future Dreams!

اصنع خريطة ذهنية إبداعية لتظهر أحلامك المستقبلية!

Instructions التعليمات:

1. Write your dream job in the center of the page.
- اكتب وظيفة أحلامك في وسط الصفحة.
2. Draw branches for these ideas: Plans, Predictions/Wants, Skills, Talents, and Ambitions.
- ارسم فروعاً لهذه الأفكار: الخطط، التوقعات/الرغبات، المهارات، المواهب، والطموحات.
3. Use your vocabulary words.
- استخدم كلماتك الجديدة (المفردات).
4. Write at least three sentences using "be going to".
- اكتب ثلاث جمل على الأقل باستخدام (be going to).
5. Add drawings and colors to make it fun and creative!
- أضف رسومات وألواناً لتجعلها ممتعة ومبدعة!

Presentation العرض التقديمي:

- Share your mind map with your group first, then share it with the whole class.
- اعرض خريطةك الذهنية أولاً على مجموعتك، ثم شاركها مع الصف بأكمله.



تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال
تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة
لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص ٢٢٢ كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
ambition طموح/تطلع	perfectly بشكل مثالي
collect يجمع	win يفوز
special مميز	

2 Comprehension strategies:

Finally, the machine was ready. It used rainwater to water plants and clean small pathways.
It wasn't perfect, but it was unique and full of heart.
The team was proud of what they built — not just the machine, but the friendship they shared.

1. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

.....

2. Do you think the team was successful? Why?

(مهارة التفكير النقدي)

.....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- The machine worked, but not perfectly.

- عملت الآلة، ولكن ليس بشكل مثالي.

☐ انطفأت الآلة، ولكن ليس بشكل مثالي.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- وكان الفريق فخوراً بما بنوه.

☐ The team was proud of what they said.

☐ The team was proud of what they built.

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Everyone's fingerprint بصمة is different; this means it's
 a) similar b) unique c) same d) repeated
2. When I dream of a better future, this is called
 a) aspiration b) embarrassment c) strength d) growth
3. If something is unique, it's unusual and
 a) cheap b) expensive c) special d) known
4. It's fair if we have equal rights. To change "fair" into a noun, add the
 a) prefix 'in-' b) prefix 'un-' c) suffix '-less' d) suffix '-ness'
5. Can you please help me all the colored pencils that fell on the floor?
 a) repeat b) correct c) gather d) treat
6. My father loves my brother and me He does not have a favorite child.
 a) instead b) perfectly c) equally d) more
7. Farida has a strong to be a famous artist when she grows up.
 a) pathway b) plant c) aspiration d) decision
8. He is a bit, so he does not like to speak in front of the class.
 a) discouraged b) shy c) brave d) focused
9. If you make a mistake, it is best not to your friend for it.
 a) blame b) think c) gather d) treat
10. The teacher will the class into two teams for the spelling game we are playing.
 a) treat b) gather c) divide d) blame
11. Rola was because it rained and she could not go to the park to play.
 a) encouraged b) unique c) shy d) discouraged
12. Good friends should always have for each other when they are feeling upset.
 a) plant b) encouraged c) empathy d) pathway

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

divide – rainwater – share – shy – change

Our class worked as a team to make a garden for birds. Some students planted flowers while others made signs. We learned to (1) the jobs equally. When the path took shape, we were so happy! One boy felt (2), but we helped him feel brave. We even used (3) to water the plants. Along the way, we learned to support each other and (4) laughs!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My brother, Aser, studies to learn how to build strong bridges.
a) medicine b) geography c) studio d) engineering
2. My sister, Heba a special card to give to her best friend.
a) landed b) reached c) designed d) thought
3. Marwan and his team had to a plan to win the game.
a) work b) look c) make d) appear
4. Yara remained during the race, so she won it.
a) clever b) natural c) focused d) absent
5. My brother, Karim, wants to a course to learn the guitar.
a) play b) think c) make d) take
6. Basmala is very good at drawing and sells her art to money.
a) do b) make c) see d) try
7. My uncle, a famous painter, has an art with large windows.
a) engineering b) piano c) voice d) studio
8. My friend Rawan has a special talent telling very funny jokes.
a) on b) at c) for d) with
9. To keep the garden beautiful, Wael has to a great job.
a) bring b) look c) do d) want

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

take – make – focused – design – for

My dream job is to be an architect مهندس معماري. I want to (1) homes for people. I have a strong talent (2) drawing and solving problems. I will (3) a course to learn more about buildings. In the summer, I will visit famous buildings to get ideas. I'll stay (4) and never give up. I want to do a job that helps others. I will make a plan and follow it.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A good friend will never you badly or say unkind things to you.
 a) blame b) gather c) treat d) divide
2. Before we start the project, we need to a good plan.
 a) think b) do c) make d) put

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

take – made – solve – did – lose

We had an aspiration to build a machine that cleans the park. At first, we (1) mistakes. Nobody blamed anyone. Instead, we helped each other to (2) problems. One girl was discouraged, but we told her not to (3) hope. Our teamwork made the machine (4) shape. It wasn't perfectly done, but it was fun.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sherif (go) to visit Alexandria; he has decided to go there.
2. What are you going (do) during the weekend?
3. I intend to travel next winter. I (going) spend a week in Luxor.
4. (You are) going to ride a horse?

4 Complete the following dialog:

Lina wants to be a fashion designer.

Lina : I made a plan for my future.

Omar : (1) is it?

Lina : I want to be a fashion designer.

Omar : That's a nice job!

Lina : I have a (2) for matching colors.

Omar : (3) you study designing?

Lina : Yes, I'll start next summer.

Omar : I hope your dream will (4) true.

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A Vocabulary

1 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box.

plan – career – succeed – talent – ambition

1. I have a big to become a doctor.
2. She has a special for music.
3. It's important to make a good for your future.
4. You will if you work hard and stay focused.

B Language

2 Read and complete the sentences with "going to".

1. I study medicine at university.
2. He open his own studio one day.
3. We learn new skills this summer.
4. I take a course to improve my English next summer.

C Writing

3 Write a review of (60-80) words about your dream job.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A) Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة
achieve (d) (v)	يحقق/ينجح
aspiration (n)	طموح/تطلع
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء
blame (d) (v)	يلوم
career (n)	حياة مهنية
contact (ed) (v)	يتواصل مع
designer (n)	مصمم
discouraged (adj)	محبط/مئبط العزيمة
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف
divide (d) (v)	يقسم
education (n)	تعليم
effort (n)	جهد/مجهود
engineering (n)	الهندسة
focused (adj)	مركّز
gift (n)	موهبة/هبة/هدية
graduate (d) (v)	يتخرج
match (ed) (v)	يتطابق/يلتزم
natural (adj)	طبيعي
opportunity (n)	فرصة
participate (d) (v)	يشترك
passion (n)	شغف
path (n)	مسار/طريق
perfectly (adv)	بشكل مثالي/تماماً
profession (n)	مهنة
purpose (n)	غرض
shy (adj)	خجول
skillful (adj)	ماهر
success (n)	نجاح
talent (n)	موهبة
training (n)	تدريب
unique (adj)	فريد/مميز
university (n)	جامعة

B) Language

"be" going to سوف

Affirmative الإثبات

الفاعل + am/is/are + going to + inf.

- Mona **is going to** visit her grandma next weekend.
- They **are going to** move to a new house next month.

Negative النفي

الفاعل + am not/isn't/aren't + going to + inf.

- Mona **isn't going to** visit her grandma next weekend.
- They **aren't going to** move to a new house next month.

Question السؤال

Am/Is/Are + الفاعل + going to + inf. ...?

- A: **Are you going to** travel to Aswan next weekend?

B: Yes, I am.

Q. word + am/is/are + الفاعل + **going to** + inf. ...?

- A: What **are you going to** do this weekend?

B: I'm **going to** see an action movie.

- A: When is she **going to** arrive?

B: She **is going to** arrive next Monday.

C) Speaking

Talking about future goals and dream jobs

1. What is your dream goal/job for the future?
 - My dream job for the future is to become a doctor.
2. Why do you like that? / Why do you want it?
 - I want to be a doctor because I love helping sick people feel better.
3. How can you achieve it?
 - I can achieve it by studying hard.
4. What skills do you need for that job?
 - I need to be good at science.
5. Where would you like to work in the future?
 - I would like to work in a big hospital.

A

Listening



1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the speaker's dream job?

a) An artist.

b) A doctor.

c) A farmer.

d) A pilot.

2. Where does the speaker want to show their work?

a) In a shop.

b) In a zoo.

c) In a museum.

d) In a kitchen.

3. How does the speaker prepare?

a) Reads books only.

b) Practices drawing daily.

c) Teaches music.

d) Sings songs.

B) Listen and complete:

4. is my favorite thing.

5. They will go to to learn more.

6. They love to show their work to and friends.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Kareem followed his and became a great football player.

a) reality

b) passion

c) worry

d) workshop

2. It will take a lot of to clean up this room.

a) effect

b) gift

c) talent

d) effort

B

Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

graduated – achieve – support – designed – workshop

Omar was unsure about what to be when he grew up. One day, he joined a (1)..... on building robots. It was exciting! He started to think about becoming an engineer. With his teacher's (2)..... Omar learned how to build small machines. He (3)..... with great results. Omar believes that with hard work, he can (4)..... his goal and enjoy his profession in the future.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Teaching is my future dream. I love helping others learn. I see my teachers every day and think they have a wonderful job. I wish to study at a good university so I can become a great teacher one day. I will need education, training, and lots of skills. My goal is to teach young children and help them succeed. I believe every child can achieve success if they try. I practice speaking clearly and reading loudly. One day, I'll smile when I see my students understand something new. I want my wish to come true and make a big difference in the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The writer wants to help children
a) paint pictures b) find toys c) learn and succeed d) play games
2. The underlined word "achieve" in the passage means
a) forget b) reach or do something well
c) travel d) lose something important

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
4. What does the writer do to get ready for teaching?
.....

5. What does the word "them" refer to?
.....

6. Do you think teaching is an important job? Why?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hana has her art supplies, so she going to paint a picture.
a) are b) is c) am d) be
2. The teacher is happy because the students perform a play tomorrow.
a) is going to b) going to c) going d) are going to

6

- 1

7

1

Reem

Kareem :

Reem

Kareem :

Reem

Kareem :

Reem

Kareem

D

8

Mahmoud.

To :

From :

Subject :

Unit

6

GLOBAL CITIZENS



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify the main idea and specific details in texts about global citizenship and community rules.

Use context clues to understand new vocabulary related to global responsibility.

Listening

Identify the main idea and specific details in spoken texts about community or environmental topics.

Infer the meaning of key expressions from context.

Speaking

Describe good citizen behaviors using correct vocabulary and structures.
Explain community or school rules clearly.

Language

Use "must" and "mustn't" accurately to express rules and obligations.

Writing

Write a social media post list of rules for being a good citizen using target structures and vocabulary.

• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان؛
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
• قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الرجوع
لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

A VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

citizen (n)	مواطن	handbook (n)	دليل / كتيب	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	improve (d) (v)	يحسن	unfair (adj)	غير عادل
global (adj)	كوني/عالمي	justice (n)	عدالة/إنصاف	volunteer (ed) (v/n)	يتطوع/متطوع

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

culture (n)	ثقافة	nature (n)	طبيعة	rubbish (n)	قمامة/ثفايات
equal (adj)	متساو	plant (ed) (v/n)	يزرع/نبات	rule (n)	قاعدة
law (n)	قانون	quality (n)	صفة	tradition (n)	تقليد

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do good things	يفعل أشياء جيدة	in peace	في سلام	save water/electricity	يوفر ماء/كهرباء
follow a law/rule	يتبع قانوناً/قاعدة	keep safe/clean	يبقى آمناً/نظيف	show respect to	يظهر الاحترام لـ
in an equal way	بمساواة	no matter	لا يهم	treat with care	يحسن التعامل مع
in need	في حاجة	on the ground	على الأرض	unkind/unfair to	غير لطيف/غير عادل مع

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
throw	threw	thrown	keep	kept	kept

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب	save	يوفر	waste	يهدر/يضيع

Read and complete with a word from the list:

equal – follow – tradition – fair – unfair

- It's important to laws to keep everyone safe and happy.
- We shared the cake in parts so everyone got the same.
- It's if one team gets more time to play than the other.
- Making sweets for Eid is a fun we all enjoy.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 It's important to + inf.

من المهم أن

- It is important to respect different cultures.

بواسطة

2 by + (v+ing)

- We can change the world by making good choices and caring for others.

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

global citizen	مواطن عالمي	being fair to people from different countries and cultures ⁽¹⁾	ثقافات (1)
encourage	يشجع	to help people do good things	يعامل (2)
improve	يحسّن	to make something better	متساو (3)
protect	يحمي	to look after or save	
unfair	غير عادل	not to treat ⁽²⁾ people in an equal ⁽³⁾ way	

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
improve (v)	يحسّن	develop	يطور
plant (v)	يزرع	grow	يزرع
rubbish (n)	قمامة/نفايات	trash/litter/waste	قمامة/نفايات

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
globe (n)	كون	-al		تحويل إلى صفة		global (adj)	كوني/عالمي
electric (adj)	كهربى	-ity		تحويل إلى اسم		electricity (n)	كهرباء

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى العكس		fair (adj)	عادل	unfair (adj)	غير عادل
im-				polite (adj)	مؤدب	impolite (adj)	غير مؤدب

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Is it good to respect how other people live and what they believe?
- 2 What can you do to help your school and your community?
- 3 Do you think small actions can change the world?

Read the following text. How can you change the world?

SB Page 88

School Handbook: Being a Global Citizen

At our school, we believe every student is part of a community and is a citizen⁽¹⁾ of the world. As global⁽²⁾ citizens, we must follow each rule and law to keep everyone safe and happy. We mustn't be unkind or unfair to others. Instead, we should be kind and help each other every day.

To protect our planet, we must keep our school clean and save water and electricity. We mustn't waste food or throw rubbish on the ground. We also must encourage students to volunteer to help others in need and to protect animals and nature.

Being a good global citizen means showing respect to everyone, listening to others, and working together in peace⁽³⁾. We believe it is fair to treat all people with care, no matter where they come from. It is important to respect different cultures, languages, and traditions⁽⁴⁾.

In our school, we learn to solve problems together and think about how we can improve⁽⁵⁾ our world. We must remember that even small actions can make a big difference. We can plant trees, share with others, and help keep our community safe and clean.

At our school, you are not just a student; you are a young leader who can change the world by making good choices and caring for others.

Post-reading questions:

Read again and answer the following questions:

- 1 What are two things you must do as a global citizen?.....
- 2 Find from the text the antonym of "waste":
- 3 What does the word "encourage" in the second paragraph mean?
a) Make them feel bad. b) Ask them politely. c) Give them support them to do something.



- (1) مواطن
- (2) عالمي
- (3) السلام
- (4) تقاليد
- (5) يُحسنُ

Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارات القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة م 237 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym		Opposite/Antonym	
develop	يحسن	fair	عادل
grow	يزرع	polite	مهذب
encourage	يشجع	waste	يهدر

2 Comprehension strategies:

To protect our planet, we must keep our school clean and save water and electricity. We mustn't waste food or throw rubbish on the ground. We also must encourage students to volunteer to help others in need and to protect animals and nature.

1. What is the text about?

(استخراج الفكرة الرئيسية للنص)

2. The opposite of "protect" is "....."

(تخمين مضاد كلمة)

a) save

b) keep

c) damage

d) volunteer

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- We should be kind and help each other every day.

☐

- يجب أن نكون طيبين ونساعد بعضنا البعض كل يوم.

☐

- يجب أن نكون أقوياء ونزور بعضنا البعض كل يوم.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- لا يجب أن نهدر الطعام أو نرمي القمامة على الأرض.

☐

We mustn't waste food or throw rubbish on the ground.

☐

We mustn't always waste food and throw rubbish into the sea.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. help clean the park every Friday.
a) Writers b) Artists c) Managers d) Volunteers
2. Music and food are part of every country's
a) sport b) law c) food d) culture
3. To be fair means you believe in
a) justice b) activity c) treatment d) advice
4. Amal is a good because she helps her neighbors and respects others.
a) tradition b) rule c) citizen d) maker
5. We must the forests, so animals can live safely.
a) damage b) protect c) throw d) waste
6. A good student follows every in the classroom.
a) rule b) roll c) rail d) role
7. What can I do to my handwriting?
a) move b) improve c) do d) appear
8. A good citizen must be honest and
a) poor b) rich c) irresponsible d) responsible
9. I love walking in the forest because I love
a) sky b) law c) sand d) nature
10. My teacher always me to read more books.
a) encourages b) protects c) saves d) throws
11. We must not throw in the street or on the beach.
a) rubbish b) trees c) plant d) air
12. The teacher gave me a with all the school rules inside.
a) handbook b) pen c) plant d) desk

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

protect – prove – volunteer – global – shows

We live on one big planet, so we must act like (1) citizens. A good citizen helps others and (2) respect to all. We can follow rules and keep our streets clean. Many people (3) to help those in need. A small action like planting a tree can (4) nature. We should learn how to do good things.

1. We helped a family that was need of clothes.
a) at b) in c) for d) off
2. It's always good to be when you speak to others.
a) unfair b) polite c) impolite d) global
3. We must always respect to our teachers and parents.
a) follow b) save c) show d) treat
4. citizens must be aware of the challenges that face the world and how to share in solving them.
a) Local b) Global c) Foreign d) Community
5. Basmala always tries to good things for others.
a) do b) think c) treat d) appear
6. We all want to grow up peace and safety.
a) off b) in c) over d) of
7. All students must be treated an equal way at school.
a) in b) at c) on d) from
8. My dad taught me how to electricity at home.
a) save b) do c) follow d) flow
9. Do you think small actions can the world?
a) share b) check c) change d) charge
10. I to help clean the park with my class.
a) protected b) volunteered c) planted d) threw
11. It's to punish this boy, he hasn't done anything wrong.
a) fair b) fine c) full d) unfair

in – on – respect – electricity – throw

To be a global citizen, you should show (1)..... to different people and cultures. We must live (2)..... peace and help those in need. You can improve your school by keeping it clean. Don't (3)..... rubbish on the ground. Save water and (4)..... . A good citizen follows laws and rules. Let's be kind, fair, and helpful — no matter where we live.

أدخل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Asking and answering about making a good citizen.

السؤال والإجابة عن كيفية صنع المواطن الصالح.

What makes a good citizen? ما الذي يجعل الشخص مواطناً صالحاً؟

A good citizen respects others and follows laws. المواطن الصالح يحترم الآخرين، ويتبع القوانين.

What can you do to help your school and your community? ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل لمساعدة مدرستك ومجتمعك؟

I can keep the place clean, help others and save water and electricity. يمكننا الحفاظ على نظافة المكان، ومساعدة الآخرين، وتوفير الماء والكهرباء.

Can you give an example of a good citizen? هل يمكنك إعطاء مثال على مواطن صالح؟

Yes, someone who helps people in need. نعم، شخص يساعد المحتاجين.

What are the things you must do as a global citizen? ما الأشياء التي يجب أن تفعلها كمواطن عالمي؟

I must respect others and help make the world better. يجب أن أحترم الآخرين وأساعد في جعل العالم أفضل.

Do you think small actions can change the world? هل تعتقد أن الأفعال الصغيرة يمكن أن تغير العالم؟

Yes, small actions can make a big difference. نعم، الأفعال الصغيرة يمكن أن تحدث فرقاً كبيراً.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Mona is asking Ziad about a good citizen.

Mona : What makes a good citizen?

Ziad : A good citizen shows (1)..... to others and follows laws.

Mona : (2)..... I have to help others too?

Ziad : Yes, you do. Helping others is very important.

Mona : (3)..... I help by sharing my lunch?

Ziad : Yes, you can. That's a kind thing to do.

Mona : I will do that every day.

Ziad : You're already a (4)..... citizen!

How to write about being a Global Citizen.

كيفية الكتابة عن أن تكون مواطناً عالمياً.

1 What is a global citizen?
ما هو المواطن العالمي؟
e.g. A global citizen is someone who does good things for the world.

2 How can you help the world around you?
كيف يمكنك أن تساعد العالم حولك؟
e.g. I can show respect to others by being kind and polite.

3 What do you do to protect nature?
ماذا تفعل لحماية الطبيعة؟
e.g. I follow rules and help my school stay clean.

4 Why is it important to protect nature?
لماذا من المهم أن نحمل الطبيعة؟
e.g. We should protect nature to have a better life.

Being a global citizen

5 How can you treat people in a fair and kind way?
كيف يمكنك معاملة الناس بشكل عادل وبعطف؟
e.g. Being fair, kind, and helpful makes the world better.

استخدم الأفكار السابقة لكتابة فقرتك:

راجع علامات الترقيم في مقدمة الكتاب.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نموذج مجاب عنه:

"Being a global citizen"

Being a global citizen means helping people and caring about the world. A good citizen follows rules and shows respect to others. We should protect nature and never throw rubbish on the ground. It's also important to save water and electricity. We can volunteer to help people in need and treat everyone in an equal way. Even small actions can improve the world. Being kind, fair, and helpful makes us true global citizens. Let's all try to do good things every day.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You should practice every day to your drawing.
 a) share b) succeed c) improve d) focus
2. He is a He works for no money.
 a) dentist b) teacher c) volunteer d) coach

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

volunteer – responsible – nature – wastes – saves

You don't need to be famous to do something good. Even small actions matter. A child who (1)..... water or switches off the lights is a great citizen. People can (2)..... to clean parks or help their neighbors. We must protect (3)..... and keep it safe. A global citizen treats people in an equal way. Everyone should be (4).....

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ali and Nour are talking about good citizens.

Ali : What can you do to help your school and your community?

Nour : I can (1)..... the place clean.

Ali : (2)..... you save water, too?

Nour : Yes, I do. I turn off the tap when I brush my teeth.

Ali : That's smart. You are good.

Nour : Thank you! (3)..... do you do as a good citizen?

Ali : I do many things. I usually (4)..... electricity at home.

Nour : That's great, Ali!

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A good citizen"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

citizenship (n)	مواطنة	necessary (adj)	ضروري	science experiment (n)	تجربة علمية
duty (n)	واجب	respect (ed) (v/n)	يحترم/احترام	volunteer (v)	يتطوع
environment (n)	بيئة	responsibility (n)	مسؤولية		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

actually (adv)	فعلاً/فى الواقع	hurry (y) (ied) (v)	يسرع	paint (ed) (v)	يدهن/يلون
allow (ed) (v)	يسمح	kindness (n)	عطف/طيبة	prize (n)	جائزة
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع	museum (n)	متحف	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل/يعالج

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

beach clean-ups	أعمال تنظيف الشاطئ	contribute to	يساهم فى	for the rights of	من أجل حقوق
catch the train	يلحق القطار	do a duty	يؤدي واجباً	take care of	يعتنى بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
catch يلحق	caught	caught	take يأخذ	took	taken

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
real	حقيقى	unreal	غير حقيقى	respect	يحترم/احترام	disrespect	يقلل احترام

Read and complete with a word from the list:

collect – do – responsibility – make

- 1 It's our to protect our planet.
- 2 We will plastic bottles to help clean the park.
- 3 It's important to your duty like helping your parents at home.

LESSON 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

clean-ups (n)	حملات تنظيف	entertain (ed) (v)	يسلّي	plastic pollution (n)	التلوث البلاستيكي
convince (d) (v)	يقنع	generation (n)	جيل	reusable (adj)	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
danger (n)	خطر	living creature (n)	مخلوق/كائن حي	terrible (adj)	فظيف/رهيب
diversity (n)	تنوع/اختلاف	ocean (n)	محيط	threat (n)	تهديد

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

act (ed) (v)	يتصرف	connect (ed) (v)	يصل/يوصل	right (n)	حق
amount (n)	كمية	describe (d) (v)	يصف	save (d) (v)	ينقذ
beauty (n)	جمال	friendly (adj)	ودود	science book (n)	كتاب علوم
bottle (n)	زجاجة	item (n)	عنصر	sea animal (n)	حيوان بحري
circle (n)	دائرة	quality (n)	جودة	sea life (n)	الحياة البحرية

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

all in all	في المجمل	important for	هام لـ	take action	يتخذ إجراء
depend on	يعتمد على	in danger	في خطر	throw ... into	يرمى في داخل
impact on	تأثير على	on/at the beach	على الشاطئ	To start off	في البداية

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
throw	يرمى	threw	thrown	pay	يدفع
				paid	paid

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
reduce	يقلل	increase	يزيد	friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود

Read and complete with a word from the list:

into – entertain – take – right – on

- 1 My mom likes to the baby by singing songs.
- 2 We should never throw plastic the ocean.
- 3 Everyone has the to feel safe at school.
- 4 We must action to keep our school clean.

Vocabulary Builder

Definitions التعريفات

environment	البيئة	the world around ⁽¹⁾ us, like land, air, and water	(1) حول
responsibility	مسئولية	to do your duty ⁽²⁾ and take care of something	(2) الواجب
volunteer	يتطوع	to give your time to help others without being paid ⁽³⁾	(3) يدفع

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع	gather	يجمع
prize (n)	جائزة	award	جائزة
take care of	يعتنى بـ	look after	يعتنى بـ
act (ed) (v)	يتصرف	behave	يتصرف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
kind (adj)	عطوف/طيب	-ness		تحول إلى اسم		kindness (n)	عطوف/طيبة

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
re-		تعطي معنى الإعادة		usable (adj)	صالح للاستخدام	reusable (adj)	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We will collect old books to give them to the library. The synonym of "collect" is ".....".
 a) act
 b) respect
 c) convince
 d) gather
- It's kind to help someone who falls down. We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of "kind".
 a) -ness
 b) -ion
 c) -ist
 d) -er
- The old chair is still usable. We add the prefix "....." to "usable" to make it usable again.
 a) en-
 b) re-
 c) im-
 d) in-

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What are Mariam and Ziad planning to do for their project?
- 2 Why does Mariam say the project is important?

1. Listen to Mariam and Ziad talking about a school project.

Mariam Hi Zaid ! Are you ready for the new project?

Zaid I think so. Is it the one about helping our community?

Mariam Yes! We're planning to clean the park and plant flowers.

Zaid That sounds fun! Why are we doing this?

Mariam Because we are learning about global **citizenship**⁽¹⁾. It means we must help others and take care of the environment.

Zaid I see. So we are volunteering.

Mariam Exactly! It's our **responsibility**⁽²⁾ as students.

Zaid I like it. We can also make posters about keeping places clean.

Mariam Great idea! We can show respect by working together kindly.

Zaid When are we doing it?

Mariam On Saturday morning. Don't forget your gloves!

Zaid I won't. Let's make a big **impact**⁽³⁾!



Lesson 2

SB page 90



(1) المواطنة

(2) المسؤولية

(3) تأثير

2. Listen to a text about Hani.

My friend Hani is a great global citizen. He respects people from all **cultures**⁽¹⁾ and loves learning about the world. Last week, he joined a community project to plant trees in our town. Hani says, "Everyone can **contribute**⁽²⁾ to a better planet." He also collects clothes to give to people in need. His actions show how to care for others and the environment. Hani inspires me to be a global citizen, too. I want to respect others and help my community, just like him, to make the world a better place.

Post-listening questions:

- 1 What does Hani do to be a global citizen?
- 2 What community project did Hani join?
- 3 What does Hani collect to help others?
- 4 Do you think Hani is a good citizen?

SB page 91

(1) ثقافات

(2) يساهم في

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Why is water important for people and animals?
- 2 What problems can happen if people throw rubbish into the sea?
- 3 Have you ever seen plastic pollution near the sea or rivers? What did you think about it?

 Read the following text to find about saving our oceans.

SB page 92

A Global Responsibility

Our oceans are in **danger**⁽¹⁾, and we must act now to protect them. It is our global **responsibility**⁽²⁾ to save the sea animals and plants that live in this beautiful **environment**⁽³⁾.

To start off, we mustn't throw rubbish into the sea or leave plastic on the beach because they have a terrible **impact**⁽⁴⁾ on sea life and water quality. We must show respect for the oceans and for the rights of all people to have clean water and beaches. We mustn't use plastic bottles and bags every day. Instead, we can use **reusable**⁽⁵⁾ items to help protect the oceans.



Oceans connect people from many cultures and countries, showing the beauty of **diversity**⁽⁶⁾ around the world. We all share the sea, so it is our duty to keep it safe. We can **participate**⁽⁷⁾ in beach **clean-ups**⁽⁸⁾, teach others about saving the oceans, and **reduce**⁽⁹⁾ waste at home and at school.

All in all, every small action makes a difference. If we all work together, we can protect the oceans for future **generations**⁽¹⁰⁾ and for every living **creature**⁽¹¹⁾ that depends on the sea.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| (1) خطر | (2) مسئولية |
| (3) البيئة | (4) تأثير |
| (5) قابل لإعادة الاستخدام | (6) التنوع |
| (7) يشترك | (8) حملات تنظيف |
| (9) يقلل | (10) أجيال |
| (11) مخلوق | |

Post-reading questions:

(A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main problem the text talks about?
2. Name two things the text says we mustn't do to protect the oceans.
5. Find a word in the text that means the opposite of "increase".

(B) Choose the correct answer:

3. In the first paragraph, the text says our oceans are in "danger". What does "danger" mean?
 - a) Safe.
 - b) Very good.
 - c) A risk or threat.
 - d) Clean.
4. What is the main purpose of this text?
 - a) To entertain the reader with facts about the ocean.
 - b) To teach people about different types of sea animals.
 - c) To convince readers to take action and protect the oceans.
 - d) To describe a day at the beach.
5. What kind of text is "A Global Responsibility"?
 - a) A funny story that makes you laugh.
 - b) A science book with lots of facts and diagrams.
 - c) A message that tries to convince you to protect the oceans.
 - d) A list of rules for swimming in the sea.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة ص 247-248 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
very big sea بحر كبير جداً	real حقيقي
save يحمي	connect يصل/يوصل
let يسمح	reduce يقلل

2 Comprehension strategies:

Read the following, then answer the questions:

To start off, we mustn't throw rubbish into the sea or leave plastic on the beach because it has a **terrible** impact on sea life and water quality. We must show respect for the oceans and for the rights of all people to have clean water and beaches.

1. Why mustn't we throw rubbish into the sea?

(استخراج معلومة)

2. The word "**terrible**" is similar in meaning to "....."

a) very good

b) fantastic

c) delicious

d) very bad

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- We can use reusable items to help protect the oceans.

☐

- يمكننا استخدام عناصر قابلة لإعادة الاستخدام للمساعدة في حماية المحيطات.

☐

- يمكننا استخدام عناصر غير صالحة للاستخدام للمساعدة في حماية المحيطات.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- يجب أن نتصرف الآن لحماية المحيطات.

☐

We must act now to protect the oceans.

☐

We must wait now to protect the oceans.

LESSON

2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher talked about how animals need a safe to live.
a) duty b) kindness c) responsibility d) environment
2. We should always animals with kindness.
a) treat b) catch c) collect d) allow
3. Judy has to take care her baby sister when her mom is busy.
a) in b) on c) of d) at
4. A good citizen will always their duty to help their country.
a) stay b) do c) make d) take
5. Learning about the country's history is an important part of
a) friendship b) kindness c) environment d) citizenship
6. The students the rubbish from the school playground. They will be good citizens.
a) allowed b) collected c) treated d) respected
7. Marwan is late, he should to catch the school bus.
a) hurry b) paint c) clean d) respect
8. The teacher the students to play a game after their hard work.
a) thought b) allowed c) treated d) respected
9. Adam had to run very fast to the train to Alexandria.
a) catch b) see c) dive d) stop
10. Badr knows it is his to take out the rubbish on Tuesdays.
a) site b) duty c) right d) environment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

throw – responsibility – collected – connected – respect

Our class decided to clean the park near our school. It is our (1) to take care of the environment. We wore old clothes and used gloves. Some children painted signs to ask people not to (2) rubbish. Others (3) rubbish in bags. It was our duty as good citizens. I felt happy to show (4) to nature and help the Earth.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The movie was a bit long, but all all, Aida really enjoyed it.
a) in b) on c) at d) with
2. The city decided to action to make the parks cleaner for everyone.
a) go b) take c) watch d) find
3. The new bridge the two small towns across the river.
a) connected b) convinced c) entertained d) stayed
4. Our school is organizing beach to help the sea creatures.
a) bags b) items c) bottles d) clean-ups
5. Plants depend the sun and water in order to grow tall.
a) at b) on c) for d) by
6. Mom gave me a/an bag to carry my lunch every day to use it again and again.
a) terrible b) reusable c) friendly d) important
7. Every living needs food, water, and air to live.
a) circle b) pollution c) danger d) creature
8. I finally my dad to let me stay up a little later tonight.
a) saved b) entertained c) convinced d) described
9. You should the amount كمية of fat you eat to be in good health.
a) keep b) increase c) reduce d) produce
10. Smoking has a terrible on health.
a) impact b) cause c) reason d) option
11. Education aims at building up useful
a) reasons b) results c) radiations d) generations
12. Oceans connect people from other cultures, showing the beauty of around the world.
a) rivers b) rains c) diversity d) security

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

into – on – reusable – generation – pollution

To start off, oceans are home to many living creatures like dolphins, fish, and other sea creatures. Sadly, plastic (1)..... is bad for these animals. People throw bottles and bags (2)..... the sea. A science book I read said this could hurt sea life for years. We should use (3)..... bags and stop throwing waste. All in all, it's important for every (4)..... to protect the oceans.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

1 must/mustn't

يجب أن/ يجب ألا

e.g. • Students **must** follow the school rules.

• People **mustn't** smoke in hospitals.

Usage الاستخدام

- We use "**must/ mustn't**" to talk about things that are necessary/forbidden to do.

- تستخدم (must/mustn't) (يجب أن/ ألا) للتحدث عن الأشياء التي من الضروري فعلها أو من الممنوع فعلها.

Affirmative الإثبات

Form

التكوين

Negative النفي

Subject + **must** + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل

Subject + **mustn't** + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل

e.g. • We **must** listen to our teachers carefully.

e.g. • You **mustn't** park your car here. It's not allowed.

لا حظ أن

We can use **mustn't** with:

يمكن استخدام (mustn't) مع الكلمات التالية:

it is forbidden / banned / not allowed / محظور / against the law / ضد القانون / غير مسموح

Yes/ No question

السؤال بمعنى هل

Question

السؤال

Wh- question

السؤال بأداة استفهام

Must + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل

Q. Word + **must/mustn't** +

subject + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل

e.g. • A: **Must** we be quiet in the library?

B: Yes, we must.

B: No, we mustn't.

e.g. • A: **What must** you do at the museum?

B: We **must** follow rules.

Got it ?

يمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعومة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We (**must**) feed the animals at the zoo. It's forbidden.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**mustn't**) لوجود **forbidden** الدالة على المنع.

2 We must (**respecting**) our neighbors.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**respect**) لوجود **must** التي يتبعها الفعل في المصدر.

Tense الزمن	The Present Simple المضارع البسيط	The Present Continuous المضارع المستمر	The Past Simple الماضي البسيط
Usage الاستخدام	It is used to express habits, routines and facts. نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وروتين يومي وحقائق	To talk about things that are happening or not happening now. نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث/ لا تحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).	To talk about actions that started and ended in the past. يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.
Affirmative الإثبات	I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + inf. • They go to school on foot. He, She, It, اسم مفرد + inf. + (s, es, ies) • Sama goes to school on foot.	am/is/are + (v+ing) + الفاعل • I'm doing my homework now. • Sara is sleeping right now. • The children are playing outside.	التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل • Sally watched a movie last night. • We walked to school yesterday.
Negative النفي	I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + don't + inf. • They don't go to school on foot. He, She, It, اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf. • Sama doesn't go to school on foot.	am not/isn't/aren't + (v+ing) + الفاعل • I'm not doing my homework now. • Sara isn't sleeping right now. • The children aren't playing outside.	الفاعل + didn't + inf. • Sally didn't watch a movie last night. • We didn't walk to school yesterday.
Yes/No Question السؤال بهل	Do + I, we, they, you + inf. + ...? • Do you go to school on foot? Does + he, she, it, + inf. + ...? • Does Sama go to school on foot?	Is + he, she, it + (v+ing)? • Is Sara sleeping right now? Are + you, they, we + (v+ing)? • Are the children playing outside?	Did + الفاعل + inf. ...? • Did Sally watch a movie last night? • Did you walk to school yesterday?
Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Wh-word + do/does + الفاعل + inf. ...? • How do you go to school? • How does Sama go to school?	Wh-word + is/are + الفاعل + (v+ing) ...? • What is Sara doing now? • Where are the children playing ?	Wh-word + did + الفاعل + inf. ...? • How did you go to school yesterday?



تممكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 (Does) Sama buy a new dress yesterday?

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (Did) لأن السؤال في زمن الماضي.

2 What is Sally (does) now?

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (doing) لأن السؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر.

3 Hamza (is walking) to school every day.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (walks) لأن الجملة في زمن المضارع البسيط والفاعل مفرد.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When the traffic light is red, cars go, they have to stop.
a) can b) should c) mustn't d) doesn't
2. A: Hany wear a life jacket when he is on the small boat? B: Yes, it's necessary.
a) Is b) Has c) Was d) Must
3. Hind and her sister usually television after they finish their lunch.
a) watch b) are watching c) watched d) watches
4. Hadeel can't answer the phone because she a shower right now.
a) takes b) is taking c) was taking d) took
5. Sawsan a book at the moment; she is listening to music.
a) didn't read b) isn't reading c) doesn't read d) wasn't reading
6. Khadija a delicious pizza for her family last weekend.
a) makes b) made c) is making d) making
7. We to the zoo last month because it was closed for repairs.
a) don't go b) didn't go c) aren't going d) weren't going
8. What time Abdullah usually get up for school?
a) does b) is c) has d) do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Why (the players/must) shake hands after the football game is finished?
2. When you finish reading, you must (to put) the book back on the library shelf.
3. Mr. Emad (give) us much homework yesterday.
4. My little sister, Huda, (not/like) to eat vegetables at all.
5. Look! Heba (draw) a beautiful picture of a flower at the moment.
6. Nashwa (not/write) an email now; she is playing a game on the computer.
7. We (see) a very funny clown at the circus last Saturday.
8. The students (not/have) any homework to do last Friday.
9. How often (you/visit) your grandmother during the year, Basma?
10. Are (you/feel) better now after taking the medicine?

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What Donia do to keep her room tidy and clean yesterday?
a) did b) can c) does d) must
2. After playing outside in the rain, Emad must his hands with soap.
a) washing b) wash c) washes d) to wash
3. The school bus wait for students who are late in the morning.
a) never b) doesn't c) isn't d) don't
4. Does Saif his grandfather on the farm every weekend?
a) help b) helping c) helped d) to help
5. Listen! Lobna a beautiful song with her lovely voice now.
a) sings b) sang c) is singing d) was singing
6. the baby crying loudly at this very moment?
a) Does b) Did c) Is d) Was
7. Fadel his bicycle to the park yesterday.
a) rides b) is riding c) rode d) will ride
8. Last winter, my friend Hosni to ski in the high mountains.
a) learned b) learns c) is learning d) learning

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (I/must) tell my teachers if I see a stranger near the school gate?
2. To enter the competition, Esraa must (drawing) a picture of her beautiful family.
3. You (must not to) drop your rubbish on the clean city street.
4. Jana (go) to the library to read new books every month.
5. (Saif/brush) his teeth two times every day?
6. We can't play outside now because it (rain) very heavily.
7. Look at the cat! It (chase) a little mouse in the garden now.
8. My mother (buy) me a new pair of shoes last week.
9. (your family/visit) the Pyramids when you were in Giza last year?
10. Be careful! The baby (put) the small toy in her mouth right now.

How to write about a global responsibility

كيفية الكتابة عن مسؤولية عالمية

What does "a global responsibility" mean?

ماذا تعني المسؤولية العالمية؟

e.g. A global responsibility means that we all have a job to protect the Earth.

Why is it important to protect the Earth?

لماذا من المهم أن نحفظ الأرض؟

e.g. Helping nature is helping ourselves and our future.

What can we do to help the planet?

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل لمساعدة الكوكب؟

e.g. We can reduce plastic pollution. Using reusable bags and bottles helps the planet.

What about our oceans?

ماذا عن محيطاتنا؟

e.g. Saving oceans helps people and animals. Many sea animals are in danger because of waste.

What is a good conclusion to your paragraph?

ما الخاتمة الجيدة للفقرة؟

e.g. Working together can make a big difference.

حان دورك الآن أن تقوم بتجميع الأفكار السابقة في شكل فقرة:



راجع علامات
الترقيم
في مقدمة
الكتاب

قم بقراءة هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة لتتعلم منه:

"A global responsibility"

We all share a global responsibility to take care of our planet. This means helping the Earth stay clean and safe for everyone. One way to do this is by reducing plastic pollution. We can also use reusable bags and bottles. Clean-ups at the beach or in parks are fun ways to help. Saving oceans and sea animals is important for future generations. When we protect nature, we protect all living creatures. Together, we can make a big difference for our world.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What did Rami and his sister do at the park?
a) Played games. b) Cleaned and planted. c) Had a picnic. d) Sold books.
- What was the handbook about?
a) How to read faster. b) How to clean and protect the park.
c) Park animals. d) How to cook.
- Why did Rami feel proud?
a) He got money. b) He played all day. c) He helped the park. d) He built a house.

B) Listen and complete:

- Rami and his sister picked up on the ground.
- They helped to flowers in the park.
- Rami learned how to be a good

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Everyone can a better planet.
a) contribute to b) used to c) talk to d) walk to
- A good teacher can have a positive impact all of their students.
a) with b) by c) on d) in

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

convince – take – make – rubbish – save

My school organized a beach clean-up last Saturday. Many students joined the circle of volunteers. We found plastic (1) like bottles and cups. Our teacher tried to (2) us to use fewer plastic things. One student described a dolphin trapped محنجر in trash. It was terrible. Clean-ups can help (3) sea life. We must (4) action to protect the beauty of our oceans.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Our generation has a big job: we need to save our oceans for the future. Many sea animals are dying because of plastic pollution. Some kids don't know this. One teacher tried to entertain her students with a story about a sad dolphin. The dolphin had a plastic bag around its mouth. The story helped the kids understand the danger. They wanted to help! The next day, they made signs to tell people not to throw away trash. They also learned how to use reusable things. The ocean is a special place. Let's all act to protect it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The students made signs to
a) sell reusable bags b) help a dolphin swim
c) tell people not to throw trash d) clean their classroom

A VOCABULARY | LESSON 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

award (ed) (v)	يمنح	judge (n)	قاضٍ/حَكَم	tent (n)	خيمة
cooperation (n)	التعاون	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	trophy (n)	كأس
impressed (adj)	منبهر/متأثر	pleasure (n)	سرور/متعة	visitor (n)	زائر
invent (ed) (v)	يخترع	present (ed) (v)	يقدم	winner (n)	فائز

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

carry (y) (ied) (v)	يحمل	cup (n)	كأس	though (conj)	بالرغم من
clap (ped) (v)	يصفق	prize (n)	جائزة	title (n)	لقب

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

impressed by	مُعجب بـ/مُندهش من	filled with	ملء بـ	with excitement	بفرح شديد/بحماس
into the future	إلى المستقبل	with a purpose	بقصد/بهدف	known as	معروف باسم

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
lose	يخسر/يفقد	lost	choose	يختار	chose
		lost		chose	chosen

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
winner	فائز	loser	خاسر	the first	الأول	the last	الأخير

Read and complete with a word from the list:

clapped – trophy – with – by

- Omar won a football He's an amazing player.
- The children happily when their team won the game.
- We cleaned the playground a purpose to make it beautiful.

LESSON 5

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

catchy (adj)	جذاب/لافت للانتباه	respectful (adj)	مُحْتَرِم (يحترم غيره)	symbol (n)	رمز
--------------	--------------------	------------------	------------------------	------------	-----

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

emoji (n)	إيموجي/رمز تعبيرى	honor (n)	شرف/تكریم	recycling (n)	إعادة تدوير
gloves (n)	قفازات/جوانتي	included (adj)	مُتَضَمِّن/مُذْرَج	trash (n)	قمامة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

pick up	يلتقط/يجمع	catch attention	يجذب الانتباه	make a poster	يصنع ملصقاً
in need	محتاج	teach ... about	يُعلم ... عن	start a project	يبدأ مشروعاً

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
build	يبنى	built	feel	يشعر	felt

Read and complete with a word from the list:

catch - make - respectful - trash

- 1 Karim is always to his teachers and listens carefully.
- 2 Please don't drop on the ground. Keep our school clean.
- 3 Mai wore a shiny hat to attention in the school play.

Vocabulary Builder

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
trophy (n)	كأس	cup/title	كأس/لقب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
visit (v)	يزور	-or		تحول إلى اسم فاعل		visit <u>or</u> (n)	زائر
win (v)	يفوز	-er				win <u>er</u> (n)	فائز
respect (v)	يحترم	-ful		تحول إلى صفة		respect <u>ful</u> (adj)	مُحْتَرِم

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 4

The Dream Team

Pre-reading questions:

1 Did you invent anything before?

2 Why do scientists invent new things?

Read the following text. How did children feel when the box clicked open?

SB page 94

CHAPTER THREE:

A Team of Tomorrow

On the day of the Invention Fair, the school playground was filled with colorful tents and curious visitors.

Teams **presented**⁽¹⁾ their projects with excitement. Sara and her team explained their Water-Saving Machine **clearly**⁽²⁾ and **confidently**⁽³⁾.

The **judges**⁽⁴⁾ smiled and asked, "Why did you choose this project?"

Sara answered, "We wanted to create something with a **purpose**⁽⁵⁾-to help our village."

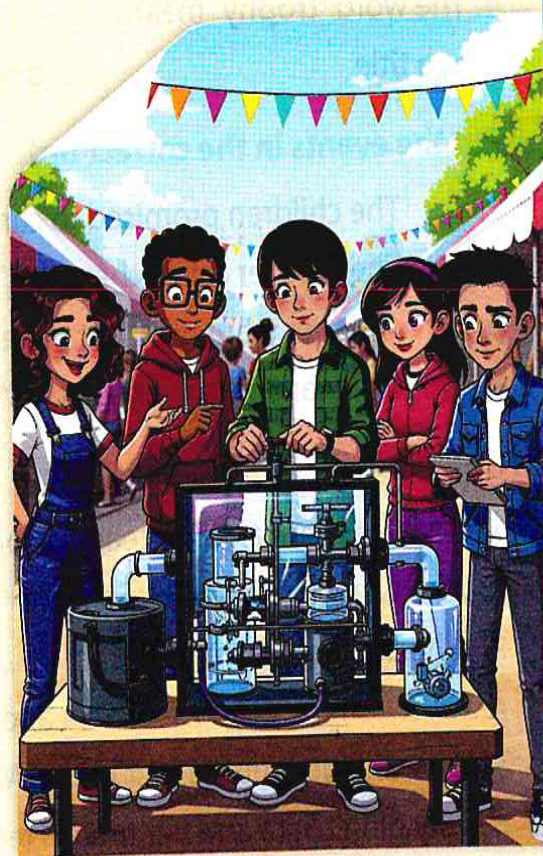
The judges nodded, **impressed**⁽⁶⁾ not only by the machine but also by the teamwork and respect the group showed.

Though another team won first prize, Sara and her friends didn't feel sad. Their teacher clapped proudly and said, "You are the real **winners**⁽⁷⁾."

You showed honesty, cooperation, and teamwork. These **values**⁽⁸⁾ are more important than any **trophy**⁽⁹⁾."

The children smiled and held hands. They knew they had created something meaningful-not just for the competition, but for their community and for themselves. They promised to carry these values into the future and help others with kindness, respect, and courage.

From that day, they became known as "The Dream Team" in their village-a team with heart, purpose, and unity.



- | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| (1) يقدم | (2) بوضوح | (3) بثقة |
| (4) الحكام | (5) غرض | (6) يبهر |
| (7) الفائزون | (8) قيم | (9) الكأس |

CHAPTER 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The school playground was filled with colorful
 a) tents b) flowers c) boxes d) tools
2. Sara and her team explained their clearly and confidently.
 a) drawing b) homework c) activities d) machine
3. After the competition, the team became known as "The Team."
 a) Winning b) Smart c) Dream d) Invention
4. The word "trophy" means
 a) a title b) a prize awarded c) a competition d) a machine

2 Put the events in the correct order.

1. ☐ The children promised to carry the values into the future.
2. ☐ The teacher called them the "real winners."
3. ☐ Another team won first prize.
4. ☐ The team became known as "The Dream Team."

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What was Sara and her team's project?
2. Who were impressed by Sara and her team's project?
3. Who are the Dream Team?
4. What was the purpose of Sara and her team's invention?
5. How did the judges react to the Water-Saving Machine?
6. Why didn't Sara and her friends feel sad about not winning first prize?

4 Critical thinking:

1. Why do you think Sara wasn't sad when they lost?

2. Do you think values are more important than the trophy? Why?

Pre-reading question: - What do you think it means to be a global citizen?

Are You a Global Citizen?

Being a global citizen means caring about others and helping the world. Last month, my school started a "Clean Up the Park" project. Students and teachers picked up trash and planted flowers. I felt proud to help my community. We also made posters to teach people about recycling. I learned that we all share one planet, and small actions can make a big difference. A global citizen must show respect, take responsibility, and help others. I want to keep doing more to help the environment and people in need. Let's build a world where everyone feels included.

Like

Comment

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What project did the school start last month?
- 2 How did the writer feel about helping in the project?

Team-Project Roundtable

Make the World Better! Poster

ملصق: اجعل العالم أفضل!

In pairs or small groups, make a poster about The Do's and Don'ts of a Global Citizen.

بالعمل في أزواج أو مجموعات صغيرة، اصنعوا ملصقاً عما يجب وما لا يجب أن يفعله المواطن العالمي.

التعليمات Instructions:

1. Choose a global problem (for example: pollution, kindness, saving animals).
اخترُوا مشكلة عالمية (مثل: التلوث، الرفق، إنقاذ الحيوانات).
2. Think of a short, strong message for your poster (for example: "Stop Littering!", "Save the Ocean!").
- فكروا في رسالة قصيرة وقوية لملصقكم (مثل: «توقف عن رمي القمامة!»، «أنقذوا المحيط!«).
3. Decide what pictures and colors you will use.
- حددوا ما الصور والألوان التي ستستخدمونها.
4. Write your message clearly. Draw and color your pictures.
- اكتبوا رسالتكم بوضوح. ارسموا ولونوا صوركم.

العرض التقديمي Presentation:

1. First, present your poster to your group, then share it with the whole class.
- أولاً، قدموا ملصقكم إلى مجموعتكم، ثم شاركوه مع الصف بأكمله.
2. Explain what your topic is, why you chose it, and how people can help.
- اشرحوا ما هو موضوعكم، ولماذا اخترتموه، وكيف يمكن للناس المساعدة.



Skills Bank Reading

تهدف هذه الصفحة إلى تنمية مهارة القراءة والمفردات والتفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب.

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

استخرج من القطعة 262-263 كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات التالية:

Meaning/Synonym	Opposite/Antonym
simply ببساطة	loser خاسر
cup كأس	teach يُعَلِّمُ
aim هدف/غرض	left out مُستبعد

2 Comprehension strategies:

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last month, my school started a "Clean Up the Park" project. Students and teachers picked up trash and planted flowers. I felt proud to help my community. We also made posters to teach people about recycling. I learned that we all share one planet, and small actions can make a big difference.

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

(استخرج الفكرة الرئيسية للنص)

2. The word "recycling" means "....."

a) throwing

b) collecting

c) reusing

d) rewriting

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Teams presented their projects with excitement.

☐

- عرضت الفرق إجاباتها بحماس.

☐

- عرضت الفرق مشاريعها بحماس.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

☐

I felt proud to help my family.

☐

I felt proud to help my community.

- لقد شعرت بالفخر لمساعدة مجتمعي.

LESSON

4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Marwan was when he saw the big elephant.
a) shy b) left out c) impressed d) funny
2. I love helping people in need. That makes my life
a) brave b) impressed c) nervous d) meaningful
3. Mira jumped up and down excitement about the zoo trip.
a) in b) with c) by d) for
4. Zahraa gets much from playing with her toys.
a) trophy b) pleasure c) pressure d) treasure
5. The fair decided who won the art competition yesterday.
a) judge b) visitor c) winner d) loser
6. The young boy will his invention to the science fair.
a) gather b) clap c) present d) face
7. Salma learned that leads to the success of the whole team.
a) fight b) cooperation c) trophy d) judge
8. Eman was the of the trophy. She thanked everyone who helped her practice for months.
a) winner b) loser c) trainer d) visitor
9. Dina hopes to a robot that can clean rooms.
a) carry b) clap c) explore d) invent
10. The school will Ola a medal for her hard work.
a) carry b) award c) clap d) take

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

trophy – impressed – with – by – judge

On the day of the Science Fair, each team had a colorful tent to show their project. Our team worked hard together and explained our idea clearly. We were all (1) by the other teams too. A friendly (2) asked us questions. We didn't win a (3), but we learned how powerful teamwork is. We clapped for the winner and felt proud of what we made (4) a purpose.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sara made sure everyone was in the birthday party games.
a) included b) catchy c) respectful d) nervous
2. Tala wants to a poster for her room.
a) do b) appear c) think d) get
3. What do you think the five circles of the Olympic Games logo شعار are a of?
a) question b) symbol c) mark d) style
4. I need to wear warm to cover my hands when it's cold outside.
a) gloves b) jacket c) T-shirt d) pants
5. The children must all the papers from the ground.
a) get up b) pick up c) put d) make
6. The bright colors can everyone's attention.
a) do b) catch c) stay d) make
7. The book cover looks very with bright colors.
a) catchy b) respectful c) included d) ugly
8. I sent my mom a happy with my text message.
a) time b) gloves c) honor d) emoji
9. My teacher taught me about to help save the earth.
a) destroying b) recycling c) sleeping d) reducing
10. We should be when we visit the library together.
a) shy b) catchy c) respectful d) careless
11. It was a great to meet Dr. Magdi Yacoub. We were pleased to see him.
a) trash b) sadness c) honor d) symbol

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

poster – letter – recycling – proud – gloves

Being a global citizen means caring for the Earth. You can help by (1) old paper and bottles. One day, I wore (2) to pick up litter in the park. I made a (3) to remind others to do the same. It's a big honor to help my community. My teacher used a smiley emoji to thank me. Helping the planet makes you feel (4) and included.

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



Writing a social media post. كتابة منشور على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

1 What did you write in your social media post?

ماذا كتبت في منشور وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي؟

e.g. I made a social media post about being a global citizen.

2 Why is it important to be a global citizen?

لماذا من المهم أن تكون مواطنًا عالميًا؟

e.g. I wrote about helping others and saving the environment.

3 What did you include to make your post interesting?

ماذا أضفت لجعل منشورك ليكون شيقًا؟

e.g. I used a catchy picture to catch attention. I added an emoji to make people smile.

4 How did people react to your post?

كيف تفاعل الناس مع منشورك؟

e.g. My friends liked and shared the post.

5 What message did you want to share?

ما الرسالة التي أردت مشاركتها؟

e.g. Being a global citizen is important for our world.

A social media post

حان الآن دورك لتكتب منشورًا. ستساعدك الأفكار كثيرًا في كتابة فقرتك:

راجع علامات التقييم في مقدمة الكتاب.

0 comments



Comment

نموذج مجاب عنه:

Today, I made a social media post about being a global citizen. I wrote about helping the environment, being kind to others, and learning about different cultures. I added a catchy photo and a happy emoji. I also shared tips about recycling and how to be respectful to people from all countries. Many friends liked and shared my post. I felt proud. Being a global citizen means caring about the world and helping make it better.

0 comments



Comment

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We must use bottles to keep the oceans clean.
a) silver b) reusable c) metal d) iron
- People must try hard to waste to keep the environment clean.
a) reduce b) use c) produce d) save

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

meaningful – presented – trash – trophy – pleasure

We wanted to invent something to help others, so we made a smart (1)..... bin. We had fun building it together. When we (2)..... it, the visitors smiled and asked many questions. We didn't get the prize, but our teacher said it was a (3)..... project. It was a (4)..... to work with my friends. I will always remember this experience and carry it into the future.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- You (must) do that. It's against the law.
- How (is) Samy go to school every day?
- You (mustn't) know the password before using that computer.
- (Do) they go to Alexandria last summer?

4 Complete the following dialog:

Leila is discussing the result of the competition with Nour.

Leila : Did we win the prize today?

Nour : No, we (1)..... . But we did something amazing!

Leila : What did the judges say about our project?

Nour : They (2)..... it was smart and helpful.

Leila : (3)..... helped the most in the team?

Nour : Everyone helped! We worked together.

Leila : So, (4)..... teamwork important?

Nour : Yes, it was. It was the best part of all.

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A Vocabulary

1 Match the words in column (A) to their meanings in column (B):

A

- a) volunteer
- b) rules
- c) respect
- d) impact
- e) responsibility

B

- 1. a duty or something you must do
- 2. a set of instructions people must follow
- 3. to show care or honor for someone or something
- 4. to do something helpful without being paid
- 5. the effect something has on others

B Language

2 Read and complete the sentences with (must/mustn't):

1. We throw rubbish in the sea.
2. You be kind to people in your community.
3. We wear gloves when we clean the park.
4. We respect other cultures.

C Writing

3 Write a social media post of (60–70) words about how to be a good citizen.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

0 comments

 Like

 Comment

A) Vocabulary

award (ed) (v)	يمنح
citizen (n)	مواطن
citizenship (n)	مواطنة
clean-ups (n)	حملات تنظيف
convince (d) (v)	يقنع
danger (n)	خطر
diversity (n)	تنوع/اختلاف
duty (n)	واجب
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
entertain (ed) (v)	يسلى
environment (n)	بيئة
generation (n)	جيل
global (adj)	كوني/عالمي
handbook (n)	دليل/كتيب
impressed (adj)	منبهز/مناثر
improve (d) (v)	يحسن
judge (n)	قاض/حكم
justice (n)	عدالة/إنصاف
living creature (n)	مخلوق/كائن حي
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى
ocean (n)	محيط
pleasure (n)	سُرور/مُتعة
protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
reusable (adj)	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
science experiment (n)	تجربة علمية
tent (n)	خيمة
terrible (adj)	فظيم/رهيب
threat (n)	تهديد
tradition (n)	تقليد
trophy (n)	كأس
unfair (adj)	غير عادل
volunteer (ed) (v/n)	يتطوع/متطوع

B) Language

1. Must/mustn't يجب/لا يجب

Affirmative: الإثبات

الفاعل + must + inf.

e.g. You **must** study hard for exams.

Negative: النفي

الفاعل + mustn't + inf.

e.g. You **mustn't** make noise in the library.

2. Tenses Review مراجعة الأزمنة

A) The present simple tense:

الفاعل + inf./inf. + (s/es/ies)

e.g. They **go** to school on foot.

◦ Sama **goes** to school on foot.

الفاعل + don't/doesn't + inf.

e.g. They **don't** go to school on foot.

◦ Sama **doesn't** go to school on foot.

Do/Does + الفاعل + inf. + ...?

e.g. **Do** you go to school on foot?

◦ Does Sama go to school on foot?

B) The present continuous tense:

الفاعل + am/is/are + (v+ing)

e.g. I'm **doing** my homework now.

الفاعل + am not/isn't/aren't + (v+ing)

e.g. I'm **not doing** my homework now.

Is/Are + الفاعل + (v+ing)?

e.g. **Is** Sara **sleeping** right now?

◦ Are the children **playing** outside?

C) The past simple tense:

التصريف الثاني للفاعل + الفاعل

e.g. Sally **watched** a movie last night.

الفاعل + didn't + inf.

e.g. Sally **didn't watch** a movie last night.

Did + الفاعل + inf. ...?

e.g. **Did** Sally **watch** a movie last night.

C) Speaking

Asking and answering about making a good citizen

1. What makes a good citizen?

◦ A good citizen respects others and follows laws.

2. What can you do to help your school and your community?

◦ I can keep the place clean, help others and save water and electricity.

3. Can you give an example of a good citizen?

◦ Yes, someone who helps people in need.

4. What are the things you must do as a global citizen?

◦ I must respect others and help make the world better.

5. Do you think small actions can change the world?

◦ Yes, small actions can make a big difference.

General Exercises

on Unit

6



Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did the team do before presenting?

a) They left the tent.

b) They checked their project.

c) They changed the topic.

d) They made a new model.

2. Who walked around, asking questions?

a) Winners.

b) Losers.

c) Judges.

d) Teams.

3. How did the team feel at the beginning?

a) Bored.

b) Nervous but excited.

c) Angry.

d) Sad.

B) Listen and complete:

4. The team set up a and checked their project.

5. They answered the judges' questions

6. They didn't win the, but they learned a lot.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The judge works hard to make sure there is for everyone.

a) culture

b) plant

c) justice

d) injustice

2. After doing, the beach looked beautiful and had no rubbish.

a) diversity

b) clean-ups

c) sea life

d) quality



Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

follows – achieves – act – global – electricity

The world is full of different people, and each group has its own traditions. A (1)..... citizen shows respect to everyone, no matter their culture. A good citizen helps others and (2)..... the rules. You can protect the planet by using less (3)..... . A handbook about global life teaches you how to (4)..... with care. We are all equal. Let's live in peace.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Our class joined a science fair to create helpful inventions. Mr. Kamal organized it well. We developed a Water-Saving Machine to help people use less water. We worked in teams and shared our ideas. On the day of the fair, we stood under our tent and presented our project. The judges listened and asked questions. Another team won the first prize, but we weren't sad. Our teacher clapped and said we were real winners because of our teamwork. We felt proud of helping each other and doing our best. We learned that working together is better than winning alone. That's something we will remember in the future.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The class made a Water-Saving
 a) machine
 b) robot
 c) project
 d) show
2. The underlined word "proud" most likely means
 a) angry
 b) tired
 c) happy and pleased
 d) nervous

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
4. Who won the first prize at the fair?
.....
5. What do the underlined pronoun "We" refer to?
.....
6. Why did the students feel like winners, even without a prize?

Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** Raneem take her medicine to feel better when she is sick?
a) Is **b)** Did
c) Does **d)** Has
- 2.** Look outside! It very heavily at the moment.
a) rains **b)** rained
c) is raining **d)** was raining

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Maged, be careful. You (must) cross the road now. There are a lot of cars.
2. The children (run) very fast in the school race yesterday.
3. Listen! The birds (sing) on the trees right now.
4. Omnia never (forget) to water her plants every day.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Yasmin is asking Omar about the good citizen qualities.

Yasmin : Can you give an example of a good citizen?

Omar : Yes, I (1)..... . My brother is a good citizen.

Yasmin : (2)..... does he do?

Omar : He gives food to poor people.

Yasmin : What else does he do?

Omar : He also (3)..... trees in our area.

Yasmin : What (4)..... should a good citizen have?

Omar : He should be polite and honest.



Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to be a good citizen"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Module 3 Question Bank

on Units **5&6**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. You should your language skills to get a better job.
a) remain b) look c) reply d) develop
2. I wish to find a profession that matches my and makes me happy.
a) possibility b) size c) talent d) money
3. Samia can't speak much when she meets strangers because she feels uncomfortable; she is really
a) noisy b) brave c) impolite d) shy
4. Mr. Awny usually does his work, so we all respect him.
a) badly b) late c) perfectly d) friendly
5. Parents should their children to do useful activities.
a) encourage b) discourage c) make d) prevent
6. You should in keeping the environment clean.
a) think b) participate c) focus d) introduce
7. What is the best decision you in your life?
a) thought b) appeared c) did d) made
8. If we cooperate, we can protect the seas and oceans for future
a) shores b) animals c) generations d) preparations

Language

9. Don't worry; the mechanic your car now.
a) was repairing b) repairing c) repairs d) is repairing
10. Baher has got the full marks; he the faculty الكلية he wants.
a) going to join b) may join c) is going to join d) joins
11. The sky is clear; I think it rain.
a) isn't going to b) is going to c) not going to d) will
12. A: Which suit? B: I intend to buy the black suit.
a) did you buy b) are you going to buy c) you will buy d) have you bought
13. Are the summer vacation in Marina?
a) you spent b) will you spend c) you going to spend d) going to spend

14. Faten, wait! Mother lunch right now.
 a) was preparing b) prepares c) prepared d) is preparing
15. What does Hatim usually on Fridays?
 a) does b) did c) do d) doing
16. Nader revised the grammar lesson and the exercise.
 a) does b) did c) do d) doing
17. Rami in the club because he is still sick at home.
 a) is playing b) isn't playing c) was playing d) didn't play

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A: Where do you intend to spend the weekend? B: I (to spend) it in Port Said.
2. The government (build) a new hospital in our town next summer as planned.
3. The old man is (going) cross the street. Please help him.
4. (You going) to spend the evening by the river?
5. They (mustn't) be quiet during the film. We can't enjoy it.
6. Helmi (is going) to visit us; he is too busy.
7. (Does) Farah going to buy that wedding dress?
8. What are you going (do) during the weekend?
9. The sky is dark and cloudy; it (going) rain.
10. What does Hamam (intends) to do this evening?
11. You (mustn't) see a doctor. You have been ill for a week.
12. We never (goes) to the club on Sundays.
13. What time (does) he reach the hotel last night?
14. Rami and Adel usually (goes) to school on foot.
15. Which platform does the train to Mansoura (leaves) from?
16. You (must) do that. It's against the law.
17. Look, the manager's car (coming) over there.
18. The children (play) happily on the beach now.
19. My brother (doesn't play) football now; he is studying at home.
20. Why are the workers (dig) here?
21. You can't stay in the room; workers (paint) it right now.
22. A week (since), I was in Alexandria.
23. Maged, be careful. You (must) cross the road now. There are a lot of cars.
24. Tamer (going) to Alexandria; he has decided to go there.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

path – designers – invented – discovered – designed

1. I don't know who the internet.
2. Fashion الموضة decide the style of clothes every year.
3. Scientists a new kind of plant in one of the African forests غابات.
4. We try the right to reach our goals in life.

B)

shy – cooperation – blame – support – instead

Teamwork is very important. Our teachers always encourage (1)..... . They never (2)..... us for making mistakes. They show us how to avoid such mistakes (3)..... . Above all, they motivate (4)..... students to share effectively.

C)

responsibility – cooperation – creatures – stop – global

We all have duties toward our community and the world. As (1)..... citizens, we should care about our oceans. We must (2)..... polluting them. We should take (3)..... for keeping them clean. Then, we can save sea (4)..... for future generations.

D)

show – clean – confidently – ability – responsibility

1. We should all take global
2. We must keep the oceans and safe.
3. Students should respect to their teachers.
4. Sara and her team explained their water-saving machine

4 Complete the following dialog:

A) A son asks his father how to reach his goals in life.

Son : What can I do to achieve my goals in life?

Father : You should (1)..... well to achieve success.

Son : What do you mean by planning well?

Father : I (2)..... you should set your goals and organize your time.

Son : What else should I do?

Father : You should make use of your free time.

Son : (3)..... life skills important?

Father : Yes, they are. You can develop them throughout your life.

Son : Is it right to be worried about exam results?

Father : (4)....., you mustn't be worried; be confident in your skills.

B) Lamees is telling Dalia about a useful book she has just read.

Lamees : Hi Dalia. I read a useful book yesterday.

Dalia : Hi Lamees. What is the book about?

Lamees : It is about good (1)..... and their duties in their community and the world.

Dalia : That is great! Does the book show what makes a good citizen?

Lamees : Yes, it does. A good citizen must be responsible and consider **يعتبر - يفكر في** both the community and the outside world.

Dalia : (2)..... other qualities should a good citizen have?

Lamees : They should be honest and fair and accept people from other cultures.

Dalia : What an amazing book! Can I (3)..... it?

Lamees : Of course, you can. You will have useful information when you read it.

Dalia : (4)..... a lot.

C) Rami and Taher are speaking about protecting oceans.

Rami : Our science teacher says that we should all have global responsibility.

Taher : What do you mean by global responsibility?

Rami : It is caring about global (1).....

Taher : Global problems! Like what?

Rami : Like keeping our oceans because they are in danger.

Taher : (2)..... do you think they are in danger?

Rami : Because of **بسبب** the waste that causes much pollution.

Taher : What (3)..... we do to keep the oceans clean?

Rami : We can participate in beach clean-ups and stop throwing bottles into the oceans.

Taher : That's great. Let's cooperate to (4)..... them.

D) Ali is asking Amr what he is doing now.

Ali : Hi, Amr. How are you?

Amr : Hi, Ali, I'm (1)..... thanks.

Ali : What are you (2)..... at the moment?

Amr : I'm looking at a website.

Ali : A website! (3)..... are you looking at it?

Amr : Because I want to find information to do research about pollution.

Ali : That's great. Who asked you to do it?

Amr : The (4)..... of ICT.



278 | Review 2

2. What influenced Sara's final choice?

a) The weather.

c) Her sense of responsibility.

b) Her new friends.

d) A school project.

3. What is the result of Sara's choice?

a) She felt sad.

c) She made no impact.

b) She stayed home.

d) She felt proud and made friends.

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Why was it difficult for Sara to make a decision?

5. What lesson can we learn from Sara's story?

4 Writing an email:

Write an email of (80-100) words to a friend about your dream job.

You can include:

- What job you want.

- What skills or training you'll need.

- Why you chose it.

- A future plan.

LESSON

2

1 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

impact – smart – make – negative – skill

Making decisions is an important skill we all need. To make a (1)..... choice, we need to study the available options carefully. Focusing on the positive or (2)..... side only, will lead to an irresponsible decision. If you can't (3)..... a decision on your own, ask an adult, like your parents or teacher, for help. Keep in your mind that every smart choice you make has an (4)..... on your life.

2 Listen and answer the questions below:

1. What is the first step in planning your future career?
2. What does it mean to be a global citizen?
3. How can reducing plastic help the environment?

3 Complete the dialog between Maya and Sami:

Maya : I heard about the "Let's Make a Difference" project. Are you going to **participate** ⁽¹⁾?

Sami : Yes. I think it's a great opportunity to volunteer and help the community.

Maya : That's (1)..... I'd love to be a part of it, too.

Sami : Absolutely! And it's important to protect **endangered** ⁽²⁾ animals.

Maya : I agree. If we don't act now, the consequences will be negative.

Sami : You're right. We (2)..... start now.

Maya : That's true. Every little bit helps to improve the **situation** ⁽³⁾.

Sami : Exactly! We must all do our part.

(1) يشارك

(2) معرض للخطر

(3) موقف

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. If it rains tomorrow, we (**will stay/ stay**) indoors.
2. You (**must/ mustn't**) forget your passport if you want to travel.
3. They (**are going to visit/ visit**) their grandparents next month.
4. You (**must/ mustn't**) make noise in the library.
5. What (**do you do/ are you doing**) right now?
6. If you (**study/studies**) hard, you will pass the exam.

5 Writing a short biography:

Choose a person who has made a significant positive impact on your life.

Write a short biography of (80-100) words. You can use the following ideas:

- Their name and what they are known for.
- A brief description of their background and their passion.
- Their major achievements.
- How they encourage others or inspire change.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening Texts

Start Smart

Mona is my best friend. She lives next door to me. Every morning, we go to school together. Mona likes her English class, but I like math. After school, we like to play in the park.

On weekends, she sometimes goes to the library or visits her grandmother. Mona has two brothers and one sister. Her favorite food is pizza. She wants to be a teacher when she grows up.

Unit 1

Test yourself Lessons (2 & 3)

Today, we used tablets in science class. We searched for facts about planets and typed them into a class website. Our teacher showed a video on the smartboard. After school, I played online games for 20 minutes, then read from my ebook using night mode before bed.

General Exercises on Unit 1

Our teacher gave us a group project about the planets. We used tablets to find pictures and typed facts into the school website. I drew one planet using an app. After school, I read more about space from my ebook. I always turn on night mode at bedtime.

Unit 2

Test yourself Lessons (2 & 3)

Omar is a visual learner. He likes to read books with pictures and use colorful pens. When he studies, he draws mind maps to remember facts. He also likes to sit at the front of the class to see the board clearly. His notes are neat and full of colors. Omar enjoys using charts and diagrams. He feels happy when his study space is clean and organized.

General Exercises on Unit 2

During English class, we had to express our ideas about animals. Each group had a different animal. We made a chart and wrote our opinions. Some wrote freely and used drawings too. Our group worked well together. I think being creative is easier when you work with others. My friend said it was her best class ever.

Unit 3

Test yourself Lessons (2 & 3)

Dr. Samira Moussa was born in Egypt in 1917. From a young age, she showed great love for science and learning. She always asked questions and loved to read about space and physics. Her father supported her learning and helped her go to school. She worked hard in school and dreamed of becoming a scientist.

General Exercises on Unit 3

Dr. Gamal Hemdan died in 1993, but his ideas are still alive today. His books are read by students, teachers, and even government leaders. He taught us how geography can show why a country is special. Dr. Hemdan showed us that Egypt is not just a place on a map but a country with power, history, and a future. He is still remembered with great respect.

Review 1

Lesson 1 - Page 55 - Exercise 2

The Cairo Monorail Project The Cairo Monorail is considered an important transportation project in Egypt because it helps solve traffic problems and makes traveling easier for people in crowded cities like Cairo. It connects important areas such as downtown Cairo with Giza and the New Administrative Capital. The monorail will improve the daily life of Egyptian citizens in many ways. First, it will reduce travel time, making it faster for people to move between different parts of the city. Second, it will help reduce pollution because it uses electricity instead of fuel. There are some main differences between the monorail and other types of public transportation. Unlike traditional trains or buses, the monorail runs above the ground on a single rail, so it doesn't get stuck in traffic. Also, it's faster, quieter, and more modern than older systems.

One of the project's goals is to encourage people to use public transportation instead of private cars. This helps reduce traffic and protect the environment. The monorail is a smart and clean way to travel in Egypt's big cities.

Lesson 1 - Page 55 - Exercise 3

Digital learning has become a key part of modern education. With devices like tablets, smartboards, and smartphones, students can learn anywhere and work with others around the world. Online learning needs focus and motivation, but it also gives students the chance to learn in their own way.

Technology helps improve communication through apps and group chats, and it builds important skills. However, technology alone isn't enough; teachers and community support are still very important in education.

Unit 4

Test yourself Lessons (2 & 3)

After the party, Youssef felt very happy. His friends had a great time playing games, eating snacks, and sharing stories. Even better, one of the boys who wasn't invited came to Youssef later and said, "Next time, I'll try to behave better!" Youssef smiled. He learned that making good choices isn't always easy, but it can lead to better things for everyone.

General Exercises on Unit 4

I once ate too much sugar before school. I felt sick in class and couldn't focus. That was a bad decision. I asked my coach later why I felt that way, and he explained that sugar can have a bad effect on my body. He told me to eat healthy before school. Now, I don't skip breakfast and always make smart food choices.

Unit 5

Test yourself Lessons (2 & 3)

Aya always dreamed of becoming a famous fashion designer. She loved drawing clothes and matching colors. After she graduated, she joined a workshop to learn more. She met many skillful people there who helped her improve. Aya says the purpose of her job is to make people feel confident and happy. She tells her friends, "Work hard and follow your dreams!"

General Exercises on Unit 5

Drawing is my favorite thing. I want to be an artist when I grow up. I draw every day and practice different styles. I dream of having my art in a museum one day. I will go to university to learn more. I believe practice and training will help me become great. I love to show my work to family and friends.

Unit 6

Test yourself Lessons (2 & 3)

Last weekend, Rami and his sister went to the park to volunteer. They picked up rubbish on the ground and helped to plant flowers. Rami learned that being a good citizen means doing good things in your community. He also read a small handbook about how to keep the environment clean and safe. Rami felt proud because he helped to improve the park for everyone.

General Exercises on Unit 6

It was the last day of the school competition. Our team was nervous but excited. We set up our tent and checked our project one more time. The judges walked around, asking questions. We worked together and answered confidently. When it was our turn to present, we spoke clearly and smiled. In the end, we didn't win the prize, but we learned that teamwork makes everything better.

Review 2

Lesson 1 - Page 101 - Exercise 1

New Alamein is a marvelous city on the North Coast of Egypt. It's one of the first fourth-generation cities in the country, designed with advanced technology and smart urban planning. The city has a strong impact on tourism and the economy because it attracts thousands of visitors every year. New Alamein has beautiful sandy beaches, luxury resorts, international restaurants, and culture centers that show Egypt's rich history. It also includes modern residential areas, business centers, and universities, which combine tourism, education, and work in one amazing place with its modern services and unique location. New Alamein can compete with the most famous cities and tourist destinations in the world. Many people consider it a symbol of progress and a bright future for Egypt.

Lesson 2 - Page 102 - Exercise 2

Planning your future career starts with knowing your talents and interests. It's okay to try different things and learn from failure. Education and training help you build the skills you need. Besides personal goals, it's also important to be a global citizen. This means thinking about how your actions affect the world. For example, reducing plastic helps protect oceans and marine animals. Being a global citizen also means respecting others and helping with global problems like climate change. Making smart, responsible choices now can help create a better future for everyone.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 1

Lessons (2 & 3)

1. never
2. many
3. rarely

Unit 2

Lessons (2 & 3)

1. is
2. can't
3. is studying

Unit 3

Lessons (2 & 3)

1. visited
2. saw
3. Ali went

Unit 4

Lessons (2 & 3)

1. should
2. should
3. we should

Unit 5

Lessons (2 & 3)

1. to be
2. is coming
3. are going to go

Unit 6

Lessons (2 & 3)

1. must
2. play
3. are you

تطبيق الأصواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال
تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة
لكتاب الأصواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأصواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Group 1:

All three forms are the same

Present form		Simple past	Past participle
bet	يراهن	bet	bet
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
hurt	يصيب/يؤذي	hurt	hurt
let	يسمح/يدع	let	let
put	يضع	put	put
put out	يطفئ	put out	put out
read	يقرأ	read	read
rid	يزيل	rid	rid
set	يعد/يجهز	set	set
shut	يغلق	shut	shut
split	يفصل	split	split
sweat	يعرق	sweat	sweat

Group 2:

The 2nd and 3rd forms are the same

Present form		Simple past	Past participle
bleed	ينزف	bled	bled
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
build	يبني	built	built
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
catch	يمسك/يلحق/يصطاد	caught	caught
feel	يحس/يشعر	felt	felt
fight	يحارب	fought	fought
find	يجد	found	found
get	يحصل	got	got
have	يملك	had	had

hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hold	يمسك	held	held
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
leave	يترك/يفادر	left	left
lend	يسلف	lent	lent
light	يشعل	lit	lit
lose	يخسر/يفقد	lost	lost
make	يصنع	made	made
meet	يقابل	met	met
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
say	يقول	said	said
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
send	يرسل	sent	sent
shoot	يصوب	shot	shot
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
spend	ينفق/يقضي	spent	spent
stand	يقف	stood	stood
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
tell	يخبر	told	told
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
win	يفوز	won	won

Group 3:

All three forms are different

Present form		Simple past	Past participle
be	يكون	was, were	been
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
blow	يهب	blew	blown

break	يكسر	broke	broken
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
drive	يقود	drove	driven
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
fall	يقع/يسقط	fell	fallen
fly	يطير	flew	flown
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
give	يعطي	gave	given
grow	ينمو/يزرع/يكبر	grew	grown
hide	يختفي	hid	hidden
know	يعرف	knew	known
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
ring	يرن	rang	rung
rise	يرتفع	rose	risen
see	يرى	saw	seen
show	يوضح/يعرض	showed	shown
sing	يغني	sang	sung
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
swim	يعوم	swam	swum
take	ياخذ	took	taken
throw	يرمي/يلقي	threw	thrown
wake	يوقظ	woke	woken
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
write	يكتب	wrote	written

st

PREP

FIRST TERM



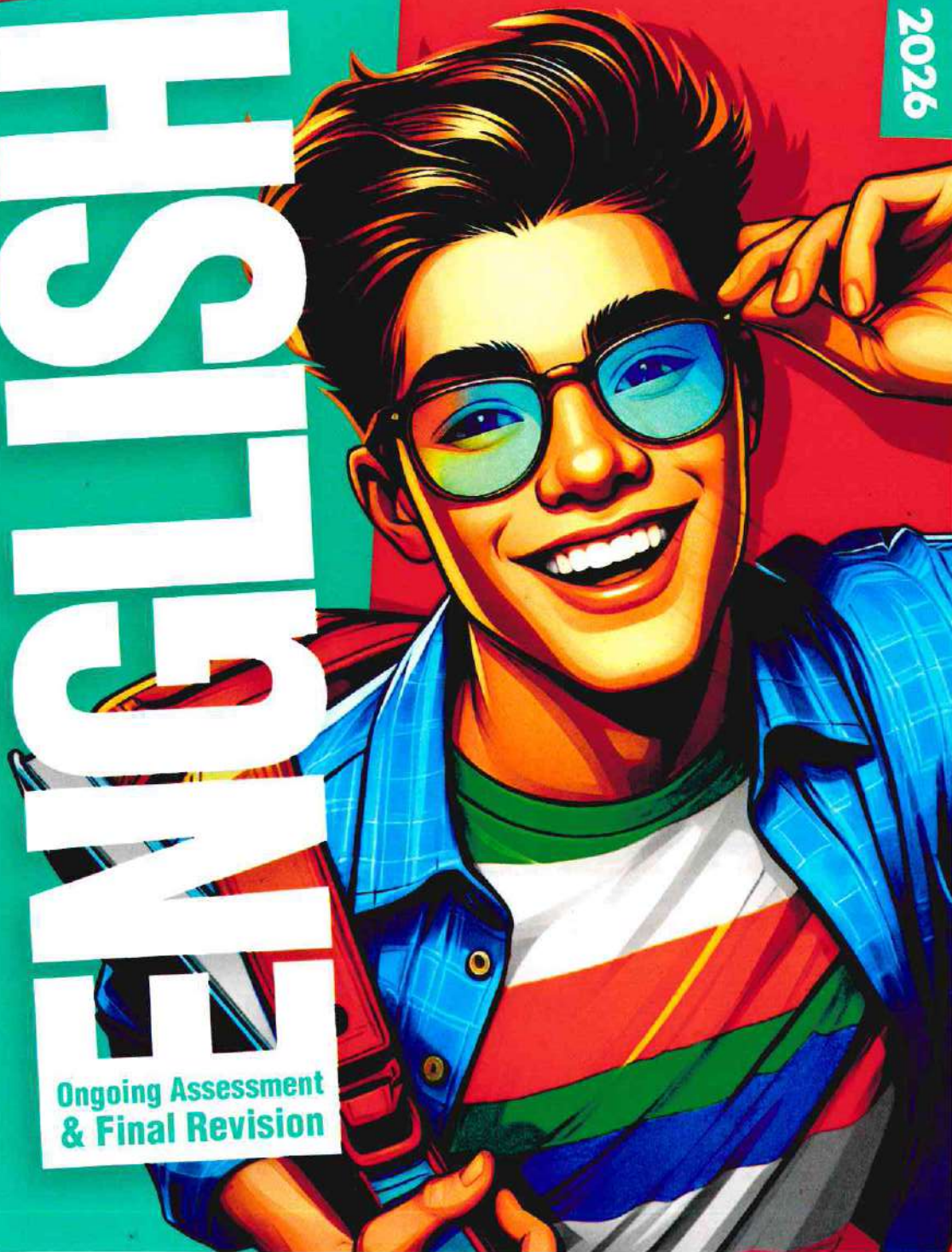
AL ADWAA

Gem

2026

HS JUNE

**Ongoing Assessment
& Final Revision**



CONTENTS



Part	3
1	Ongoing Assessment
	التقويم المستمر

Part	68
2	Final Revision & Guiding Models
	المراجعة النهائية والنماذج الاسترشادية

Part 1

Ongoing Assessment



1

Follow-up Worksheets

A. Dictation Time

B. Quiz Time

نماذج المتابعة (لطلبة العام)

- جزء خاص بالإملاء

- اختبار مصغر لطلبة العام على كل درسين

2

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheets

نماذج المتابعة (لطلبة الأزهر)

اختبار مصغر لطلبة الأزهر على كل درسين

3

Mini-Tests (General & Al-Azhar)

الاختبارات القصيرة (عام + أزهر)

4

Monthly Models (General & Al-Azhar)

النماذج الشهرية (عام + أزهر)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

tablet	الوضع الليلي
message	شاشة
device	أدوات مادية
adventure story	يذكر
smartboard	تفاعلي
amazing	موقع إلكتروني

Language Expressions & Prepositions

help with	على شاشتي
play online games	يؤدي واجبنا منزلياً
twice a week	يأخذ استراحة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يؤدي/يؤلم	
يفكر/يعتقد	

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
online	offline
مفيد	عديم الفائدة

Definitions

.....	: a page on the internet that gives information or lets you do things online
.....	: a flat surface on which pictures or words are shown
.....	: a portable computer

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

on – laptop – amazing – adventure – into

Today was full of fun and learning. In class, we read a/an (1)..... story using a smartboard. I used a/an (2)..... to draw the setting and typed a short paragraph (3)..... a tablet. After school, I played online games with a school friend. Before bedtime, I read more from the ebook. My day felt (4)..... from start to finish.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. I can very fast on the keyboard.

- a) share b) check c) search d) type

2. I usually the weather before I go out.

- a) check b) say c) remind d) type

3. A printer is a/an that makes paper copies.

- a) screen b) website c) app d) device

4. Use your time to finish your work early.

- a) wisely b) slowly c) quickly d) loudly

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ali is asking Omar what he did this morning.

Ali : Hi Omar! What did you do this morning?

Omar : I watched a short cartoon on my (1).....

Ali : Do you use your tablet a lot?

Omar : Only before school and after I (2)..... my homework.

Ali : (3)..... do you like watching?

Omar : I like watching animal videos and stories.

Ali : (4)..... you play games too?

Omar : Yes, but only for 30 minutes!



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Mariam is reading an ebook about planets.

Ziad : What are you doing, Mariam?

Mariam : (1).....

Ziad : (2).....?

Mariam : It's about planets.

Ziad : (3).....?

Mariam : I'm reading it on my tablet.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I can't see anything on my phone. It needs a new
a) screen b) printer c) mouse d) keyboard
- My brother loves to online games with his friends.
a) play b) do c) make d) take
- You can play this game You don't need the internet.
a) offline b) online c) outside d) inside
- We changed the display to be a little darker.
a) classroom b) post c) seat d) setting
- Please me of the meeting. I always forget.
a) remind b) check c) remember d) share

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Digital devices at school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

hybrid bus	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
digital devices	مكبر صوت
screen time	منصة
microphone	طابعة
affect	يتضمن
webcam	محتوى

Language Expressions & Prepositions

belong to	في الصباح
achieve a task	ينقر على
late for	للاولاد المنزلي

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يسمع		
يختار		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
helpful	unhelpful
غالبًا	نادرًا

Definitions

-: the time you spend using devices like phones or computers
-: online platforms where people connect and share content
-: using computer technology instead of paper or physical tools

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

angry – pleased – technology – achieve – digital

My uncle is a factory worker. He uses many (1) tools to do his work. He told me how machines help him (2) big tasks quickly. He depends on modern (3) well. That's why his manager was (4) with him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Leila used her new phone to a video call with her best friend overseas.
a) get b) make c) do d) stay
- We couldn't hear her because the was off.
a) webcam b) speaker c) microphone d) headphones
- Maya takes the to school daily. It's a modern means of transportation that uses electricity or oil.
a) hybrid bus b) plane c) bike d) feet

Language

- How often bake cookies?
a) Sama does b) is Sama c) does Sama d) Sama is
- Hany nervous before presentations.
a) often is b) is often c) often d) does often
- Nader reads newspapers. He always listens to news on the radio.
a) never b) usually c) always d) often

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Reem (usually/is) good at puzzles.
- Leila (don't) sometimes like her lunch.
- How often does Mona (checks) her email?
- Amir (never/is) unkind to his sisters.
- The bakery (sells/usually) fresh bread.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The helps us hear people far away.
a) microphone b) printer c) mouse d) keyboard
2. Many teenagers use daily.
a) social media b) content c) email d) energy
3. This helps cut paper easily.
a) smartphone b) screen time c) tool d) social media
4. Amr always his lunch from home.
a) bringing b) is bringing c) bring d) brings
5. How often does Bilal to the cinema?
a) goes b) go c) going d) went

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today, we worked in a group to complete a task about the roots of plants. Each group member had a job. One classmate used the microphone to record facts. Another clicked the mouse to find pictures. I typed the words using the keyboard. We also made a fun video using the webcam. Our teacher showed **our work** on the smartboard and said it was very **helpful**. We then printed our notes and put them in our workbook. It was the best group project ever! These digital tools helped us do the task quickly. I think digital learning is great because we all got involved and shared our ideas.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the story?

.....

2. Who used the mouse and why?

.....

3. What does "**our work**" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The class task was about
a) animals b) planets
c) roots of plants d) mountains
5. The underlined word "**helpful**" most likely means
a) easy to forget b) useful or good
c) funny or silly d) slow or boring



Dictation Time

Vocabulary

announcement	لغز/أحجية
produce	بسيط
command	بطاقة/بلاصة
challenge	مشغل موسيقى
the latest	متوهج/مشع
collaborate	يثق في/ثقة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

walk through	يقي فضولاً
interested in	يتصل بالإنترنت
reply to	يستعد

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يشعر	
ينهض/يستيقظ	

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
simple	complex
مقفّل	مفتوح

Definitions

.....: feeling interested in learning and knowing
.....: something that is difficult and tests someone's ability to complete
.....: happy and positive person

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mystery – with – for – responsibility – complete

Omar was nervous before entering the magical door. He didn't know what to expect. The room was filled (1) glowing lights and floating books. Each puzzle was a (2) The children had to collaborate and (3) each step. Sara felt proud when she found a clue behind a curtain. Zain helped unlock the box. They all smiled together. Their (4) helped them go to the next chapter.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- I had to remember the to complete the task correctly.
a) command b) letter c) tusk d) music player
- Mariam felt when she was chosen. She was very cheerful.
a) curious b) nervous c) excited d) shy
- Being helped Sara find the first clue faster than anyone else.
a) curious b) magical c) shining d) bright

Language

- Anas borrows books from friends.
a) often b) is often c) does often d) often does
- The sky clear in autumn.
a) never is b) is never c) never d) does never
- How often Osama wash the car?
a) does b) is c) has d) was

3 Complete the following dialog:

Mr. Adam is taking with the class about solving the puzzles.

Mr. Adam : I'm proud of you all.

Sara : (1) you, Mr. Adam!

Omar : (2) did you solve the puzzles?

Zain : By teamwork. It really works!

Sara : (3) is next for us?

Mr. Adam : A new (4) tomorrow!

All : A new adventure! We can't wait!

Zain : Let's stay curious always!



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Who is the teacher in the story?

a) Mr. Ali.	b) Mr. Adam.
c) Mr. Omar.	d) Mr. Zain.
2. How did the children feel after hearing the news?

a) Angry.	b) Sleepy.
c) Curious.	d) Sad.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We couldn't guess who left the cheerful letter, so it stayed a

a) mystery	b) chapter
c) responsibility	d) message
2. She prefers a/an life without too much difficulty.

a) daily	b) unfriendly
c) simple	d) magical
3. If you with your team, you'll solve the challenge.

a) discover	b) collaborate
c) lock	d) lack
4. Safaa at her desk when studying.

a) often	b) is often
c) often is	d) does often
5. Hisham brings extra pencils.

a) sometimes	b) is sometimes
c) does sometimes	d) sometimes does

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Dina (rarely/is) angry with her friends.
2. How often (you/do/go) to the dentist?
3. The weather (be) often sunny in summer.
4. Bassam always (help) his mother. He's a good son.

General

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The store (always is) busy on Saturdays.
- Lina (forgets rarely) her lunch box.
- My dad often (drive) me to school; it's his habit.
- The flowers (be) never ugly in spring.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Salma and Hani are talking about a science video.

Salma : I got an email from my teacher!

Hani : Cool! (1) did she write?

Salma : She sent us a link to a video.

Hani : What (2) of video was it?

Salma : It was a science video.

Hani : What did you use to watch it?

Salma : I used my (3)

Hani : A tablet is a perfect (4) device.

3 Write an email of 80 (EIGHTY) words to your friend Adel to tell him about your digital device. Your name is Hamza.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nour and Sara are talking about technology.

Nour : We used tablets in class today!

Sara : Really? (1) ?

Nour : We searched for pictures of space.

Sara : Was that fun?

Nour : (2) We also watched a short science video.

Sara : Did you write anything?

Nour : (3) We wrote facts about planets.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It is important to your friends and family.
a) achieve b) solve c) trust d) get
- Without, the group couldn't succeed.
a) teamwork b) mystery c) clue d) magic
- This pencil case belongs Amal, so please return it to her.
a) by b) with c) to d) from
- Hassan forgets his keys. It's unusual for him to do that.
a) never b) always c) usually d) often
- Hala always her friends with homework.
a) helping b) is helping c) help d) helps

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- How often (Rana/practice) her violin?
- Khaled (never is) rude to his teachers.
- The cafeteria (serves/usually) healthy food.

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

auditory	أنيق/مرتب
organize	حياة واقعية
journey	جسدي/مادي
action	أسلوب التعلم
particular	ممتع
mind maps	حركي

Language Expressions & Prepositions

related to	يأخذ استراحات قصيرة
make maps/charts	ينشئ نماذج
with my hands	بعيداً عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يقول		
يفهم		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
quiet	noisy
خطأ	صحيح

Definitions

: related to hearing things
: to arrange or put things in a particular order or a neat way
: a visual tool used to organize information

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****colorful – identified – enjoyable – does – makes**

Ali wanted to know how he learns best. He tried different ways and finally (1)..... his learning style. He is a visual learner. He prefers using pictures and (2)..... notes. His teacher gave him a real-life example to help him. Now, he (3)..... maps to study and puts things in neat order. Learning became easier and more (4)..... for him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

1. Sara is a fast who remembers everything the teacher says the first time.
a) organizer b) learner c) body d) sight
2. The teacher asked us to our desks before we go home today.
a) suit b) organize c) think d) answer
3. Your in the school play will help you make new friends.
a) example b) explanation c) way d) involvement
4. We must use this door to enter the library, not the other one.
a) physical b) particular c) enjoyable d) auditory

3 Complete the following dialog:

Salma and Mariam are talking about learning styles.

Salma : Mariam, do you enjoy sitting and reading?

Mariam : No, I don't. I like to move and do things.

Salma : (1)..... you a kinesthetic learner?

Mariam : Yes! I love (2)..... experiments.

Salma : That sounds fun!

Mariam : I also (3)..... models with my hands.

Salma : (4)..... moving help you think?

Mariam : Yes, it does. I learn better when I move.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Sami and Leila are talking about the different ways people learn.

Sami : How do you like to learn new things at school?

Leila : I like watching videos and looking at pictures. (1).....

Sami : (2).....?

Leila : My brother is different. He always wants to do things with his hands.

Sami : (3)..... He learns by doing!

Leila : Yes! Everyone learns in their own way. That makes learning more fun!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The test at school checks if children can hear all the different sounds clearly.
a) visual b) auditory c) colorful d) eye
- Amal keeps her desk very with all her pencils in the right place.
a) neat b) colorful c) auditory d) physical
- Nour is a/an learner who needs to see pictures to understand new ideas.
a) visual b) auditory c) physical d) neat
- The students will their favorite books during reading circle time today.
a) discuss b) identify c) happen d) touch
- Sara discovered that she can best when the room is quiet.
a) learn b) teach c) sit d) enjoy

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your learning style"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

distraction	.....	مسابقة/منافسة
cooperation	.....	وائق
mistake	.....	ناجح
creative	.....	وسائل الإعلام
regularly	.....	تقنية
experience	.....	قيادة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

revise for	.....	رأى حول
get ready for	.....	خطوة بخطوة
make friends	.....	وفقاً لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يتحدث	.....
.....	يسبح	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
large	tiny
.....	
معاً	بمفرده

Definitions

.....	: to make something better
.....	: doing something often at the same times
.....	: looking at something again to remember it

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

advertisement – experience – do – make – about

According to my teacher, group learning helps us become better thinkers. Last week, we had to (1) a project in class. My group made a large spidergram with colorful drawings. Each student added their opinion (2) the topic. We had fun. Later, our teacher showed us an (3) for a science camp. I hope we all go. It will be a great (4) to learn and play together.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- My father helped us to find a/an to the hard problem.
a) exam b) opinion c) solution d) mistake
- Noise outside is a huge for me. I can't study.
a) goal b) review c) distraction d) option
- The teacher said can be fun and full of creative ideas; teamwork is really useful.
a) single learning b) group learning c) opinion d) benefit

Language

- Omar is very tall, so he reach the high shelf easily.
a) isn't b) can c) can't d) is
- At the moment, Ali and his friends football in the playground.
a) is playing b) plays c) are playing d) play
- The children television right now because they have homework to finish first.
a) aren't watching b) are watching c) don't watch d) watch

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Rami has strong arms, so he (can't) lift heavy boxes.
- (Malak/can) swim across the big pool alone?
- My little brother has no teeth yet, so he can't (eating) hard apples.
- Where is (Dina/go) with her new bicycle?
- Judy (not/doing) her science project properly.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Huda was in winning the art competition. Everybody was happy for her.
a) successful b) special c) hard d) regular
- My best friend likes to online for school projects.
a) sleep b) research c) try d) review
- My friend's strong helped the team win the school science competition.
a) spidergram b) opinion
c) skill d) leadership
- Right now, the children quietly while their teacher is reading them a story.
a) is sitting b) sits c) are sitting d) sit
- The old dog is sick, so it play with the ball.
a) can b) is c) can't d) isn't

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mariam always had trouble spelling words. She mixed up letters like "b" and "d." Her teacher gave her some tips. First, Mariam made flashcards with pictures. Then, she practiced with a friend every day after school. After two weeks, she could spell better and even helped her friend with hard words! Mariam felt proud. She learned that working with someone and using pictures made spelling easier. Now, she enjoys writing short stories at home.

A) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
- What two things helped Mariam spell better?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mariam improved her spelling by
a) writing essays b) watching TV
c) practicing d) avoiding tests
- The underlined word "mixed up" most likely means
a) got ready b) got wrong c) repeated d) avoided

A

Dictation Time

Vocabulary

determination	بطاقة
golden	شجاع
hesitate	عطف
invisible	يصفق
pronunciation	وحدة/اتحاد
profile	رسم توضيحي

Language Expressions & Prepositions

succeed in	يخطو على
take a deep breath	يمسكون بأيدي بعضهم
cheer on	يؤمن بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يعنى		
يستسلم/يقنع عن		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
slowly	quickly/fast
شجاع	خائف

Definitions

: showing care and kindness to others
: a strong desire to achieve success
: being confident, not afraid

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****quit – unity – unit – in – courage**

The children saw a glowing sign in front of them. It said, "only those who believe (1)..... respect may cross." Omar was scared, but he didn't (2)..... . He took a step and whispered to himself. Sara clapped when Omar showed (3)..... . They held hands and moved slowly. Beneath them, the invisible bridge appeared with every act of kindness and (4)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

1. My teacher spoke, so we could understand.
a) fast b) clearly c) quickly d) nervously
2. Mr. Abdel Aziz deals his problems quickly and easily.
a) with b) in c) at d) about
3. Malak's grandmother taught her how to hard situations by staying calm.
a) repeat b) think c) pass d) succeed

Language

4. At present, Huda her room because her grandmother is coming to visit.
a) was cleaning b) cleans c) clean d) is cleaning
5. My dog in the park right now because it's raining heavily.
a) doesn't play b) is playing c) isn't playing d) plays
6. Khaled is a good artist, so he draw beautiful pictures of animals.
a) must b) can c) can't d) isn't

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Lina are talking about learning.

Ahmed : I always talk to my friends in English.

Lina : (1)..... do you do this?

Ahmed : Because it helps me learn new vocabulary.

Lina : (2)..... you draw diagrams?

Ahmed : Yes, I do. Diagrams help me remember.

Lina : Can we draw together?

Ahmed : Yes, of (3)..... . Let's do it during break time.

Lina : Great (4)..... . It will be fun.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1. helps Salma review before tests.
 - a) Her sister
 - b) Her cousin
 - c) Her friend
 - d) Her uncle
2. Salma sits at the front of the class to
 - a) talk to her friends
 - b) sleep early
 - c) see the board
 - d) sing songs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Before jumping into the pool, Waleed remembered to a deep breath.
a) give
c) lose
b) take
d) make
- The hours quickly when I play video games with my friends.
a) succeed
c) add
b) reach
d) pass
- Can you say that English, please?
a) on
c) in
b) at
d) for
- Zain learned about in technology class.
a) multimedia
c) sleeping
b) pronunciation
d) beauty
- Can Mariam the new song without looking at the words?
a) is singing
c) singing
b) sings
d) sing

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Hazem/can) play the guitar if his fingers are too small?
2. Tamer's leg is broken, so he (can) walk.
3. Where is Hamdy (go) without his jacket on?
4. Waleed and Mesbah (is) swimming in the pool together.

General

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Uncle Hassan (fix) my broken toy car right now.
- The boys (play) football in the street at the moment.
- Most birds have wings and feathers ريش, so they can (fly) high in the sky.
- Ibrahim studies math very hard, so he (can't) solve difficult problems quickly.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Mona and Hassan are talking about improving pronunciation.

Mona: I have trouble with pronunciation.

Hassan: I (1) my voice to practice.

Mona: Really? (2) does that help?

Hassan: This helps me hear my mistakes and fix them.

Mona: That's smart! (3) should I do?

Hassan: You should try it. It's easy.

Mona: (4) I'll do it after school today.

Hassan: You're welcome. Good luck, Mona.

3 Write EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Group learning"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Salma: I always sit at the front in English class.

Tamer: Why do you do that?

Salma: (1)

Tamer: (2)?

Salma: It helps me focus and learn better.

Tamer: (3)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The children must hold when crossing the busy street to school.
a) hands b) feet c) eyes d) heads
- Judy hides her cell phone her books every time her mom enters!
a) in b) on c) beneath d) at
- Lots of students use drawings for when they couldn't talk.
a) communication b) presentation
c) combination d) pronunciation
- The teacher made a for the class project.
a) plan b) game c) sound d) color
- Moaz has perfect memory, so he remember everyone's birthday dates.
a) can b) can't c) is d) isn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Look! Naser (climb) that tall tree in the garden.
- Why (the children/shout) so loudly right now?
- What languages (Nour/can) speak when she talks to her friends?

Monthly Model (1) on Units 1 & 2

General

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

took – world – microphone – task – make

My teacher let us talk to a class in another country. We used a (1) and webcam to (2) a video call. Everyone was happy. We could see and hear other children. I (3) a small note about their school. It was a fun experience. I felt like I learned about a whole new (4)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The is a small computer and it's easy to carry everywhere.
a) app b) laptop c) website d) screen
- My aunt shares recipes on
a) advertisements b) social media
c) walls d) social problems
- The learners in our class enjoy when the teacher explains things out loud.
a) kinesthetic b) eye c) visual d) auditory
- They going out late at night to be safe.
a) tried b) avoided c) created d) reviewed
- Mazen completes his homework on time.
a) sometimes b) is sometimes
c) does sometimes d) sometimes does
- Right now, Yasmin her favorite cartoon on TV in the living room.
a) watches b) watch
c) are watching d) is watching

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My friends (always/are) kind to each other.
- We (go/always) to bed before ten.
- (Yara/can) recognize her baby sister's crying sounds?
- Marwa has a broken finger, so she can't (to type) on the computer.
- Mariam has good ears, so she can (hearing) very quiet sounds at night.

Monthly Model (2) on Units 1 & 2

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Omar and Emad are talking about their school.

Omar : How was your day at school?

Emad : (1) How about yours?

Omar : It was great! We had a fun science experiment in lab.

Emad : (2) _____ ?

Omar : It was about climate change. (3)

Emad : In our class, we had a math test.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Some animals have the to see in the dark without using lights.

a) responsibility

b) mystery

c) ability

d) reality

2. The coach's helped the players understand their roles better.

a) commands

b) sounds

c) challenges

d) voices

3. This is the most tool we have in the science lab. It has many benefits.

a) confident

b) old

c) powerful

d) creative

4. Yasmin is because she can sleep without any night light.

a) critical

b) brave

c) scared

d) afraid

5. My friends busy after school.

a) are usually

b) usually are

c) usually

d) do usually

6. Nour speak English well with her American teacher?

a) Is

b) Has

c) Do

d) Can

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nada (usually/is) excited about birthdays.

2. Look! Amin (ride) his bicycle without training wheels.

3. Youssef isn't afraid of water, so he (can't) swim in the deep pool.

4. (Dogs/can) understand when their owners talk to them?



Dictation Time

Vocabulary

treatment	الإشعاع الذري
community	شبكة الإنترنت
inspire	روح
brave	السرطان
motivation	اكتشاف
admire	مقدوة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

from a young age	يتأكد
show love	معروف بـ
share knowledge with	في جميع أنحاء العالم

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يصبح	
يبين/يظهر	

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
true	untrue
رخيص	غال

Definitions

: friendly and caring
: a person who does great things for others
: success in reaching a goal

Quiz Time

continue – inspiring – passionate – stop – spirit

Doria Shafik was an Egyptian woman who worked hard for women's rights. She was (1)..... and wanted girls to learn and work. Her strong (2)..... helped her speak loudly when others stayed quiet. Doria gave many women motivation to (3)..... learning and working. She showed that one person can be a hero. Her words were (4)..... and full of power. Doria worked with others to help women go to school.

Vocabulary

1. Good teachers share their knowledge students to help them learn new things.
a) for
b) with
c) at
d) on
2. Egypt is known its amazing Pyramids.
a) by
b) at
c) for
d) in
3. The girl shared her cookies with everyone in the class.
a) kind
b) inspired
c) brave
d) determined
4. The of penicillin has saved millions of lives since 1928.
a) treatment
b) achievement
c) motivation
d) discovery

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Asmaa is asking Nour about her role model.

Asmaa :Who is your role model?

Nour : He (1) Dr. Farouk El-Baz.

Asmaa : (2) is Dr. Farouk El-Baz?

Nour : He's a famous scientist.

Asmaa : Is he a space scientist?

Nour : (3) _____, he is.

Asmaa :What did he (4) _____ ?

Nour : He helped us find underground water in deserts.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Amira admires Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed.

Fatma : Do you have a favorite scientist?

Amira : (1)..... I admire Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed.

Fatma : (2).....?

Amira : He is a scientist in chemistry.

Fatma : (3).....?

Amira : He helped establish and develop research centers in Egypt.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The school bus scared all the children, but nobody was hurt.

a) discovery

b) achievement

c) accident

d) invention

2. The of the camera lets us keep memories in pictures forever.

a) discovery

b) treatment

c) motivation

d) invention

3. We all want world, so children everywhere can play safely outside.

a) science

b) physics

c) research

d) peace

4. In class, we learn about how things move and why they fall.

a) physics

b) art

c) peace

d) research

5. The showed that exercise helps children do better in school.

a) peace

b) physics

c) research

d) science

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favorite scientist"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

admiration	عظلة/إجازة
motivate	قوة
absent	يلهم
athlete	موقع (جغرافي)
personality	فرد/عضو (جماعة)
geography	يدمج/يجمع بين

Language Expressions & Prepositions

travel for work	مهتم بـ
give advice to	يعمل بجد
go on a trip	مشهور بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يُكبر/يبلغ		
يفوز/يكسب		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
happy	sad
قوي	ضعيف

Definitions

.....: to feel admiration for someone
.....: to motivate or encourage
.....: someone you admire and try to be like

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**award – thinker – location – leaders – history**

Have you ever wondered what makes Egypt so important? Dr. Gamal Hamdan wrote a whole book about it called "*The Personality of Egypt*"! He wasn't just a writer – he was a deep (1)..... He showed how Egypt's climate, Nile River, and (2)..... between countries gave it a strong role in world history. He won Egypt's State Appreciation (3)..... for this amazing work. His ideas help students and (4)..... understand Egypt better.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

- A nurse plays an important in keeping people healthy.
a) history b) role c) match d) rule
- My teacher gave me good on how to study for the test.
a) vacation b) advice c) attack d) admiration
- We studied to learn about rivers, mountains, and different countries.
a) geography b) politics c) medal d) land

Language

- Yasmin her room and put all her toys away.
a) cleaned b) cleans c) cleaning d) clean
- My little brother scared during the storm last night.
a) is b) was c) were d) are
- Last summer, we to Giza and saw the amazing Pyramids together.
a) go b) goes c) going d) went

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- What (does) Mona say when she saw her surprise birthday cake?
- My uncle (take) us to the zoo in his new car last Sunday.
- Kareem (not/want) to eat vegetables at dinner time yesterday.
- The birds (sing) loudly outside my window early this morning at sunrise.
- (Be) your little sister scared last night?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I'm a of the school science club and we meet every Thursday.
a) medal b) role c) member d) number
- My father often for work to different countries around the world.
a) moves b) travels c) drives d) grows
- My brother loves to help the kitchen when we bake cookies.
a) by b) out c) in d) on
- We have any homework yesterday because it was a special holiday.
a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) weren't
- Who the fastest runner in the race at school sports day?
a) was b) does c) were d) are

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mr. Waleed has taught me science for three years. His unique teaching methods make complex topics simple. He does exciting experiments and shares funny stories to help us understand. Beyond regular classes, he volunteers his time to run a free after-school science club. There, we do hands-on activities like building robots and mixing chemicals. When our school couldn't have proper lab devices last year, Mr. Waleed bought them with his own money. His famous saying is, "Curiosity is the beginning of knowledge," which shows his teaching method. Because of his inspiring method, many of his past students have careers in medicine and engineering. Mr. Waleed doesn't only teach science, but he is also admired by many students.

A) Answer the following questions:

- What are two ways Mr. Waleed supports his students?
- What did he do when the school didn't have lab tools?
- What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mr. Waleed makes science easier by
a) giving less homework b) using exciting experiments
c) playing games d) buying laboratories
- The underlined word "admire" means
a) want to know things b) respect and like someone
c) remember facts d) get good grades

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

agreement	يبتسم ابتسامة عريضة
disease	فضول
honesty	مستولية
swimmer	منفعم بالأمل
promise	يحمي
biography	جدير بالإعجاب

Language Expressions & Prepositions

give up on	يهتم بـ
do the right thing	مفتلئ بـ
follow a dream	طيب مع

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يقاتل	
يجد	

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
up	down
خارج	داخل

Definitions

.....: to smile widely
.....: move the head up and down to show agreement
.....: not giving up when things are hard

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

do – make – dedication – honesty – warm

One day, a young nurse made a mistake at the hospital although she had (1)..... in her work. She was scared to tell the truth. But Dr. Ghoneim said, "Always (2)..... the right thing." She told the truth and learned from it. Dr. Ghoneim gave her a (3)..... smile and said, "I'm proud of your honesty." From that day on, she worked with (4)..... and never lost hope.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- The kids showed by telling the truth about breaking the vase.
a) honesty b) curiosity c) dedication d) lying
- I saw my dad in agreement to join the trip.
a) think b) nod c) reach d) return
- My grandmother stays by walking in the park every morning.
a) great b) hopeful c) keen d) healthy

Language

- The birds beautiful songs outside my bedroom window last weekend.
a) sing b) sang c) sings d) singing
- The playground wet after the rain stopped yesterday.
a) is b) are c) was d) were
- Last week, my dad me how to ride my bike without help.
a) teach b) teaches c) teaching d) taught

3 Complete the following dialog:

Mariam and Ahmed are talking about Dr. Ghoniem.

Mariam : Do you know Dr. Ghoniem, Ahmed?

Ahmed : Yes, I do. He's a (1)..... who saves many lives.

Mariam : How did he become so successful?

Ahmed : Through hard work and love for his community.

Mariam : (2)..... can we learn from him?

Ahmed : That everyone can (3)..... a difference!

Mariam : Can children make a difference in their community?

Ahmed : Yes, they (4)..... . By studying and helping others now.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Dr. Ghoniem is a doctor in diseases.
 - heart
 - bone
 - kidney
 - eye
- Because of Dr. Ghoniem, young doctors
 - change hospitals
 - learn new techniques
 - become teachers
 - work less hours

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Eslam bought his mother a bottle to put water in.
 - broken
 - keen
 - paper
 - crystal
- We must the water in the fish tank every week.
 - change
 - come
 - charge
 - share
- Tomorrow, I must my fear of speaking in front of the class.
 - face
 - charge
 - nod
 - grin
- Our teacher, Mr. Ahmed has a big full of love for children.
 - heart
 - kidney
 - mouth
 - honesty
- The water in the swimming pool too cold for swimming yesterday.
 - were
 - was
 - is
 - are

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Dina (lose) her favorite pencil case at school two days ago.
- We (not/meet) our new neighbors when they moved in last week.
- How much money (do) Yousef save last month?
- The dog (run) away when it saw the big cat in the garden.

General

Al-Azhar

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hadeer (not/bring) her colored pencils to art class this morning.
2. My father (fix) my broken bicycle yesterday after work.
3. (Do) the students enjoy the trip to the museum last Tuesday?
4. Kady (wear) her new pink dress in her cousin's wedding last night.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Adam admires Dr. Ghoniem.

Mariam : Are doctors heroes, Adam?

Adam : Yes, they (1)

Mariam : (2) do you think so?

Adam : Because they help patients get better.

Mariam : (3) is your hero as a doctor?

Adam : He's Dr. Ghoniem.

Mariam : Does he help only in Egypt?

Adam : No, he (4) His work helps the whole world!

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your hero"

.....

.....

.....

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Karim believes Dr. Ahmed Zewail is a good role model.

Khaled : Who is your role model, Karim?

Karim : (1)

Khaled : (2)

Karim : He made great discoveries in science.

Khaled : (3)

Karim : I like him because he worked hard and never gave up.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Please sure you wash your hands before eating your lunch at school.
a) do b) take c) get d) make
2. The teacher always advice to students when they have a problem.
a) does b) gives c) prevents d) faces
3. Hany trained every day because he wanted to the top medal in the race.
a) see b) win c) break d) beat
4. My sister is really interested reading books about space and the stars.
a) for b) of c) in d) at
5. Ziad know the answer to the teacher's question yesterday in class.
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) wasn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The boys (not/clean) their room before their mother came.
2. Where (does) Ahmed find his lost football in the school playground?
3. My teacher (give) us gold stars for our good behavior last week.

A

Dictation Time

Vocabulary

evaluate	.....	.....	طليق/فصيح
left out	.....	.....	بحرص/بعناية
careless	.....	.....	عادل/منصف
close friend	.....	.....	ينضم إلى
invite	.....	.....	اختيار
classmate	.....	.....	ضار/مؤذ

Language Expressions & Prepositions

excited about	.....	.....	لدهشته
make a decision	.....	.....	يتصرف بحذر/بعناية
think of	.....	.....	في المستقبل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يقهم	.....	.....
.....	يكون	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
responsible	irresponsible
.....	
.....	
.....	

Definitions

.....	: a choice you can make
.....	: not caring about your actions
.....	: bad or harmful

Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fluent – comfortable – to – smart – option

I had to evaluate two schools. One was close (1)..... home, but had fewer smart teachers. The other was far, but I heard students there were (2)..... in English. My family helped me think about every (3)..... . It wasn't easy, but I tried to act with care. I finally made a (4)..... choice, and I was proud of my decision.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Every time I hear that song, I think my grandmother.
a) in b) of
c) for d) at
- It is to talk while the teacher is explaining the lesson.
a) responsible b) impolite
c) comfortable d) polite
- The cooperated well to finish the school project on time.
a) players b) coaches
c) classmates d) parents
- You should read the instructions before starting your work.
a) happily b) politely c) badly d) carefully

3 Complete the following dialog:

Mahmoud and Nada are discussing their choices in the morning.

Mahmoud :What do you choose in the morning?

Nada : I (1) my clothes and what to eat.

Mahmoud :That's a good way to start the day.

Nada :Thanks. (2)..... you make a to-do list?

Mahmoud :Yes, I do. It helps me a lot. (3)..... about you?

Nada : Me too! It saves time.

Mahmoud : Smart choices make our life (4)

Nada : I agree with you.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Mazen and Amr are making a choice to watch a cartoon or a nature show.

Mazen : Should we watch a cartoon or a nature show?

Amr : I like both! (1).....?

Mazen : We watched a cartoon yesterday.

Amr : Then let's learn something new today.

Mazen : (2)..... Do you think we made a good choice?

Amr : (3)..... We chose learning and fun together.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If you well, people will trust you and enjoy being around you.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| a) plan | b) decide |
| c) behave | d) invite |

2. We need to the results before moving on to the next step.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| a) evaluate | b) think |
| c) behave | d) decide |

3. When the is between right and wrong, it is called a problem.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| a) result | b) reason |
| c) birthday | d) choice |

4. It is not to take someone's things without asking.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| a) negative | b) unfair |
| c) possible | d) polite |

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"An important decision you made"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

goal	عقل
consequence	وقت المذاكرة
skip	يضيع/يهدر
influence	إصابة
recover	حكيم
tough	ميدالية ذهبية

Language Expressions & Prepositions

study for	يفوت سباقاً
stay home	يطالب النصيحة
take a risk	مستول عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

ينسى		
يختار		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
pass	fail
ممکن	مستحيل

Definitions

.....: to be useful to someone
.....: the result or effect of an action
.....: a choice you make

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

choices – injured – agreed – for – smart

Adam's story shows that thinking carefully is important. When he was (1), he didn't rush to join the race. Instead, he asked (2) help. He also thought of the results of his (3) By taking time to recover Adam got ready for the next competition. His decision taught him and others that (4) choices can lead to success.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Good friends can you to do better and make smart choices.
a) recover b) injure c) influence d) rest
- The football showed us how to follow tactics.
a) injury b) sugar c) learner d) coach
- Sara decided to school today because she felt sick.
a) skip b) fail c) pass d) cross

Language

- If they don't bring their swimsuits, they swim in the pool.
a) can't b) didn't c) won't d) isn't
- When we go camping, we stories around the fire.
a) tells b) will tell c) telling d) told
- You wash your hands before eating your food.
a) may b) shouldn't c) should d) not

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- We (drink/should) plenty of water during summer.
- (You/should) take your umbrella if it rains?
- Children (should) play near busy roads.
- When Zain (finish) the puzzle, we'll take a photo.
- What will Ali do if he (not/know) the answer?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I always my homework when I don't write it down.
a) pass b) fall c) forget d) cross
- Nader his spelling test because he didn't practice well.
a) passed b) failed c) skipped d) trained
- Our school magazine had a/an with a scientist who helped the environment.
a) influence b) benefit
c) decision d) interview
- Where will you go if your parents you make the trip?
a) lets b) let c) will let d) letting
- What I wear to the school party this weekend?
a) should b) shouldn't c) have d) can't

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One weekend, I joined a school race. I trained hard for it and wanted to win. But before the race, I made a bad decision. I ate a lot of sugar and candy bars because I thought they would give me energy. Instead, they made me feel sick and slow. During the race, I had a stomachache and couldn't run fast. My coach asked why I didn't follow his instructions. He said food has an **effect** on how our bodies work. I felt bad and wished I had listened. **That bad choice** taught me a lesson. Next time, I will eat healthy food before any race. The right choices can help us do our best.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What did the coach ask the writer?

.....

3. What does "**That bad choice**" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The writer felt sick during the race because he
a) skipped training b) didn't sleep
c) ate too much sugar d) forgot his shoes
- The underlined word "**effect**" means a
a) fun game b) strong color
c) result or change d) favorite meal

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

affect	مؤثر للمياه
fair	يستكشف
honest	سنوي
judgment	يتخلى عن/يستسلم
receive	فعال
free time	مضغوط

Language Expressions & Prepositions

give attention to	ينتهي به
at first	يحتل الصدارة
come up	متوتر من/ بشأن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يحتفظ/يستمر		
يترك/يفادر		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
agree	disagree
مُستبعد	مُشتمل

Definitions

: to make or invent something new
: being honest and having strong moral principles
: not to listen to or give attention to someone or something

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

agreed – matters – create – ignore – suggested

Our class planned an annual garden project. Some wanted to plant flowers; others wanted vegetables. It caused a problem. I (1)..... we hold a meeting and listen to everyone. The teacher (2)..... to my idea. We worked in teams and gave attention to every voice. The plants started to grow and flow with green leaves. Teamwork always (3)..... Besides, when you're organized and fair, you can (4)..... something great.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- We must trying, even if the puzzle is very hard.
a) keep b) stop c) refuse d) agree
- Can you a good movie for us to watch tonight?
a) suggest b) keep c) test d) flow
- After the rain, water started to down the street like a small river.
a) fix b) suggest c) flow d) keep

Language

- If she doesn't wear a coat, she cold at night.
a) is b) was c) will be d) has
- be late if the car breaks down again?
a) Will they b) They will
c) Do they d) They were
- Should we speak loudly in the school hallways?
a) Yes, you should. b) No, you shouldn't.
c) Yes, you can. d) No, you must.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Tamer always forgets his homework.

Tamer : I forgot to do my homework again.

Aya : You shouldn't wait until the last minute.

Tamer : (1)..... should I do?

Aya : You (2)..... write a note in your notebook.

Tamer : Good idea. What (3)..... I do?

Aya : You shouldn't (4)..... before doing it.

Tamer : Yes, I shouldn't play first.

Aya : Good choice! Homework comes first.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Who helped make the learning plan?

a) Daughter.	b) The speaker
c) Uncle.	d) Teacher.
2. What did they build for school?

a) Robot.	b) Model house.
c) Machine.	d) Painting.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Scientists often the deep sea to find new life.

a) explore	b) receive
c) invent	d) save
2. We took the wrong turn and ended in the wrong place.

a) over	b) around
c) up	d) through
3. Our family trip is something we plan and enjoy together once a year.

a) annual	b) daily
c) monthly	d) weekly
4. It's important to be and tell the truth even if it's hard.

a) moral	b) honest
c) unfair	d) personal
5. If your friend is sad, you try to cheer them up.

a) shouldn't	b) should
c) mustn't	d) didn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You (brush/should) your teeth twice a day.
2. Nadi (should) stay up so late every night.
3. Will we get wet if we (not/take) our umbrellas?
4. Will Eman be sad if her cat (die)?

General

Al-Azhar

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. If she (will hurry) up, she will catch the train.
2. When your dad (return), he will be surprised.
3. Who (I/should) invite to my birthday party?
4. The students (should) talk during reading time.

- 2 Complete the following dialog:**

Omar : Did you ever have to miss something fun for something else?

Celia : Yes, my friend and I had to skip a football game to study.

Omar : (1) that hard?

Celia : Yes, it was. Our test was really important.

Omar : (2) helped you make the choice?

Celia : Our older sister (3) us advice.

Omar : Did you do well on the test?

Celia : (4) and we watched a game later!

- 3 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (90) words on:**

"Asking for advice for a problem you have"

- 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:**

Kareem is asking for and giving advice.

Kareem : I feel sleepy in class every day. What should I do?

Nour : (1)?

Kareem : Yes, I sleep late at night.

Nour : (2)?

Kareem : (3)?

Nour : You should eat breakfast before school.

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The student felt when the teacher did not accept his idea.

- a) fair b) left out c) comfortable d) accepted

2. If you don't study at all, you will the test.

- a) pass b) cross c) fail d) skip

3. The asked the athlete about his injury and how he felt during the race.

- a) interview b) maker c) interviewer d) reader

4. The voice of the teacher helped calm the nervous students.

- a) moral b) gentle c) organized d) annual

5. We shouldn't too many sweets before dinner.

- a) to eat b) eat c) eats d) eating

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. We (should/worry) too much about small problems.

2. Where (Malak/should) go after lunch?

3. If you (not/share) your toys, others won't play.

Monthly Model (1) on Units 3 & 4

General

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gave up – cared for – brave – hero – cancer

Dr. Samira Moussa was a kind person who cared about her community. She was also (1)..... . She worked with scientists to help find new ways to treat people with (2)..... . Her work showed her passion for science. Even when times were hard, she never (3)..... . Her courage and kindness made her a true (4)..... to many Egyptians.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. That movie got a lot of because it was very kind and funny.
a) sadness b) attack c) admiration d) strength
2. My uncle is a person. He never gives up.
a) weak b) determined c) useless d) boring
3. The little boy showed great when he wanted to know what was inside the box.
a) agreement b) curiosity c) happiness d) weakness
4. Basmala had the to stay home or go out with friends yesterday.
a) option b) situation c) result d) action
5. What will you do if your friend you a surprise gift?
a) give b) gave c) gives d) giving
6. Three days ago, Rana all her homework before watching TV.
a) finishes b) finish c) finished d) finishing

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sister (not/eat) her lunch because she ate too many snacks.
2. (Be) the movie you watched yesterday scary or funny?
3. Eman (draw) a picture of her family for her art homework last night.
4. What will you wear if the weather (be) cold?
5. What (we/should) do to save more water at home?

Monthly Model (2) on Units 3 & 4

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Salma admires Dr. Samira Moussa.

Mona : Do you know any Egyptian women scientists?

Salma : (1)..... I really admire Dr. Samira Moussa.

Mona : (2).....?

Salma : She studied nuclear physics at Cairo University.

Mona : Was she the first woman to study that?

Salma : (3)..... She worked on atomic radiation.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The injury had a negative on the athlete's health.

- a) risk b) training c) rule d) impact

2. Your to keeping your room clean makes your parents very proud.

- a) dedication b) happiness c) pride d) proud

3. A studies maps, climates, and places all around the world.

- a) geographer b) photographer c) trainer d) coach

4. your sister enjoy the magic show at the mall last weekend?

- a) Do b) Did c) Does d) Was

5. We have enough time to finish the puzzle before bedtime yesterday.

- a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) weren't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You (shouldn't) be proud when you help others.

2. What should Hala (does) if she forgets her homework?

3. Yasmin (not/sleep) well last night.

4. The children (plant) new flowers last spring.

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

contact	.....	.....	يدعم/يساند
unsure	.....	.....	ورشة عمل
purpose	.....	.....	مهما
reader	.....	.....	يتخرج
opportunity	.....	.....	مصمم
reality	.....	.....	شفق

Language Expressions & Prepositions

achieve a goal	.....	.....	يتبع قاعدة
dream of	.....	.....	يعمل بجد
planning for the future	.....	.....	يفكر في

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يخبر	.....	.....
.....	يفكر	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
succeed	fail
خيال	حقيقة

B

Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

supported – succeeded – bright – passion – designer

Sara loved drawing clothes since she was little. She had a real (1)..... for colors and styles. Her family believed in her talent and (2)..... her dream. One summer, Sara joined a fashion workshop and met a famous (3)..... . That day changed her life. She now plans to graduate from design school and follow a career in fashion. Sara is working hard to build a (4)..... future.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I tried hard, but I my first driving test.
a) supported b) failed
c) contacted d) waited
- That artist is very at painting small details; we all admire his works أعماله.
a) unsure b) keen
c) skillful d) bad
- They moved because of their father's job in a foreign country.
a) broad b) pride
c) abroad d) board
- Before buying anything, think whether you really need it.
a) at b) for
c) about d) in

3 Complete the following dialog:

Dina wants to be a teacher.

Noor :What is your dream goal?

Dina : I want to be a (1).....

Noor :Why do you want to be a teacher?

Dina : I (2)..... helping children learn new things.

Noor :What (3) do you need?

Dina : I need to be kind and good at explaining.

Noor : (4) can you prepare for that?

Dina : I will practice teaching and read books.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nour wants to become a chef.

Aya : What do you want to be when you grow up?

Nour : (1).....

Aya : Why do you want to be a chef?

Nour : (2).....

Aya : (3).....?

Nour : No, it isn't hard.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Salma was proud because she worked hard and her goal.

- a) filled b) arrived c) achieved d) told

2. Ali was able to pass the exam because he decided to hard all year.

- a) take b) work c) achieve d) follow

3. What is the real of education and going to school?

- a) step b) profession c) career d) purpose

4. Ahmed didn't miss the to help his friend feel better.

- a) suggestion b) profession c) ability d) opportunity

5. Eslam became a fast after reading books every night.

- a) swimmer b) reader c) designer d) driver

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Planning for your future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
talent	جامعة
education	طب
astronaut	مستشفى
success	يُقْلَد/يُنسَخ
effort	مهارة
respected	يشارك
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
reach a goal	يجهز/يعد لـ
for dinner	يعتني بـ
reach a dream	يشعر بتحسن
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
ينسى	
يصبح	
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
success	failure
فضولي	شاعر بالملل
Definitions	
: natural skill or ability	
: trying hard to do something	
: something you want to achieve	

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

university – wish – achieve – respected – match

I am still thinking about my future job, but I have many dreams. I (1) to find a suitable career. It should (2) my skill and interest. I will go to (3) to get a good education. I believe training and practice help me get ready. I want to be (4) and feel proud of my work. I know my dream will come true if I work hard and never give up.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

- He is studying to get a degree in at the university.
a) lessons b) success c) teaching d) skill
- Their success is a great example of what can achieve.
a) hard work b) homework c) easiness d) laziness
- Watch the cat as it jumps from the wall and tries to on its feet.
a) copy b) reach
c) land d) participate

Language

- Adam has his library card, so he going to borrow new books.
a) are b) is c) am d) be
- The sun is setting now, so it be dark outside very soon.
a) is going b) is going to c) going to d) go to
- you going to bring your pencil case tomorrow?
a) Is b) Are c) Will d) Do

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- What time (you/going) to meet your friends at the mall?
- Are you (go) to help with the school play?
- We (not/go) visit the beach if it's too cold.
- I am (going) be very tired after that long trip.
- We (not/going) go to the fair if it's too crowded.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- With a lot of hard work, you can your dream.
a) do b) give c) reach d) take
- Our grandfather is a very man because he is wise and kind.
a) hard b) free c) busy d) respected
- The library has a/an of all the books that you can borrow to read.
a) talent b) gift c) list d) amount
- The study of helps doctors understand all diseases.
a) skill b) list c) gift d) medicine
- The children are hungry, so they eat all their vegetables today.
a) are going b) going to c) are going to d) will go

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My future dream is to be a nurse. I want to work in a hospital and help patients feel better. Nurses must look after people and provide them care. I think this job is very important. My cousin is a nurse, and she inspires me. I know I need a good education and training to do this job. I will go to university and learn everything I need. I wish to be kind and helpful like my cousin. I want my dream to come true, and I will work hard to achieve it. My family always smiles when I talk about my plan. I believe I can succeed.

A) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
- Who inspires the writer to become a nurse?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "she" refer to?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The writer wants to be a
a) driver b) pilot c) nurse d) painter
- The underlined word "look after" means
a) teach b) think of c) take care of d) visit

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

equally	مركز
engineering	بشكل مثالي/تماماً
divide	عدل/إنصاف
design	الصف
aspiration	محبط/منهبط العزيمة
building	استوديو/مرسم

Language Expressions & Prepositions

lose hope	يتخذ شكلاً/يتجسد
along the way	يكسب مالاً
at least	موهبة لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يرمي		
يعتقد/يفكر		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
perfectly	imperfectly
يخسر	يفوز

Definitions

.....: nervous and uncomfortable

.....: unusual or special

.....: completely or fully

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

focused – make – do – designing – engineering

I want to be an engineer. I love (1)..... because it mixes math and creativity. I dream of (2)..... something amazing. At home, I made a studio to draw my ideas. I try to stay (3)..... on school to reach my goal. One day, I will (4)..... money by doing what I love. I know it takes work, but I'm ready to do a job that matters.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Nelly felt when she could not solve the hard math problem by herself.
a) shy b) discouraged c) unique d) successful
- She can speak both Arabic and English, so she can talk to many people.
a) strangely b) perfectly c) instead d) slowly
- Esraa has a wonderful talent drawing animals that look very real.
a) at b) on c) for d) of

Language

- The child is hungry, so I to feed him his favorite food.
a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to
- they going to watch the new cartoon movie this weekend?
a) Is b) Are c) Will d) Do
- The baby birds are big now, so they fly from the nest soon.
a) is going to b) are going to c) going to d) will to

3 Complete the following dialog:

Samar wants to include Youssef with them.

Samar : Youssef is shy. He doesn't talk much.

Khaled : Maybe he (1)..... nervous in big groups.

Samar : (2)..... we ask him to join our team?

Khaled : Yes, we should. That will make him feel welcome.

Samar : Youssef, would you like to help us paint?

Youssef : Really? Yes, I (3)..... love to.

Khaled : (4)..... you good at colors?

Samar : Yes, I am. Everyone is special in teamwork.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What was the problem with the machine?
 - It broke.
 - It worked well.
 - It was too big.
 - It didn't work well.
- What does "discouraged" mean?
 - Happy.
 - Tired.
 - Sad.
 - Funny.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Rayan has a real to become the fastest runner in the school.
 - pathway
 - aspiration
 - plant
 - heart
- My grandmother likes to fresh flowers from her beautiful garden every morning.
 - blame
 - divide
 - gather
 - treat
- The student was so that she finished all her homework early.
 - respectful
 - tired
 - natural
 - focused
- Omnia wants to invite least seven of her friends to the birthday party.
 - by
 - from
 - at
 - on
- Why Reem going to wear her new dress to the party?
 - are
 - is
 - does
 - will

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Where is (Ali/go) to go after school today?
- I think it (be) fun to learn new things.
- We (not/go) to visit the zoo if we are tired.
- What (you/are) going to do this weekend?

General

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- What are you going (bring) to the picnic?
- I (going/be) excited for the next school trip.
- Are we (go) to visit the aquarium soon?
- My sister (not/be) sad if she loses the game. I know her well.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Ali and Sara are working on a project as a team.

Ali : We have a big project to finish today.

Sara : Yes! Let's divide the work equally.

Ali : (1) you draw pictures?

Sara : Yes, I can. I'll draw them. (2) you need any help?

Ali : Yes, I need help coloring this part.

Sara : I'll help. It will look perfect together.

Ali : (3) you! I like how we support each other.

Sara : (4) always makes things better!

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your dream job"

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Farida wants help with her story.

Farida : I want to write a story about a hero.

Omar : (1)! Let's write it together.

Farida : (2)?

Omar : A hero is someone who works hard for others.

Farida : Can you help me choose a hero?

Omar : (3) Let's write about a famous scientist.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I will the cookies with my brother so we both get the same number.
a) gather b) treat c) divide d) sell
- We should the food between us equally.
a) blame b) divide c) gather d) treat
- I think Saif has a real talent building amazing things with Lego.
a) at b) in c) with d) for
- It's getting cold outside, so we wear our warm jackets today.
a) going b) going to c) are going to d) has to
- Zain finished his homework, so he play video games after lunch.
a) are going to b) is going to c) going to d) be going to

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)

in brackets:

- When are (you/go) to start your new class?
- I think it (be) a fun day at the park tomorrow.
- They (not/go) go to the pool if it's closed.



Dictation Time

Vocabulary

volunteer	غير عادل
law	عدالة/إنصاف
equal	مواطن
rubbish	دليل/كتيب
tradition	ثقافة
nature	قاعدة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

follow a law/rule	يحسن التعامل مع
show respect to	غير لطيف/غير عادل مع
on the ground	يبقى آمناً/نظيف

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يرمى		
يدفع		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
polite	impolite
يوفر	يهدر/يضيع

Definitions

: to make something better
: not to treat people in an equal way
: to help people do good things

B

Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

prove – citizen – rubbish – protect – follow

It's not fair to be unkind to others just because they're different. A global (1)..... treats all people kindly. You can (2)..... the environment by planting trees. Many people volunteer to collect (3)..... from the streets. It's our job to protect the Earth. If you (4)..... every rule and law, you are doing good things. One small step can bring big change. Be fair, be kind, be smart.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- My daughter is learning about fairness and in class today.
a) cleverness b) justice
c) kindness d) injustice
- Egyptian is known for its music, food, and history.
a) culture b) rule
c) law d) plant
- Everyone must follow the to live in peace.
a) culture b) law
c) rubbish d) tradition
- The coach the team before the big match.
a) protected b) encouraged
c) discouraged d) wasted

3 Complete the following dialog:

Salma and Karim are discussing being a global citizen.

Salma : What are the things you must do as a global citizen?

Karim : I must respect others and help (1)..... the world better.

Salma : (2)..... do you help?

Karim : I recycle and don't waste food.

Salma : I throw trash in the bin. (3) that good?

Karim : Yes, that's very good.

Salma : We should all try, right?

Karim : Yes, small (4)..... make big differences.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Lina is asking about good citizens.

Lina : Is it good to respect what other people believe?

Mahmoud : (1) We should respect different beliefs معتقدات.

Lina : (2) ?

Mahmoud : Yes, we should be global citizens.

Lina : (3) ?

Mahmoud : Because it helps us live in peace.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We must our classroom clean and neat every day.

- a) flow b) show c) keep d) follow

2. Some children are need of food and water. We should help them.

- a) by b) for c) under d) in

3. Saying bad words is very and not nice.

- a) impolite b) polite c) bored d) equal

4. Children learn how to flowers at school.

- a) waste b) volunteer c) plant d) throw

5. Teachers should always their students to do their best.

- a) protect b) discourage c) encourage d) plant

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Being global citizens"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

necessary	مستوية
environment	يتطوع/متطوع
citizenship	عطف/طيبة
diversity	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
convince	تلوث البلاستيك
terrible	تهديد

Language Expressions & Prepositions

take care of	يتخذ إجراء
catch the train	في السينما
in danger	يرمى في داخل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يلحق		
يدفع		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
real	unreal
يقلل	يزيد

Definitions

- : to do your duty and take care of something
- : to give your time to help others without being paid
- : to treat people or things with care and kindness

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

amount – number – reusable – global – reduce

Plastic pollution is a huge danger to sea animals. Every year, millions of animals eat or get stuck ب يلتصق in plastic. We can stop this. One good way is to use (1)..... water bottles instead of new ones. I also learned that rivers carry a large (2)..... of waste into the ocean. If we act now, we can (3)..... this impact on the environment. It's our (4)..... responsibility.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. My father the printer to the computer so I could print my homework.
a) connected b) communicated c) reduced d) increased
2. Leen beautiful, smooth stones from the side of the river.
a) threw b) volunteered c) collected d) hurried
3. Ismail knows he has to his duty by cleaning his room.
a) make b) see c) think d) do

Language

4. Camelia put her hands up before she speaks in the classroom?
a) Did b) Must c) Is d) Was
5. Donia a very interesting dream about flying last night.
a) has b) having c) is having d) had
6. The baker fresh bread early in the morning every day.
a) is baking b) baked c) bakes d) was baking

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. To make her teacher happy, Sara (must/listening) during the class lesson.
2. Farida usually (drink) a glass of milk before she goes to bed.
3. Ghada and her friend (build) a sandcastle right now.
4. Last night, Esraa (find) her lost toy under her bed.
5. Where (your parents/go) at this moment?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Global includes caring about the problems facing the world.
a) cleverness b) handbook c) justice d) citizenship
- A doctor's main job is to care of people who are sick.
a) make b) get c) take d) act
- To start, the teacher gave every student a piece of paper.
a) of b) by c) off d) on
- Fares wear his school uniform when he goes to school.
a) can b) might c) must d) may
- Please be quiet, your father in his room at the moment.
a) sleeps b) is sleeping c) slept d) was sleeping

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Being a good citizen means respecting rules and people. At school, Kareem never runs in the halls, waits his turn, and listens to his teachers. One day, he saw two boys throwing paper on the floor. Kareem didn't hurry away. He picked it up and put it in the bin. His teacher smiled and said, "That's real citizenship." Kareem also takes care of the plants in the playground. He waters them and teaches younger students to do the same. His class decided to paint a wall with messages about being a good citizen. Kareem helped with that, too. He knows that small acts, like cleaning or being kind, are necessary to make the world better.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....

2. What did Kareem do when he saw paper on the floor?
.....

3. Why do you think his teacher smiled at him?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Kareem showed respect at school by
a) running in the hall b) ignoring others
c) throwing papers d) listening and helping
5. The underlined word "necessary" means
a) not allowed b) boring c) very important d) funny

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

function	إعادة تدوير
trophy	مُفَازات/جوائزي
pleasure	شرف/تكريم
catchy	خيمة
included	منبهر/متأثر
respectful	يصفق

Language Expressions & Prepositions

into the future	يلتقط/يجمع
with excitement	بقصد/بهدف
make a poster	يجذب الانتباه

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يخسر/يفقد		
يشعر بـ		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
catch	miss
فائز	الأول

Definitions

: a cup awarded as a prize
: being honest
: function, role

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

included – left out – trash – pick – catchy

Our class went outside to clean the school yard. We saw a lot of (1)..... around the trees. We used gloves to stay safe and worked together to (2)..... up everything. Later, we designed a (3)..... sign to remind others to keep the place clean. I felt (4)..... and happy to be part of a team. This small action shows that we are global citizens.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- The doctor put on clean before checking my wound الجرح.
a) pants b) gloves c) fingers d) shoes
- The judge wants to Hala the winning cup.
a) reward b) award c) clap d) carry
- Rayan hopes to a device that can talk to animals.
a) think b) do c) explore d) invent

Language

- To have strong bones, you drink milk every morning.
a) shouldn't b) is c) may d) must
- Adam a new storybook every night before he sleeps.
a) was reading b) reads c) read d) are reading
- Two days ago, we a very high sandcastle on the beach.
a) build b) are building c) built d) were building

3 Complete the following dialog:

Tamer : What did the judge say about our invention?

Yasmin : He said he was impressed by our teamwork.

Tamer : Did we get the first (1).....?

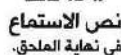
Yasmin : No, we (2)..... . We got the second prize.

Tamer : Were you happy about that?

Yasmin : Yes, I (3).....; we worked hard.

Tamer : (4)..... made our team special?

Yasmin : We listened and shared every step.



1. The project started last

2. picked up trash and planted flowers.

- a) Teachers b) Students
c) Both a and b d) None

1. The wise in the competition gave helpful advice to all the young artists.

- a) beginners b) runner
c) learner d) judge

2. The visit to the museum was very for all students. They learned something new.

- a) brave b) funny
c) bad d) meaningful

3. Leen needs help to a poster for the school play.

- a) make b) do
c) build d) appear

4. We learned that too much is bad for our planet.

- a) gloves b) cleaning
c) trash d) recycling

1. _____ (I must) finish all my homework before I can play video games?

2. Hala _____ (write) a letter to her best friend two days ago.

3. My mother (bake) a delicious cake in the kitchen at the moment.

4. A baker is a person who (make) bread and cakes every day.

General

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- Hassan and his family (eat) dinner together at the new restaurant yesterday.
- Hala is a good girl; she always (help) her mother in the kitchen.
- I can't talk on the phone now because I (do) my homework.
- The team players (must/to work) together if they want to win the game.

- 2 Complete the following dialog:**

Nada thinks that her sister is a good citizen as she volunteers every weekend.

Rami : Who is a good citizen in your life?

Nada : My sister is a good citizen in my life.

Rami : (1) do you think that?

Nada : Because she (2) every weekend.

Rami : Where (3) she go?

Nada : She goes to a nearby (4)

Rami : What does she do there?

Nada : She teaches children how to read.

- 3 Write EIGHTY (80) words on:**

"Being a global citizen"

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

- 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:**

Samira says her uncle is a good citizen who returns lost things.

Rasha : What makes a person a good citizen?

Samira : (1)

Rasha : Can you give me an example?

Samira : (2) My uncle returns lost things.

Rasha : (3) ..?

Samira : He works in a big company.

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. My mother me to share my toys with my little sister.

- a) planted b) encouraged c) improved d) protected

2. Nader to get ready for school because he woke up very late.

- a) painted b) hurried c) cleaned d) volunteered

3. It was hard, but I my friend not to be scared of the dog.

- a) reduced b) saved c) convinced d) entertained

4. The young artist will her paintings at the community art center.

- a) carry b) clap c) present d) award

5. When visiting grandma, Ghada shout inside the quiet house.

- a) mustn't b) can't c) doesn't d) isn't

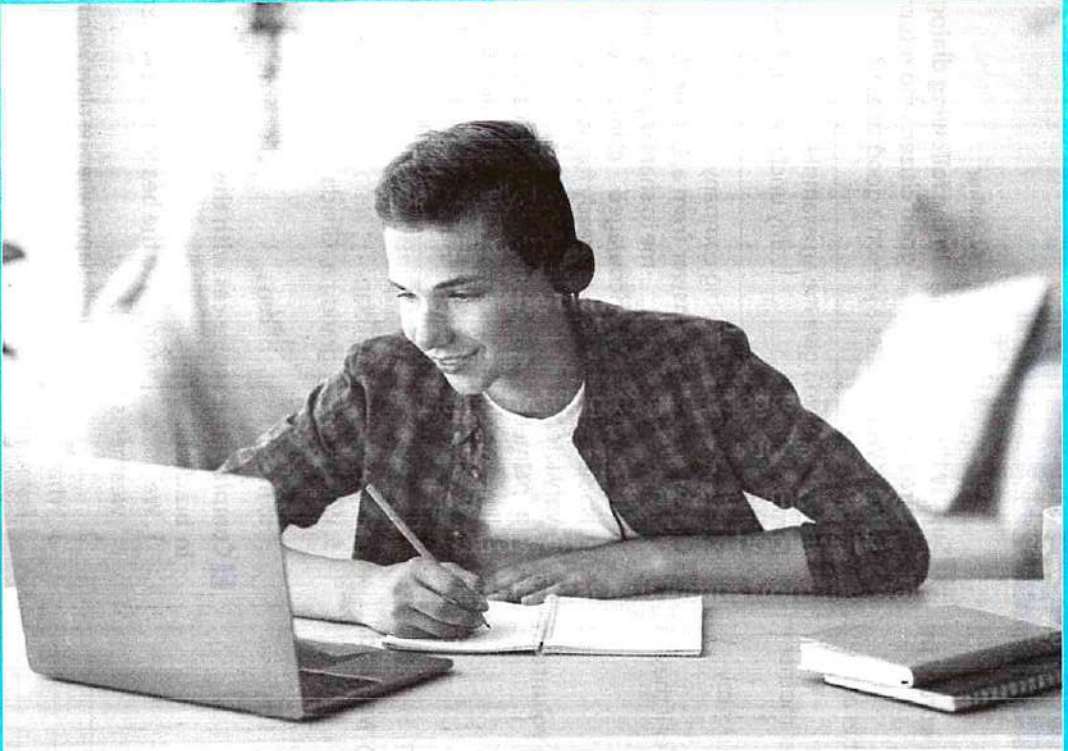
- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. We (not/go) to the beach in the winter because the weather is too cold.

2. (Yahya/feel) happy when he plays with his little puppy?

3. What (you/eat) for your dinner at the restaurant last night?

Part 2 Final Revision & Guiding Models



1

General Revision (Vocabulary/Language/Speaking/Writing)

مراجعة على أهم الكلمات والقواعد والمحادثة والفقرات على كل وحدتين

2

Final Guiding Models (General & Al-Azhar)

امتحانات خاصة بطلبة العام والأزهر

3

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

(1) General Revision (Vocabulary/Language/Speaking/Writing)

Unit 1: Life in a Digital World

A Vocabulary

achieve (d) (v)	يحقّق/ينجز	ebook (n)	كتاب إلكتروني	platform (n)	منصة
announcement (n)	إعلان	encourage (d) (v)	يشجّع	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
assignment (n)	مهمة دراسية	floating (adj)	عائم/طاف	puzzle (n)	لغز
cheerful (adj)	مبتهج/سعيد	fluently (adv)	بطلاقة/بسلاسة	record (ed) (v)	يسجل
clue (n)	دليل/تلميح	glowing (adj)	متوهج/مشع	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
collaborate (d) (v)	يتعاون	hybrid bus (n)	حافلة هجينة	screen time (n)	وقت الشاشة
command (n)	أمر	magic (adj/n)	سحري/سحر	shy (adj)	خجول
content (n)	محتوى	mystery (n)	لغز/سر/غموض	smartboard (n)	سبورة ذكية
curious (adj)	فضول/متطلع	nervous (adj)	متوتر/قلق	smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي
device (n)	جهاز	night mode (n)	الوضع الليلي	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We need to more effort to complete the project on time.
a) decrease b) do c) produce d) appear
- I held the close to my mouth to talk aloud.
a) headphones b) microphone c) mouse d) webcam
- Too much can hurt your eyes. You shouldn't look at it too long.
a) screen time b) sleep time c) email d) energy
- The printer prints 20 pages minute.
a) at b) in c) for d) per

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

curious – solving – teamwork – shared – divided

In the magic classroom, every child was special. Zain liked (1)..... puzzles and was ready when the magical door opened. Sara was (2)..... and saw something glowing near the wall. It was a locked box with a clue behind it. They (3)..... ideas and worked together. Each child helped. When they opened the box, they were happy and proud. Their (4)..... made the magic happen.

B Language

1 The present simple tense

تذكر زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات

I, We, They, You, مصدر الفعل inf. اسم جمع

e.g. • I always **wake** up early.

He, She, It, مصدر الفعل inf. اسم مفرد (s, es, ies)

e.g. • Nadia **travels** to Alex every summer.

Negative النفي

I, We, They, You, مصدر الفعل don't inf. اسم جمع

e.g. • They **don't walk** to school.

He, She, It, مصدر الفعل doesn't inf. اسم مفرد

e.g. • Omar **doesn't play** tennis.

2 Adverbs of frequency

ظروف التكرار

Always (100%)

دائمًا

- Fares **always** walks to school.

Usually (90%)

عادة

- We **usually** watch TV in the evening.

Often (70%)

غالبًا

- Ali **often** plays with Reda after school.

Sometimes (50%)

أحيانًا

- They **sometimes** go to the park.

Rarely (10%)

نادرًا

- Sally **rarely** eats unhealthy food.

Never (0%)

أبداً

- I **never** go to school late.

How often

كم مرة

- A: How often **does** Nader walk to school?

B: He **always** walks to school.

- A: How often **do** you go to the school library?

B: I go there **twice a week**.

نستخدمها عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our teacher gives us homework on Fridays because he wants us to relax.
a) sometimes b) often c) always d) rarely
2. I brush my teeth before I go to bed at night. I do this every night.
a) never b) sometimes c) always d) rarely
3. We visit our grandma on weekends because she makes the best cake.
a) never b) don't c) often d) rarely
4. How often go shopping?
a) Hana does b) is Hana c) does Hana d) Hana is
5. My dad takes us to the park after he comes home from work, but not often.
a) rarely b) always c) sometimes d) never
6. Nada doesn't eat vegetables, but she likes fruits like apples and bananas.
a) often b) never c) rarely d) no word

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (always) eat my lunch in the club because I don't like what they serve.
2. My mom (often/help) me with my homework when she is free.
3. We usually (goes) to the zoo in summer to see the animals.
4. My brother (always) cleans his room. Mom is angry with him.
5. Our teacher (shows/sometimes) us fun games when we finish our work early.
6. They (always) watch movies at night because they go to bed early.
7. Alaa always checks her pet rabbit after school and (give) it food.
8. My grandparents (often/comes) to visit us on weekends for lunch.
9. How often (they/have) art class?
10. My best friend (not/always) listen to loud music in class.
11. (Do) your dad usually have dinner on Sundays?
12. Does your sister (go sometimes) to school by bus or does she walk?
13. They (often watches) TV after finishing their homework.
14. My brother (always) puts his toys away after playing. I always tidy them.
15. What (does) you usually do after school on Thursdays?

1. Speaking

Expressing personal experiences and opinions about digital devices.

• A: What technology/devices do you use every day?

B: I use my tablet, smartphone, and sometimes the computer at school.

• A: What device do you use most?

B: I use my tablet the most.

• A: When do you use it?

B: I use it after school, on weekends, and sometimes at school.

• A: What do you usually do on your phone or tablet during the day?

B: I usually watch videos, play games, read stories, and do my homework on my tablet.

2. Writing

“The most important device”

The most important device for many people is the smartphone. A smartphone helps us stay connected with family and friends. We can call, text, and use social media on it. It is also useful for work and school because we can check emails and search for information. Smartphones have cameras, so we can take photos and videos.

They also have maps to help us find places. Many people use smartphones to play games and listen to music.

Overall, smartphones are very helpful and make our lives easier. They are small and do many things.

“An email about your favorite digital devices”

To : omar@yahoo.com
 From : khaled@yahoo.com
 Subject : My Favorite Digital Devices

Hi Omar,

I hope you are well. I want to tell you about the digital devices I usually use at school and at home. At school, I use a tablet to read books and do my homework. We also use a smartboard in class. At home, I use my laptop to watch videos and write my projects. I sometimes use my smartphone to send emails. Digital devices help me learn in a fun way!

Your friend,
 Khaled

Unit 2: Learning to learn

A Vocabulary

ambition (n)	طموح	experience (n)	تجربة حياتية	determination (n)	عزيمة
auditory (adj)	سمعي	fluently (adv)	بطلاقة/بسهولة	powerful (adj)	قوى
brave (adj)	شجاع	focus (ed) (v)	يركز	profile (n)	ملف شخصي
breath (n)	نفس	hesitate (d) (v)	يتردد	pronunciation (n)	نطق
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	identify (ied) (v)	يحدد/يتعرف على	respect (ed) (n/v)	احترام/يحترم
colorful (adj)	ملون	invisible (adj)	خفي/غير مرئي	solution (n)	حل
confident (adj)	واثق	journey (n)	رحلة	successful (adj)	ناجح
cooperation (n)	التعاون	kinesthetic (adj)	حركي	techniques (n)	أساليب/تقنيات
courage (n)	شجاعة	leadership (n)	قيادة	unity (n)	وحدة
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	method (n)	طريقة	visual (adj)	بصري
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي	neat (adj)	أنيق/مرتب		
distraction (n)	تشيت	organize (d) (v)	ينظم		

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Can you which backpack is yours from all of these?
a) touch b) identify c) suit d) happen
- We ran and played on the school
a) library b) classroom c) playground d) lab
- We use phones and emails to with friends who live far away.
a) express b) develop c) contact d) communicate
- Fatima has a strong to learn how to bake delicious cakes.
a) desire b) courage c) kindness d) power

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

auditory – suits – focuses – proud – visual

In Ms. Hana's class, every learner is different. Some like sight and pictures, so they are (1) learners. Others prefer sound and are (2) A few enjoy movement—they are kinesthetic. Each student uses a method that (3) their learning style. Ms. Hana lets them sit where they learn best. She says involvement helps learning. Everyone feels (4) and happy.

1 Can/can't

يستطيع / لا يستطيع

Affirmative الإثبات

الفاعل + can + inf.

e.g. • I can make videos.

Negative النفي

الفاعل + can't + inf.

e.g. • They can't speak English well.

2 The present continuous tense

المن المضارع المستمر

Affirmative الإثبات

الفاعل + am/is/are + inf. + ing

e.g. • I'm doing my homework now.

- Roaa is sleeping at the moment.
- The children are playing outside.

Negative النفي

الفاعل + am not/isn't/aren't + inf. + ing

e.g. • I'm not doing my homework now.

- Roaa isn't sleeping at the moment.
- The children aren't playing outside.

Question السؤال

Am/Is/Are + الفاعل + inf. + ing?

e.g. • Am I making noise?

- Is Roaa sleeping at the moment?
- Are the children playing outside?

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hassan is very patient, so he can quietly for his turn.
a) waited b) waits c) waiting d) wait
- Ahmed is good at math, so..... help his sister with homework.
a) he is b) is he c) he can d) can he
- Look! The baby his first steps across the living room floor now.
a) take b) is taking
c) takes d) are taking
- Currently the children ice cream because it's too cold outside for frozen treats.
a) are eating b) aren't eating c) don't eat d) eat
- Is Rana her homework at the dining table at present?
a) doing b) do c) did d) done
- Wael is very shy, so he speak loudly in front of people.
a) can't b) can c) isn't d) is

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Where (Bilal/run) at this moment?
- Menna loves to cook, so she (can/making) delicious cakes for everyone.
- Jana is skilled, so she (can't) paint tiny details carefully.
- Zahraa isn't (watch) TV; she is studying.
- Yousef is (wash) his dirty hands in the bathroom sink.
- The children (make) too much noise at the moment.
- Why (you can't) eat chocolate before you finish your dinner?
- The children (not) cleaning up after art class.
- Look! Tarek (is throw) the ball to his friend.
- Is (Jana/feel) better after taking her medicine?
- Walid practices soccer every day, so he can (kicks) the ball very far.
- What colors (Shahd/can) see when she looks at the rainbow?
- Why (Huda/be) carrying that heavy backpack by herself?
- Elephants are very heavy animals, so they can't (to jump) high like rabbits.
- What games can children (playing) when it rains outside all day?



Skills

1. Speaking

Ask and answer about learning styles

1. Which learning style suits you best?

- The visual learning style suits me best because I like looking at pictures.

2. What do teachers do to help you learn best?

- They explain things with pictures and give us fun activities.

3. Do you like your school? Why?

- Yes, I like my school because I learn new things.

4. What learning style do you prefer? Why?

- I prefer the kinesthetic learning style because I enjoy doing things with my hands.

2. Writing

“Learning styles”

Everyone learns in a different way. Some people are visual learners. They understand best when they see pictures, colors, or charts. They enjoy reading and making notes. Other people are auditory learners. They like to listen to music or talk with others about lessons. They learn well by hearing. Some people are kinesthetic learners. They use their hands to learn. They enjoy doing experiments, building things, and moving around. Knowing your learning style helps you study better and makes learning easier and more fun.

“Group learning”

Learning together with others can be very helpful and fun. When we study in groups, we can share ideas and help each other understand things better. If one person doesn't know the answer, another friend might explain it in a simple way. Working as a team also makes learning feel less lonely. We can play learning games, ask questions, and solve problems together. Learning with friends makes us feel more confident. That's why learning together is a great way to grow and succeed.

Unit 3: Role Models

A Vocabulary

admirable (adj) جدير بالإعجاب	encourage (d) (v) يشجع	motivate (d) (v) يحفز
admiration (n) إعجاب	geographer (n) عالم جغرافيا	motivated (adj) متحفز/لديه دافع
athlete (n) لاعب رياضي	grin (n) (v) يبتسم ابتسامة عريضة	overcome (v) يتغلب على
atomic radiation (n) الإشعاع الذري	hero (n) بطل	personality (n) شخصية
attack (ed) (n/v) هجوم/يهاجم	hopeful (adj) متفهم بالأمل	politics (n) السياسة
award (n) جائزة	inspire (v) يلهم/يحفز	responsibility (n) مسؤولية
brave (adj) شجاع	inspiring (adj) ملهم	role (n) دور
crystal (adj) كريستالي	honesty (n) أمانة	role model (n) قدوة
curiosity (n) فضول	kidney (n) كلية	soldier (n) جندي
dedication (n) تفان (في العمل)	leader (n) قائد/زعيم	strength (n) قوة
determined (adj) مصمم/عازم	location (n) موقع (جغرافي)	treatment (n) علاج

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Our science teacher is to all of us.
a) passionate b) courageous c) inspiring d) trusted
- Basmala's dream to be a doctor her to study hard every day.
a) faces b) motivates c) attacks d) changes
- Omar met his favorite and took a picture with him after the race.
a) athlete b) singer c) actor d) reader
- Sara is very to learn how to play the piano.
a) healthy b) crystal c) final d) keen

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

biography – pride – admirable – determination – proud

Egyptians feel great pride in their scientists. Dr. Mohamed Ghoneim is one of the most (1) people. He worked hard to make his dream real. He didn't stop, even when the work was hard. He believed that (2) is key to success. His (3) is full of lessons about courage, honesty, and helping others. We are really (4) of our great scientists like Dr. Ghoneim.

1 The past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات

التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل

e.g. Omar **bought** a new bike yesterday.

Negative النفي

الفاعل + didn't + inf.

e.g. Omar **didn't buy** a new bike yesterday.

Questions الأسئلة

Did + الفاعل + inf.?

e.g. **Did** Omar **buy** a new bike yesterday?

Q. word + did + الفاعل + inf.?

e.g. When **did** Omar **buy** a new bike?

2 Verb to "be" in the past

فعل «يكون» في الماضي

Affirmative الإثبات

الفاعل + was/were +

e.g. Alaa **was** at the park last Monday.• The children **were** happy at the party.

Negative النفي

الفاعل + wasn't/weren't +

e.g. Alaa **wasn't** at the park last Monday.• The children **weren't** happy at the party.

Questions الأسئلة

Was/Were + الفاعل +?

e.g. **Was** Alaa at the park last Monday?• **Were** the children happy at the party?

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Batoul want to eat her soup because it was too hot yesterday.
a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) wasn't
- When you learn to cook a meal without help?
a) were b) does c) did d) was
- Yesterday, Ahmed his teeth twice because he forgot the first time.
a) brush b) brushes c) brushing d) brushed
- The flowers in our garden beautiful last spring.
a) was b) were c) is d) are
- Amira a funny joke that made everyone in class laugh last week.
a) tell b) telling c) told d) tells
- We see any dolphins when we went on the boat trip.
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) weren't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The rabbit (jump) quickly across the garden when it saw us coming.
- Dalia (not/remember) to water the plants while her mother was away.
- (Be) there enough chairs for everyone at the party last Saturday night?
- Tarek (fall) off his bike, but didn't hurt himself badly yesterday.
- What color (does) Nada paint her bedroom walls during the summer holiday?
- The children (laugh) loudly at the funny show yesterday.
- Zahraa (bake) delicious cookies with her grandmother last weekend at home.
- We (not/go) swimming because the pool was closed yesterday.
- (Do) your parents take many photos during your family trip last weekend?
- Hamza (study) very hard for his last test.
- The flowers in our garden (grow) very tall after the rain last spring.
- Why (do) Amira throw her old toys yesterday?
- My brother (not/listen) to the instructions and made a big mistake.
- The sun (shine) brightly when we had our picnic in the park.
- (Be) you happy when you got your test results last Monday?



Skills

1. Speaking

Talking about a personal role model

1. What do you think makes someone a hero?

- A hero is someone who helps others and tried to make the world better.

2. Do you have an inspiring person in your life?

- Yes, I admire Dr. Samira Moussa. She wanted to use science to help people.

3. What qualities do you think a role model should have?

- A role model should be kind, determined, helpful, and honest.

4. Who is your role model? Why?

- My role model is Dr. Ahmed Zewail because he made great discoveries.

5. How does your role model inspire you?

- My role model inspires me to study hard and never give up.

2. Writing

"Dr. Samira Moussa"

Samira Moussa was a great Egyptian scientist and role model. She was the first female nuclear scientist in Egypt. Samira worked hard to make science helpful and safe for everyone. She wanted cancer treatment to be cheaper for all people. Even though it was hard for women to study science at that time, she never gave up. She also traveled to the U.S. to learn more. Samira Moussa is remembered for her courage and love for her country. She is inspiring to all women.

"Dr. Magdi Yacoub"

Dr. Magdi Yacoub is a famous Egyptian heart doctor. He was born in Egypt and studied medicine to help sick people. He became one of the best heart surgeons in the world. Dr. Yacoub helped many patients live longer and healthier lives. He also opened hospitals and trained young doctors. Many people respect him for his kind heart and hard work. In conclusion, Dr. Magdi Yacoub is a great man who made Egypt proud.

Unit 4: Smart Choices

A

Vocabulary

annual (adj)	سنوي	fluent (adj)	طليق/فصيح	problem-solving (adj)	حل المشكلات
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	gentle (adj)	لطيف/رقيق	race (n)	سباق
benefit (n)	فائدة	give up (v)	يتخلى عن/يستسلم	recover (ed) (v)	يشفي/يتعافى
choice (n)	اختيار	harmful (adj)	ضار/مؤذ	left out (adj)	مستبعد/مرفوض
consequence (n)	نتيجة/عاقبة	honest (adj)	صادق/أمين	responsible (adj)	مسؤول
goal (n)	هدف	ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل/يهمل	risk (n)	خطر
effect (n)	تأثير	impact (n) (on)	تأثير (على)	skip (ped) (v)	يتخطى/يتغيب
effective (adj)	فعال	influence (d) (n/v) (on)	تأثير/يؤثر (على)	tough (adj)	قاسي/صعب
evaluate (d) (v)	يقيم/ينقد	judgment (n)	حكم	waste (d) (v)	يضيع/يهدر
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	lead (n)	صدارة/قيادة/ريادة		
fair (adj)	عادل/منصف	left out (adj)	مستبعد/تم تجاهله	wise (adj)	حكيم
fair (n/adj)	معرض/عادل	matter (ed) (v)	يهم/له قيمة		

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It's important to be when you talk to your teacher or parents.
a) brave b) polite c) uncomfortable d) negative
- Every good can help avoid a bad consequence.
a) decision b) result c) dream d) effect
- That coach has a big on young players who want to do their best.
a) risk b) stress c) impact d) training
- This big can make juice from fresh fruits in seconds.
a) fair b) model c) machine d) principle

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

for – up – free – lazy – explore

Menna didn't know what hobby to choose. Her mother gave her a great idea. "Why don't you (1) painting?" she said. Menna gave it a try and never gave (2) She painted every day in her (3) time. Her friends noticed how happy she became. When someone asked Menna (4) advice, she said, "Just try new things and see what makes you smile."

1

First conditional

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

- e.g. • If it **is** fine tomorrow, we **will go** to the zoo.
- He **will answer** the question **if** he **reads** it well.
 - We **will play** outside **when** the weather **is** nice.

2

Giving advice

إعطاء النصيحة

Affirmative الإثبات

الفاعل + **should** + inf.

- e.g. • Alaa **should** study hard.
- You **should** do your homework.

Negative النفي

الفاعل + **shouldn't** + inf. ...

- e.g. • You **shouldn't** eat unhealthy food.
- The children **shouldn't** play in the street.

Questions الأسئلة

Should + الفاعل + inf. ...?

- e.g. **A:** **Should** Alaa study hard?
- B:** Yes, he **should**.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When we finish our homework, we a movie with popcorn.
a) to watch b) watching c) will watch d) watched
- Will your cousin call you if he the time today?
a) will have b) has c) had d) having
- If I eat too much candy, I a bad stomachache.
a) will get b) got c) gets d) getting
- If you see an old man crossing the street, you help him.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) won't
- When someone is talking, you interrupt them.
a) should b) shouldn't c) did not d) could

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If you have a test tomorrow, you should (studying) tonight.
- You (shouldn't) not make loud noises in the library.
- If we (won) the match, we will celebrate نحتفل.
- Will the teacher smile if you (answering) correctly?
- If I (not/sleep) early, I will be tired at school.
- You (not/play) with knives سكاكين. This is my advice.
- If it (rain), we won't go to the park.
- When you (finishes) your meal, you can have dessert.
- If you're hungry, (you will) ask for a snack?
- What (would) you do if you lose your schoolbag?
- If the cat (see) the bird, it will chase يطارد it.
- You (not/ should) touch hot things.
- Will she laugh if she (hear) that joke?
- If you find money on the ground, you should (gave) it to an adult.
- If your friend is sad, you should (to try) to cheer them up.



Skills

1. Speaking

Talking about a problem your friend and you once faced.

A: Have you ever had a problem?

B: Yes, I once had a problem with my friend.

A: What was it?

B: We had to choose between joining the science team or the art team.

A: Who helped you solve it?

B: Our teacher helped us by asking what we liked more.

A: What lesson did you learn from it?

B: I learned that thinking calmly and talking together help solve problems.

A: Was it hard to make a choice? Why?

B: Yes, it was very hard because both options were fun.

A: What did you finally choose?

B: We chose the science team because we wanted to learn new things.

2. Writing

“An important decision”

One important decision I made was to study for my science test instead of watching TV. At first, I really wanted to watch my favorite cartoon, but I remembered that my test was the next day. I asked myself what the smart choice was. I chose to study because I wanted to do well. My parents were proud of me, and I felt happy when I got a good mark. Making good choices helps me become better every day.

“My wise decision”

Last year, I made a wise decision that helped me a lot. I chose to study every day after school instead of playing video games for hours. At first, it was hard because I wanted to play with my friends. But I made a study schedule and followed it. My grades got better, and I felt proud of myself. I still had time to play, but after finishing my homework. Making that smart choice helped me learn more and feel happy. A wise decision can lead to great results.

Unit 5: Future Dreams

A

Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة	education (n)	تعليم	path (n)	مسار/طريق
achieve (d) (v)	يحقق/ينجز	effort (n)	جهد/مجهود	perfectly (adv)	بشكل مثالي/تماماً
aspiration (n)	طموح/تطلع	engineering (n)	الهندسة	profession (n)	مهنة
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	focused (adj)	مركز	purpose (n)	غرض
blame (d) (v)	يلوم	gift (n)	موهبة/هبة/هدية	shy (adj)	خجول
career (n)	حياة مهنية	graduate (d) (v)	يتخرج	skillful (adj)	ماهر
contact (ed) (v)	يتواصل مع	match (ed) (v)	يتطابق/يلتزم	success (n)	نجاح
designer (n)	مصمم	natural (adj)	طبيعي	talent (n)	موهبة
discouraged (adj)	محبط/مئبط العزيمة	opportunity (n)	فرصة	training (n)	تدريب
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	participate (d) (v)	يشارك	unique (adj)	فريد/مميز
divide (d) (v)	يقسم	passion (n)	شغف	university (n)	جامعة

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I my teacher yesterday to ask about the homework.
a) contacted b) communicated c) hoped d) discovered
- When he grows up, Zain wants to be a/an, so he can fly to the moon.
a) astronaut b) engineer c) gift d) list
- Youssef's dream to visit the Pyramids finally last year.
a) smiled b) matched c) came true d) practiced
- Abdullah's biggest is to become a doctor to help many sick people.
a) ability b) shape c) pathway d) aspiration

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

for – with – engineering – do – make

I want to be an engineer. I'm always curious about machines. I read books about (1) and try to fix things at home. I also want to make a plan (2) my future. I will build strong buildings that help people live safely. I will (3) a course to learn more about safety. I hope to (4) a job that makes the world better.

"be" going to

سوف

Affirmative الإثبات

الفاعل + am/is/are + going to + inf.

- e.g. • Mona **is going to visit** her grandma next weekend.
 • They **are going to move** to a new house next month.

Negative النفي

الفاعل + am not/isn't/aren't + going to + inf.

- e.g. • Mona **isn't going to visit** her grandma next weekend.
 • They **aren't going to move** to a new house next month.

Questions الأسئلة

Is/Are + الفاعل + going to + inf. ...?

- e.g. **A: Are you going to travel** to Aswan next weekend?

B: Yes, I am.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The cake smells delicious! Everyone want a big piece of it.
a) is going to b) going to c) are going to d) will
2. your brother going to share his toys with you today?
a) Are b) Does c) Is d) Will
3. The children are tired, so they sleep after lunch.
a) is going to b) are going to
c) going to d) will going
4. How Leila going to get to school tomorrow morning?
a) are b) is c) does d) will
5. My parents bought tickets, so we going to see the circus show.
a) is b) are c) am d) be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Radi made a bad mistake; the teacher (go) to punish him.
2. What (they/going) to bring for the class project?
3. Are you (go) to try out for the soccer team?
4. He (not/going) to be in trouble if he finishes his homework.
5. Where is Sara (go) go for her vacation next month?
6. The player (not/go) to win the race because he is injured.
7. Are they (go) to visit the museum on Saturday?
8. My sister (go/to be) so excited to see her favorite singer.
9. I'm not going (be) scared during the movie if it's funny.
10. What (you/are) going to do when you finish your chores?
11. Hamza (going/be) amazed by the magic show this weekend.
I know he likes it.
12. We (not) going to go to the playground if it rains.
13. Where (you/are) going to go next week?
14. I think my mom (be) proud of my exam result.
15. Are you (go) to visit the library later today?

1. Speaking

Talking about future goals and dream jobs.

1. What is your dream goal/job for the future?

- My dream job for the future is to become a doctor.

2. Why do you like that? / Why do you want it?

- I want to be a doctor because I love helping sick people feel better.

3. How can you achieve it?

- I can achieve it by studying hard.

4. What skills do you need for that job?

- I need to be good at science.

5. Where would you like to work in the future?

- I would like to work in a big hospital.

2. Writing**“My dream profession”**

My dream profession is to become a teacher. I want to teach children how to read, write, and learn new things every day. Teachers help students grow and become smart. I like helping others, and I enjoy explaining things clearly. To be a good teacher, I need to be patient, kind, and well-prepared. I will study hard and practice speaking and teaching. One day, I hope to have my own classroom. Being a teacher is the job I dream about the most.

“My dream”

I have many dreams for my future. One big dream is to become a doctor. I want to help sick people feel better. I enjoy learning about the human body and how medicine works. I know I need to study hard at school to reach my dream. I will also go to university and learn more. I want to work in a hospital and help many people. My dream is important to me, and I will work hard to make it come true.

Unit 6: Global Citizens

A Vocabulary

award (ed) (v)	يمنح	generation (n)	جيل	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
citizen (n)	مواطن	global (adj)	كوني/عالمي	reusable (adj)	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
citizenship (n)	مواطنة	handbook (n)	دليل/كتيب	science experiment (n)	تجربة علمية
clean-ups (n)	حملات تنظيف	impressed (adj)	منبهر/متأثر	tent (n)	خيمة
convince (d) (v)	يقنع	improve (d) (v)	يحسن	terrible (adj)	فظيع/رهيب
danger (n)	خطر	judge (n)	قاض/حكم	threat (n)	تهديد
diversity (n)	تنوع/اختلاف	justice (n)	عدالة/إنصاف	traditions (n)	تقاليد
duty (n)	واجب	living creature (n)	مخلوق/كائن حي	trophy (n)	كأس
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	unfair (adj)	غير عادل
entertain (ed) (v)	يسلى	ocean (n)	محيط	volunteer (ed) (v/n)	يتطوع/متطوع
environment (n)	بيئة	pleasure (n)	سرور/متعة		
function (n)	وظيفة	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي		

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A global shares in solving local محلي and world problems.
a) citizen b) swimmer c) child d) pilot
- We must not throw rubbish on the ground to protect the
a) environment b) trash
c) citizenship d) museum
- Gamal his dad to buy him a new bike.
a) convinced b) connected c) communicated d) corrected
- The competition will Fares a big trophy tonight.
a) award b) clap c) reward d) present

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

On – keep – title – address – clapped

For the school competition, we created a game that teaches kids to (1) the world clean. Everyone helped with drawing, painting, and testing. (2) the last day, we shared our project with excitement. We didn't win the (3), though many visitors were impressed by our work. The best part was learning how teamwork can make something special. We smiled when our teacher (4) for us.

1 Must / mustn't

يجب / لا يجب

Affirmative الإثبات

الفاعل + must + inf. ...

e.g. You **must** study hard for exams.

Negative النفي

الفاعل + mustn't + inf. ...

e.g. You **mustn't** make noise in the library.

2 Tenses Review

مراجعة الأزمنة

A) The Present Simple Tense:

الفاعل + inf./inf. + (s/es/ies) ...

e.g. They **go** to school on foot.• Sama **goes** to school on foot.

الفاعل + don't/doesn't + inf. ...

e.g. They **don't** go to school on foot.• Sama **doesn't** go to school on foot.

Do/Does + الفاعل + inf. + ...?

e.g. **Do** you go to school on foot?• **Does** Sama go to school on foot?

B) The Present Continuous Tense:

الفاعل + am/is/are + (v + ing) ...

e.g. I **'m** doing my homework now.

الفاعل + am not/isn't/aren't + (v + ing) ...

e.g. I **'m not** doing my homework now.

Is/Are + الفاعل + (v + ing) ...?

e.g. **Is** Sara sleeping right now?• **Are** the children playing outside?

C) The Past Simple Tense:

... التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل

e.g. Sally **watched** a movie last night.

الفاعل + didn't + inf. ...

e.g. Sally **didn't** watch a movie last night.

Did + الفاعل + inf. ...?

e.g. **Did** Sally watch a movie last night?

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You remember to say "thank you" when you get a gift.
a) must b) mustn't c) are d) have
2. Children draw on the walls because it makes the house bad.
a) can't b) doesn't c) mustn't d) aren't
3. My cat sleeps outside; she always sleeps on my bed.
a) didn't b) isn't c) never d) doesn't
4. My mother a delicious cake for my birthday party now.
a) baked b) bakes c) is baking d) was baking
5. Ramy his room yesterday, so it was still messy in the morning.
a) isn't tidying b) doesn't tidy c) didn't tidy d) wasn't tidying
6. My uncle, Ahmed, us from London on the phone last night.
a) calls b) is calling c) called d) was calling

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. To get good grades, you must (studies) for your tests and do homework.
2. Nader (must) leave his bicycle outside in the rain all night.
3. What (we/must) remember when we visit grandma's house this weekend?
4. Ibrahim always (listen) carefully to the teacher during the class.
5. Nader (not/sleep) late; he always wakes up very early.
6. (your friends/walk) to school together every morning?
7. (your cat/sleep) on your bed every night?
8. My sister, Lina, (not/read) a book now; she is watching a cartoon.
9. (your friends/wait) for you at the school gate now?
10. What book (you/read) at the moment?
11. Why (Yomna/wear) her raincoat now?
12. Last year, our teacher (take) us on a trip to the museum.
13. I (go) to the cinema with my best friends last weekend.
14. My brother (not/eat) his breakfast this morning because he was late for school.
15. (you/do) do all of your homework last night before you slept?



Skills

1. Speaking

Asking and answering about making a good citizen.

1. What makes a good citizen?

- A good citizen respects others and follows laws.

2. What can you do to help your school and your community?

- I can keep the place clean, help others, and save water and electricity.

3. Can you give an example of a good citizen?

- Yes, someone who helps people in need.

4. What are the things you must do as a global citizen?

- I must respect others and help make the world better.

5. Do you think small actions can change the world?

- Yes, small actions can make a big difference.

2. Writing

“Being a global citizen”

Being a global citizen means helping people and caring about the world. A good citizen follows rules and shows respect to others. We should protect nature and never throw rubbish on the ground. It's also important to save water and electricity. We can volunteer to help people in need and treat everyone in an equal way. Even small actions can improve the world. Being kind, fair, and helpful makes us true global citizens. Let's all try to do good things every day.

“A global responsibility”

We all share a global responsibility to take care of our planet. This means helping the Earth stay clean and safe for everyone. One way to do this is by reducing plastic pollution. We can also use reusable bags and bottles. Clean-ups at the beach or in parks are fun ways to help. Saving oceans and sea animals is important for future generations. When we protect nature, we protect all living creatures. Together, we can make a big difference in our world.

(3) Final Guiding Models (General)

Model (1)

A

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1. What did the student check in the morning?**
- a) News. b) Messages.
- c) Weather. d) Homework.
- 2. What did they do after lunch?**
- a) Read a story. b) Played games.
- c) Searched and shared pictures. d) Ate dinner.
- 3. What did they use during the science lesson?**
- a) Only tablets. b) Only smartboards.
- c) Only laptops. d) Devices and a smartboard.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

B) Listen and complete:

4. I checked the in the morning.
5. I shared pictures on a
6. I read an at night.

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The new helps doctors check hearts.
 a) laptop b) device
 c) tablet d) smartboard
2. Every in our class has a different way of understanding new things.
 a) runner b) worker c) teacher d) learner

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

noisy – auditory – discuss – enjoyable – expression

I always say things out loud when I study. I'm an (1) learner. Hearing explanations helps me remember. One time, I didn't understand a word until I heard my friend explain it with (2) I like to (3) topics. I don't enjoy learning in (4) places. My favorite part is when we answer questions as a group.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My grandfather is my role model. He was a teacher in a small village in Egypt. Every day, he woke up early and walked to school. He loved his students and helped them learn to read and write. He always said that education can make a big difference in people's lives. He won an award for being the best teacher in the area. He is now retired, but people still thank him for teaching them. He reads books every day and is always interested in history. I want to be like him because he is smart and kind. His deep love for learning has motivated me to study hard and help others, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The writer's grandfather was a
a) doctor b) farmer c) teacher d) driver
2. The underlined word "motivated" most likely means
a) made sleepy b) gave energy to act
c) told stories d) took pictures

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
4. Why do people still thank the writer's grandfather?
.....
5. Who does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?
.....
6. How do you think education can make a difference in people's lives?
.....

C

Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The baby very tired after playing at the park all afternoon yesterday.
a) were b) are c) is d) was
2. When they arrive at the zoo, they the monkeys first.
a) seeing b) will see c) saw d) seen

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When is (he/go) to start his new job?
2. To stay healthy, you must (to drink) lots of water every day.
3. The school bell (ring) at eight o'clock every morning to start the day.
4. The students (not/listen) to the teacher at this moment.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Nour wants to know who cut the class plant.

Nour: Did you see Omar cut the class plant, Leila?

Leila: Yes, I did. But he asked me not to tell.

Nour: (1)..... did Omar do that?

Leila: He did that during the break.

Nour: What (2)..... we do?

Leila: We should act with care. What do you think?

Nour: I (3)..... we should tell him not to do that again.

Leila: That's fair and polite. Thanks for your advice.

Nour: You're (4)..... Leila.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your dream job"

.....
.....
.....

Model (2)

A

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did Aya learn at school?

a) To walk fast.

b) To respect others.

c) To draw pictures.

d) To sing loudly.

2. What did Aya do for the new student?

a) Gave her homework.

b) Took her lunch.

c) Helped her find class.

d) Ignored her.

3. What did the new girl do after Aya's help?

a) She was sad.

b) She didn't thank Aya.

c) She got angry.

d) She smiled.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Aya helped the girl find her

5. Aya showed respect to other people's

6. We should live together



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق

B**Reading****2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Amina is a/an citizen because she always follows the country's rules.
a) lazy b) responsible c) justice d) irresponsible
2. Do you want a in science or the arts?
a) mission b) device c) career d) passion

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

medicine – graduated – achieved – followed – dream

Leila always wanted to help people. She used to (1)..... of becoming a doctor. She studied hard and (2)..... every rule at school. Leila joined a workshop on first aid, which made her even more excited. She (3)..... from college and started her path in (4)..... She hopes to succeed and make her dream a reality. Her purpose is clear — to care for others.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In our classroom, we use many digital devices to help us learn. I always use the keyboard to type my stories. The mouse helps me click on pictures or move things on the screen. When I finish my writing, I use the printer to print my work. The teacher shows us fun videos on the smartboard, and we sometimes wear headphones to listen to music quietly. One time, we even made a video using the webcam and microphone. That video was shared on our school's website! These devices help us achieve our goals and complete every task with joy. Learning feels more fun when we use helpful devices. I like how each device has a job that makes schoolwork easier.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. After the student finishes his writing, he
a) erases it b) sends it by email
c) prints it d) deletes it
2. The underlined word "achieve" most likely means to
a) try again b) finish or do c) forget about d) look at

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of this passage?
.....

4. Name two digital devices the students use.
.....

5. What do the underlined words "These devices" refer to?
.....

6. Why do you think the devices make schoolwork easier?
.....

C Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When we start our science project together?
 a) should b) are c) were d) have
2. Lamar remember where she put her favorite book yesterday.
 a) doesn't b) don't c) didn't d) wasn't

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Yasmin is only three years old, so she (can) tie her shoes by herself.
2. Why is (Ibrahim/cry) so loudly in his bedroom?
3. Salma (usually/be) careful with her toys.
4. Nabil (not) open the window yesterday because it was very cold outside.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ali is asking Salma to help with the new poster.

Ali : Hi, Salma! Are you ready to work on our poster?

Salma : Yes, I (1)..... I brought some pictures we can use.

Ali : Great! What will you (2).....?

Salma : I'll write the title at the top.

Ali : (3)..... you want to add some facts, too?

Salma : Yes, I do. Let's find them in our book.

Ali : I like working in a (4)..... . It's fun.

Salma : Me too. We finish faster and learn more.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A person you like most"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (3)

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What was Leila's dream profession?
 - a) A singer.
 - b) A doctor.
 - c) A writer.
 - d) A pilot.
2. Who did Leila contact?
 - a) A teacher.
 - b) A friend.
 - c) A famous author.
 - d) Her mother.
3. What rule did the writer give?
 - a) Travel the world.
 - b) Write sometimes.
 - c) Read daily.
 - d) Sleep early.



B) Listen and complete:

4. Leila was a good             

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** This summer, I had the to visit a science museum.
a) career b) opportunity c) profession d) path
- 2.** Gamila her friends to play her favorite game in the park.
a) acted b) increased c) reduced d) convinced

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tools – checked – mode – apps – shared

I use technology in many ways. In the morning, I (1) the news on my laptop. At school, we used physical (2) to build a model. We shared ideas using a smartboard. Later, I searched for pictures and (3) them on a blog. I always turn on night (4) in the evening to rest my eyes.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In P.E. (physical education), we played a team sport called basketball. We learned that working in a **group** is not just fun but also a way to build strong skills. Everyone had to **cooperate** and follow the rules. Our coach told us that group learning also happens outside the classroom. I was able to **express my opinion**

about the game. My team listened to me, and that made me feel respected. I felt like a leader. Playing together helped me understand how powerful teamwork is. At the end, we talked about what we learned and how we can improve.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What sport did the students play?

a) Football.

b) Tennis.

c) Basketball.

d) Swimming.

2. The underlined phrase "express my opinion" means to

a) keep quiet

b) draw a picture

c) say what I think

d) sing a song

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

4. How did the writer feel during the game?

5. What does the underlined word "that" refer to?

6. Why do you think teamwork is important in sports and in learning?

C

Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What happens if you your lunchbox at home?

a) forget

b) forgot

c) forgetting

d) will forget

2. You be unkind to animals. They are living creatures too.

a) shouldn't

b) should

c) might

d) don't

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Do) your parents take you to the new ice cream shop yesterday?

2. If you ask kindly, someone (would) help you.

3. The bus is late, so the students (going/arrive) at school after nine.

4. Emad is a good student because he always (finished) his homework on time.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Rami is asking Khaled about the digital devices he used.

Rami : What did you do yesterday?

Khaled : I talked to Grandma (1)..... my tablet.

Rami : What (2)..... you use?

Khaled : We used video chat.

Rami : Did she see your room?

Khaled : Yes, she (3)..... I showed her my new books, too.

Rami : (4)..... else did you do?

Khaled : We also played a quiz game together.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Ways to be a good citizen"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (4)

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The boy failed the test because he
 - was sick
 - skipped school
 - forgot to study
 - studied too hard
- The boy's teacher gave him a
 - gift
 - second chance
 - grade
 - trip
- What did the speaker learn to do?
 - To study in the morning.
 - To sleep late.
 - To use his study time better.
 - To make bad decisions.



B) Listen and complete:

- I forgot to study for my
- My teacher told me to
- That bad decision had a

B**Reading****2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Nour stayed all year because she wanted to win the science award.
a) later b) deep c) motivated d) famous
2. The teacher said our actions can have a big on the school.
a) cause b) impact c) training d) rule

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

clean-ups – connects – in – on – depend

A big part of our world is the ocean. It (1) all the continents like a circle around the Earth. Many sea animals (2) on clean water. Sadly, plastic and other trash pollute the water. That's why we need more beach (3) When I helped clean the beach, I felt proud. Being friendly to nature makes us better people. Oceans are (4) danger, and we must act.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ms. Rania gave her class a special project to grow a small garden in the schoolyard. At first, the students were excited. But after a few days, the weather was too hot, and the plants looked weak. Some students stopped coming. "It's too hard," they said. But Sara and Karim kept coming every day. They watered the plants and gave them care. Soon, more students joined again. The plants slowly grew tall and strong. At the end of the month, the garden was full of colorful flowers. The class had a big celebration. They were proud because they didn't give up and worked together.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The students were proud of the garden because they
a) planted trees b) called a gardener
c) didn't give up d) did it in one day
2. The word "celebration" probably means a
a) party b) garden
c) rainy day d) type of flower

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the story?

4. Who worked hard in the middle of the project?

5. What does the word "they" refer to?

6. How do you think Sara and Karim helped the other students return?

C**Writing****5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Sohaila listen carefully to the teacher to learn new things.
a) has b) must c) mustn't d) is
2. Gamal the flowers in our school garden each morning.
a) water b) watered c) waters d) is watering

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How often (is) Yara water the plants?
2. Dina hurt her leg yesterday, so she (can) go to the party today.
3. All the students (be) excited about the school trip to the museum last Friday.
4. (I/should) help my brother clean his room if he is sick?

7 Complete the following dialog:

Lina and Aya are talking about Dr. Farouk El-Baz.

Lina: Did you read about Dr. Farouk El-Baz?

Aya : Yes, I (1) He helped NASA.

Lina: Really? What (2) he do?

Aya : He chose the best places for astronauts to land.

Lina: (3) did he study?

Aya : He studied in Egypt and the U.S.

Lina: What is he known for?

Aya : He's (4) for desert research.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A daily routine using technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (5)

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dr. Hemdan wrote about the
 a) Nile River b) Suez Canal
 c) pyramids d) Red Sea
2. He believed Egypt could connect to
 a) space b) other countries c) one country d) no country
3. Leaders today
 a) don't read his books b) forget about him
 c) still use his books d) never studied



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Dr. Hemdan didn't just write about
5. He helped people how Egypt's land helps it connect to other countries.
6. Many leaders still use his books to learn about

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Adam had a long television with the coach about his sports achievements.
a) article b) interview c) rule d) race
2. My little brother's is to learn how to ride his bike without any help.
a) pathway b) plant c) aspiration d) mistake

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

impact – affect – recover – coach – follow

Making a wise decision is not always easy. Adam talked to his (1)....., who had a big influence on him. Together, they discussed the possible (2)..... of his actions. If Adam ran in the race when he was injured, the result could be bad. Instead, he chose to listen and (3)..... sensible rules about resting. This helped him (4)..... well and get ready for future training.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Noura lives in a small town where people know and help each other. She believes a good citizen always thinks about others. One day, Noura saw a boy drop his books on the ground. Instead of walking past him, she helped him pick them up. Later, she joined a group that cleans parks every Saturday. They wear gloves and carry bags to collect rubbish. Noura knows that being

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mira wants to be an artist.

Amira : What is your dream job, Mira?

Mira : I want to be an (1)

Amira : Why do you love art?

Mira : (2) I like drawing.

Amira : (3) it hard to be an artist?

Mira : Yes, it is. But I enjoy it.

Amira : (4) can you improve yourself?

Mira : By practicing every day.

8 Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Sara to tell her about your studying styles. Your name is Amira.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (6)

A

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. How does Leila learn best?

a) By writing notes

b) By hearing things.

c) By building models.

d) By painting.

2. What does she do with her lessons?

a) Records them.

b) Draws them.

c) Reads them silently.

d) Skips them.

3. Who does she talk to about school topics?

a) Her teacher.

b) Her pet.

c) Her friends.

d) Her neighbor.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Leila enjoys listening to her

5. She often repeats new words out

6. She likes to study with



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

B**Reading****2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. You should distractions when you study for exams.
a) sleep b) avoid c) play d) research
2. A doctor must their duty and help anyone who is sick.
a) think b) make c) get d) do

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

note – board – microphone – make – task

My teacher let us talk to a class in another country. We used a (1) and webcam to (2) a video call. Everyone was happy. We could see and hear the other children. I took a small (3) about their school. It was a fun (4), and I felt like I learned about a whole new world.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Since I was young, I have loved animals and plants. I wish to work in a place where I can help nature. My dream job is to become an environmental scientist. I want to protect trees, rivers, and animals. I believe this is important for our future. I will study science at university and get the right training. I want my dream to come true so I can make the world better. I enjoy learning outdoors and practicing my science skills. If I work hard, I will achieve success. I smile when I think of helping the planet. It makes me feel proud.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The writer wants to
a) drive a bus b) cook food
c) protect the planet d) fix cars
2. The underlined word "nature" means
a) animals and plants b) books
c) buildings d) furniture

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....

4. What does the writer want to study?
.....

5. What does the word "It" refer to?
.....

6. How do you think we can all help protect the environment?
.....

C

Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Salma visits her cousins.
a) often b) is often
c) does often d) often does
2. Shadi his homework at this moment.
a) does b) do c) is doing d) are doing

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Does) the teacher give you extra time to finish the test yesterday?
2. Should they (turning) off the lights before leaving the room?
3. How many friends (be) you going to invite to your birthday party?
4. To follow the rules, Yara must (waited) in line quietly at school.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Marwan and Aya are discussing how to be a global citizen.

Marwan : What are the things you must do as a global citizen?

Aya : I must respect everyone and care for the Earth.

Marwan : Do you plant trees?

Aya : Yes, I (1)..... I planted some last week with my dad.

Marwan : (2)..... I join you next time?

Aya : Yes, you can. It's my pleasure.

Marwan : (3) about making posters?

Aya : That's a great (4).....

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your everyday choices"

[illegible]

Model (7)

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Who did the speaker help?
a) A brother. b) A sister.
c) A cousin. d) A friend.
- What did they draw with an app?
a) A robot. b) A car. c) A planet. d) A tree.
- How did they send their work?
a) By email. b) On a blog.
c) On a phone. d) Through class website.

B) Listen and complete:

- We searched for facts
- We drew a planet using
- We sent our work to the

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My about space makes me read many books about stars and planets.
a) transplant b) biography c) curiosity d) community
- You need to be good at math to get a job in
a) summer b) sports
c) engineering d) building

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

freely – develop – powerful – cooperate – harmful

When you work in a group, you learn many things. You might (1) your speaking skills and learn how to listen. I remember when we played a team sport in P.E. class. We had to (2) and pass the ball to win. I also liked that everyone could express their ideas (3) without fear. That kind of learning feels safe and fun. Group learning can be very (4)

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is one of the most famous Egyptian athletes. He plays football in England. Many children look up to him because he works hard and never gives up. Salah started playing football when he was young. Later, he joined big teams in Europe. He won many medals and helped his country

in international matches. Salah is also known for helping poor people in his village. He built a school and a hospital there. His strong personality and kind heart make him a great role model for many children. He shows that success comes from hard work and helping others.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mohamed Salah built a in his village.
a) cinema and theater b) hotel
c) school and hospital d) shop
- The underlined word "won" is the opposite in meaning to ".....".
a) forgot b) lost
c) remembered d) sold

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
- What team does Mohamed Salah play for now?
.....
- Who does "He" refer to in "He built a school"?
.....
- Do you think athletes should help others? Why or why not?
.....

C

Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Reem has a terrible cold, so she sing in the school choir.
a) can b) can't c) does d) is
- Yesterday at lunch, Waleed his sandwich with his friend.
a) share b) shares
c) shared d) sharing

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Right now, Karim (play) his new video game in his bedroom.
- Maha (doesn't) go to the birthday party because she had a cold last weekend.
- (Would) your teacher be happy if you finish your project early?
- (Will) Dina going to wear her glasses to watch the movie?

7 Complete the following dialog:

Omar helps Ali choose the right activity.

Ali : I don't know which club I should join.

Omar : (1)..... are your options?

Ali : My options are the art club or the football club.

Omar : You should choose what you enjoy most.

Ali : I enjoy the (2)..... club most.

Omar : You're good at painting. (3)..... about joining the art club?

Ali : That's a good idea. (4)..... a lot, Omar.

Omar : You're welcome, Ali.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your future goals"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (8)



Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Who tested the machine?

a) Sandy.

b) Amir.

c) The teacher.

d) The judge.

2. Why did the class work hard?

a) For the school invitation day.

b) For the school invention week.

c) For the school invention day.

d) For the school invention year.

3. What did the team invent?

a) A robot.

b) A car.

c) A water-saving machine.

d) A music box.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Sandy designed the

5. The judges were by the project.

6. The team won the prize.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

B**Reading****2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. To your score, you should study regularly.
a) improve b) distract c) sleep d) move
2. Our teacher every student with the same kindness in class.
a) gathers b) treats c) blames d) divides

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

achieve – university – science – scientist – succeed

Science is my favorite subject. I wish to become a (1) I want to find ways to help people feel better. I will go to (2) to learn more. I believe education and practice will help me (3) I want to be respected in my field. I will need training to do lab work. I will feel proud when I (4) my dream and make a difference.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The children were excited when Mr. Adam told them about a special classroom. The next morning, a glowing door appeared near the blackboard. "This is your first challenge," said Mr. Adam. The children entered and found magical puzzles, floating books, and shining lights. Sara was very curious. She quickly noticed a message written on the wall. "Only those who work together will unlock the mystery." Omar was shy but wanted to help. Zain smiled and gave him confidence. They worked as a team. The puzzle was not easy, but when they solved it, a loud click came from a small box, and it opened. Inside was a new clue for the next challenge.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. After the children solved the puzzle,
a) the door closed behind them b) a new student entered
c) the box clicked open d) the lights turned off
2. The underlined word "curious" most likely means
a) sleepy b) excited to learn
c) very tired d) scared of everything

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
4. Who noticed the message on the wall?
5. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
6. Do you think the children could solve the puzzle without teamwork?
Why or why not?



Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Sara must her instrument every day to get better at it.
a) practices b) practice c) to practice d) practicing
- The baby is crying loudly, so her mother pick her up.
a) going to b) are going to c) is going to d) will go

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- You (should) forget your homework again. The teacher warned you.
- My sister (learn) how to swim at the pool near our house last year.
- Listen! Omar (play) his new guitar in his bedroom at this moment.
- The store (always is) busy on holidays.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Nour is asking Omar how he practices English.

Nour : What do you do to practice English?

Omar : I write 3 to 5 sentences every day.

Nour : What are these sentences (1).....?

Omar : These sentences are about what I learned.

Nour : That sounds fun! (2)..... does that help you?

Omar : That (3)..... me remember new words.

Nour : Do you advise me to try it?

Omar : Yes, of (4)..... . Writing makes you better.

8 Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Tarek to tell him about a role model you admire. Your name is Mazin.

Model (9)

A

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. How many friends did Youssef invite?
a) Eighty-eight. b) Eighteen.
c) Eighty. d) Eight.
2. What did Youssef prepare for the party?
a) Games only. b) Snacks only.
c) Gifts only. d) All of these.
3. What kind of party did Youssef want?
a) A very big one. b) A party at the mall.
c) A small and fun party. d) A party for all classmates.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Youssef was very about his birthday.
5. He only invited friends who were and kind.
6. He wanted the party to be

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Basmala closed her eyes and made a wish, hoping it would
a) match b) wish c) come true d) take out
2. Drinking water is very important your health and body.
a) at b) in c) with d) for

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

with – about – teamwork – glowing – full

In the village school, learning was always fun. Mr. Adam told them about an exciting challenge. The next morning, the door appeared (1)..... with light. Sara entered bravely. The room was filled (2)..... puzzles and magical clues. Zain, calm and kind, helped Omar feel ready. They all felt excited (3)..... solving the mystery. They completed the challenge using (4)..... and felt proud of what they could do.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Omar looked at the invisible bridge and felt scared. He didn't want to go. His feet froze, تجمدت and he couldn't take a step. Then Sara spoke **fluently** and gently. She said, "You're brave, Omar." Zain added, "We respect you, and we believe in you." Omar took a deep breath. He felt the courage in his heart.

Slowly, he stepped onto the bridge. His friends clapped and cheered him on. One kind word at a time, the bridge became visible beneath their feet. Together, they made it across. Their unity and kindness helped them succeed in passing the classroom test.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar felt when he first saw the bridge.
a) excited b) scared c) bored d) angry
2. The underlined word "fluently" most likely means
a) quietly and sadly b) quickly with mistakes
c) slowly and loudly d) well and clearly

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of this passage?
.....
4. What helped Omar cross the bridge?
.....
5. Who does the underlined word "His" refer to?
.....
6. What do you think would have happened if Omar had no support from friends?
.....

C Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ahmed hungry before lunch.
a) always b) is always
c) always is d) does always
2. Look over there, Waleed very fast to catch the school bus this morning.
a) run b) is running
c) runs d) are running

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The cat (not) drink the milk because it was too cold yesterday.
2. When I bake cookies, my little brother always (will want) to help.
3. (Was) the teacher going to give us homework for the next weekend?
4. My father (not/work) now; he is drinking his tea.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Leila and Omar are talking about using digital devices.

Leila : Do you use your tablet every day?

Omar : Yes, I do. But only for one hour. What (1)..... you?

Leila : I spend too much time (2)..... my smartphone.

Omar : It made me tired before, so I stopped.

Leila : (3)..... do you do instead?

Omar : I ride my bike and draw pictures.

Leila : I'll try to use my (4)..... less, too.

Omar : Great! We can help each other.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your dream profession"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (10)

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What helped Omar decide his career?

a) A family trip.

b) A career day.

c) A movie.

d) A workshop.

2. What did Omar discover?

a) He liked animals.

b) He liked art.

c) His passion for helping others.

d) He wanted to travel.

3. What does Omar tell others?

a) Wait and dream.

b) Sleep more.

c) Take every opportunity.

d) Don't talk to people.

B) Listen and complete:

4. Omar didn't know what to take.

5. He met a kind

6. Omar is of his job.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My teacher says having helps us work hard for our future.
a) community b) diversity c) money d) ambition
- Too much screen time might your eyes.
a) explore b) receive c) affect d) save

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

care – treat – meaningful – recycling – judge

Our class joined the "Green Ideas" competition. We decided to make posters about (1)..... I helped color, and my friend wrote the words. We didn't (2)..... about the prize. We just wanted to help the Earth. On the final day, we stood under our tent, ready to share our idea. The (3)..... gave the award to another team but said our teamwork was (4)..... and inspiring.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mona wanted to join the school basketball team, but she wasn't sure if it was a good idea. She had never played before and was afraid others would laugh at her. She decided to ask her older sister, who played sports. Her sister said, "You should try. You might be better than you think!" Mona thought about the advice and joined the team. At first, it was hard. But with practice and help from her coach, she improved. Her teammates cheered her on, and Mona started to enjoy the game. She was happy she asked for advice and listened. Sometimes, one piece of advice can help us try something new even if we feel unsure at first.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mona asked her sister for advice because she was
a) injured b) unsure c) tired d) sick
- The underlined word "cheered" most likely means
a) shouted b) laughed c) encouraged d) whispered

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
- What did Mona's sister advise her to do?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?
.....
- What would you do if you felt unsure about joining a team?
.....

C

Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** Who you sit next to on the bus during the last field trip?
a) did b) do
c) does d) was
- 2.** If it rains, we inside and play board games together.
a) stayed b) will stay
c) to stay d) staying

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Rana (never) listens to music while studying. She admires music so much.
2. (Mohamed/can) count to one hundred in English?
3. The plant needs sunlight, so I (going/move) it near the window.
4. Where did Bilal (went) on his holiday last summer?

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mai and Tarek are talking about the environment.

Mai : We talked about the (1)..... at school today.

Tarek: (2)..... you talk about hybrid buses?

Mai : Yes, we did. They use less energy than old buses.

Tarek: Did you see any of them?

Mai : Yes, I (3)..... I saw one in the city last week.

Tarek: (4)..... is using these buses good for the environment?

Mai : Because they don't cause pollution and save energy.

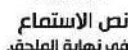
Tarek: I'll try these buses.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Digital devices you use at home or school"

[illegible]

Language Functions



1. How did Sara feel?

- 2** Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Sally : Hi, Omar! How was your big race?

Sally : Oh no! (2) ?

Sally : Did you ask your coach to rest?

Omar: (3) He helped me decide.

Usage

1. You need strong internet if you want to a video call.

- 118 | Part (2): Final Revision & Exams

C

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My aunt is a nurse, and she is my hero. She works in a hospital and takes care of sick people. She works long hours, but she always has a big smile. I once saw her helping a scared boy. She talked to him gently and helped him feel safe. She also visits old people at home to check on their health. I think she has a big heart. She told me that helping others is the best feeling in the world. I want to help people too. That's why I want to become a nurse just like her.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. What does the writer's aunt do for old people?
3. How do nurses help people feel safe?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

4. The writer's aunt
 a) teaches at school
 b) works in a shop
 c) takes care of sick people
 d) makes clothes
5. The underlined word "gently" means in a way.
 a) kind and soft
 b) loud and quick
 c) fast
 d) bad

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- If they win the competition, they'll getting a big prize from their school. (.....)
- Salma has her swimming lessons, so she going to go to the pool today. (.....)
- Rahaf watching her homework now; she is watching her favorite cartoon. (.....)
- The market always busy on Fridays. (.....)

D

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

“Your future goals”

.....

.....

.....

Model (2)

A Language Functions



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الواجب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. What did the boy want to save?
- a) Time and money. b) Water and electricity.
- c) Food and clothes. d) Air and toys.
2. Who did he tell to save water and electricity?
- a) His friends. b) His dog.
- c) His family. d) His teacher.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Yara wants to go to the park, but Omar wants to help Grandma.

Omar : Where are we going to go today?

Yara : (1)

Omar : (2)

Yara : What should we do then?

Omar : It's a hard choice. (3) ?

Yara : Let's help Grandma today and go tomorrow.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Please quietly when you're visiting someone in a hospital.
a) behave b) finish c) join d) decide
2. As an Egyptian citizen, my uncle is very of our history.
a) keen b) careful c) proud d) interested
3. Hazem plays chess with his father. He likes that so much.
a) always b) is always
c) never d) always does
4. At present, Nada her room because she cleaned it this morning.
a) doesn't clean b) isn't cleaning
c) don't clean d) aren't cleaning

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

When you go online, remember these simple rules to stay safe. Choose strong passwords. Use a mix of letters, numbers, and special characters like !, &, or \$. Long passwords are harder to guess. Avoid using your name, date of birth, or anything easy to guess from your social media. Think before you post. Once you post a comment or photo on social media, it stays there forever, even if you delete it. Don't share anything nasty or false. Don't accept friend requests from people you don't know. Tell your parents if someone you don't know sends you messages or wants to chat. Never share personal information with anyone. Cyberbullying is a big problem. Bullies can hide behind fake names. If someone is bullying you, tell an adult. Always be kind online.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What should you include in a strong password?
2. Why is it important to think before you post on social media?
3. What should you do if someone you don't know sends you messages online?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

4. is a good example of a strong password.
a) 12345 b) Myname c) Pa\$\$w0rd! d) Petname
5. You should if someone is bullying you online.
a) ignore it b) bully them
c) tell an adult d) tell the police

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Last Tuesday, we learn ten new words in our English class at school. (.....)
2. When Hala finish her homework, she'll go to the park with her sister. (.....)
3. The wind is very strong! The kite going fly very high in the sky. (.....)
4. In the museum, we must touch the old and fragile paintings. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A digital device you use a lot"

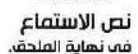
.....

.....

.....

Model (3)

A



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- ### 1. What was Samir's dream?

- a) To be a doctor.

- b) To travel the world.

- c) To be an artist.

- d) To be a reader.

2. Where did Samir study?

- a) Online.

- b) At home.

- c) Abroad.

- d) In a museum.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hana played an art game this morning.

Leen : What did you do this morning?

Hana : (1).....

Leen : What kind of game did you play?

Hana : (2)

Leen : I love art. (3)

Hana : I drew animal pictures.

B

Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ali trained hard to win the football

- a) goal

- b) competition

- c) lab

- d) completion

- 2 It's important to stay _____ if you want to succeed in what you do.

- a) proud

- b) motivated

- c) polite

- d) moved

3. Students talk when the teacher is explaining the lesson.

- a) mustn't

- b) should

- c) isn't

- d) doesn't

4. What time _____ the children going to eat their lunch tomorrow?

- a) is

- b) are

- c) do

- d) will

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Today in school, we had a special lesson about dinosaurs. We worked in teams and watched a short media video. Then, we used tablets to search for more information. We had to find solutions for three questions. We each did something to help. I wrote notes. My friend read the article. Another student made a chart. Group learning helped us finish faster. I like this way of learning because I don't feel alone. I enjoy learning with others because we cooperate and grow together. Our teacher said teamwork builds leadership and thinking skills.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. What tools did the students use in their project?
3. Why does the writer prefer learning in teams?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

4. The special lesson was about
a) animals b) dinosaurs c) volcanoes d) robots
5. The underlined word "leadership" means
a) guiding others b) doing it wrong
c) eating quickly d) sleeping in class

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. If you are hungry now, I gave you my sandwich. (.....)
2. The playground is empty because all the children went home early. (.....)
3. Nour bake a delicious chocolate cake right now. (.....)
4. Malika takes always takes photos at parties. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write an email of FIVE (5) sentences to your friend Osama to tell him about your role model. Your name is Omar.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (4)

Language Functions



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Where did Dr. Samira Moussa travel to?
 - a) England.
 - b) France.
 - c) United States.
 - d) Germany.
2. What kind of science did she share?
 - a) Food science.
 - b) Atomic science.
 - c) Earth science.
 - d) Animal science.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

The teacher is discussing what makes a good citizen.

Teacher : What makes a good citizen?

Hani : (1).

Teacher : Help in the community! Well done, Hani. What else makes a good citizen, Sara?

Sara : (2)

Teacher : Keep the environment clean! Great. (3).....?

Hani : We can keep our school clean.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Did you see the funny on TV about the new chocolate?
a) media b) thinking
c) advertisement d) opinion
2. After the, the young man said he was happy to share his ideas.
a) risk b) training
c) interview d) cause
3. Nora ready for school on time.
a) often is b) is often
c) often d) does often
4. Karim loves reading books, so he finish one book every week.
a) don't b) isn't c) can't d) can

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Our science teacher asked us to pick a partner for the next project. I had two options: my close friend, who didn't always do his part, or another classmate who was very responsible. It was a hard decision. I didn't want my friend to feel left out, but I also wanted to do well. I carefully **evaluated** both sides. In the end, I made a fair choice and asked the responsible classmate. I explained the reason kindly to my friend. To my surprise, **لدهشتی** he understood. The project went really well, and we got a good result. Later, my friend promised to be more helpful in the future. I felt proud of my smart decision and happy that no one was hurt.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of this passage?
2. Why didn't the writer choose their close friend as a partner?
3. Have you ever had to choose a partner? What did you do?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

4. The writer chose the responsible classmate because they were
a) taller b) young c) good d) new
5. The word "**evaluated**" means to
a) quickly pick b) judge carefully c) play games d) run away

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Two weeks ago, Bassam **try** his grandmother's special cookies. (.....)
2. What will happen if Ali **breaking** the rules at school? (.....)
3. We **shouldn't** try our best even if something is hard to do. (.....)
4. Why **will** you going to miss the school trip next Friday? (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A global citizen"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening Texts

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheets

Unit 1: Lessons 4 & 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

In a small, cheerful village school, children were always excited to learn new things. One morning, Mr. Adam, their kind teacher, said something exciting: "Next week, we will enter the Magic Classroom!"

Unit 2: Lessons 4 & 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

My name is Salma. I made a learning plan to help me study better. At school, I sit at the front so I can see the board. My cousin helps me review before tests.

Unit 3: Lessons 4 & 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Dr. Ghoniem is an Egyptian kidney doctor. He creates new treatments and helps many patients. Young doctors learn from him. He makes hospitals better places.

Unit 4: Lessons 4 & 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I made a learning plan with my cousin Zain. We shared ideas, respected each other, and used teamwork to build a Water-Saving Machine for school.

Unit 5: Lessons 4 & 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Days passed and the Water-Saving Machine started to take shape. But the team faced another problem. The machine worked, but not perfectly. So, some members felt discouraged.

Unit 6: Lessons 4 & 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Being a global citizen means caring about others and helping the world. Last month, my school started a "Clean-Up the Park" project. Students and teachers picked up trash and planted flowers.

Final Guiding Models (General)

Model (1)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

In the morning, I checked the weather on my tablet. At school, we used physical tools and a smartboard during our science lesson. After lunch, I searched for pictures and shared them on a class blog. At night, I turned on night mode and read an ebook.

Model (2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Aya learned at school that we must show respect to other people's culture and traditions. Her teacher said we all live on the same planet, so we should live in peace. Aya saw a new student from a different country and helped her find her class. That small action made the girl smile. Aya is proud to be a global citizen who cares for others.

Model (3)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Leila always dreamed of being a writer. She was a good reader and loved to tell stories. After high school, she contacted a famous author and asked for advice. The writer told her to follow a rule—read every day and write often. Leila planned for the future and wrote her first book. She hopes it will help children learn and dream big.

Model (4)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Yesterday, I forgot to study for my science test. I was careless and played video games instead. Today, I failed the test and felt sick inside. My teacher gave me a second chance and told me to follow the instructions next time. Now I know that my bad decision had a consequence. Next time, I will use my study time better.

Model (5)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Dr. Hemdan didn't just write about geography. He also wrote about the Suez Canal, which is an important part of Egypt. He wanted people to understand how Egypt's land helps it connect to other countries. Dr. Hemdan was not only a geographer but also a thinker who asked deep questions. Many leaders still use his books to learn about Egypt's role in the world.

Model (6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Leila is an auditory learner. She enjoys listening to her teacher and often repeats new words out loud. Leila likes to study with music and talk about school topics with her friends. Sometimes, she records her lessons and listens to them again. She learns best when she hears stories or examples during class. Leila finds it easy to remember when she hears things clearly.

Model (7)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Today, I helped my cousin with her homework. We searched for facts online using my laptop. Then, we used an app to draw a planet. She sent our work to the teacher through the class website. Afterward, we played a short online game before dinner.

Model (8)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Our class worked hard for the school invention fair. We invented a water-saving machine. Everyone had a role. Sandy designed the poster. Amir tested the machine. On the day of the event, we clapped for all the teams. The judges were impressed by our idea. We were so happy when we won the first prize. It felt amazing because we worked as one strong team.

Model (9)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Youssef was very excited about his birthday. He wanted to have a small party after school with only his closest friends. He chose eight classmates who were responsible and always finished their homework. They had also been kind to others. Youssef prepared games, snacks, and a small gift bag for each guest. He wanted the party to be fun but not too crowded.

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Omar was always unsure about his future. He didn't know what path to take. One day, he went to a career day at school. There, he met a kind doctor who spoke about his profession. Omar discovered he had a passion for helping others. He studied hard and finally succeeded. Now, Omar is proud of his job and tells others to take every opportunity.

Final Guiding Models (Al-Azhar)

Model (1)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

Sara was very excited. She loved learning and solving problems. "Let's think carefully and help each other," she said. Omar felt nervous because he was shy.

Model (2)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

Omar read a story about a boy who wanted to save water and electricity at home. The boy told his family to turn off the tap and lights when not using them.

Model (3)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

Samir had a passion for art. He drew amazing pictures and dreamed of becoming a great artist. One day, he got an opportunity to study abroad.

Model (4)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

Dr. Samira Moussa traveled to the United States to continue her research. She met many scientists and shared her knowledge about atomic science.

رقم الإيداع: 2025/8844 خدمة العملاء: 16766  NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE	جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.
--	---